PIC18CXX8

High-Performance Microcontrollers with CAN Module

High Performance RISC CPU:

- C-compiler optimized architecture instruction set
- Linear program memory addressing to 32 Kbytes
- Linear data memory addressing to 4 Kbytes

Device	Program Memory			On-Chip RAM (bytes)
	On-Chip		Off-Chip	
	EPROM (bytes)	# Single Word Instructions	Maximum Addressing (bytes)	
PIC18C658	32 K	16384	N/A	1536
PIC18C858	32 K	16384	N/A	1536

- Up to 10 MIPS operation:
  - DC - 40 MHz clock input
  - 4 MHz - 10 MHz osc./clock input with PLL active
- 16-bit wide instructions, 8-bit wide data path
- Priority levels for interrupts
- 8 x 8 Single Cycle Hardware Multiplier

Peripheral Features:

- High current sink/source 25 mA/25 mA
- Up to 76 I/O with individual direction control
- Four external interrupt pins
- Timer0 module: 8-bit/16-bit timer/counter with 8-bit programmable prescaler
- Timer1 module: 16-bit timer/counter
- Timer2 module: 8-bit timer/counter with 8-bit period register (time base for PWM)
- Timer3 module: 16-bit timer/counter
- Secondary oscillator clock option - Timer1/Timer3
- Two Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) modules CCP pins can be configured as:
  - Capture input: 16-bit, max resolution 6.25 ns
  - Compare is 16-bit, max resolution 100 ns (TCY)
  - PWM output: PWM resolution is 1- to 10-bit. Max. PWM freq. @:8-bit resolution = 156 kHz
    10-bit resolution = 39 kHz
- Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) with two modes of operation:
  - 3-wire SPI™ (Supports all 4 SPI modes)
  - I^2C™ Master and Slave mode
- Addressable USART module: Supports Interrupt on Address bit

Advanced Analog Features:

- 10-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter module (A/D) with:
  - Fast sampling rate
  - Conversion available during SLEEP
  - DNL = ±1 LSb, INL = ±1 LSb
  - Up to 16 channels available
- Analog Comparator Module:
  - 2 Comparators
  - Programmable input and output multiplexing
- Comparator Voltage Reference Module
- Programmable Low Voltage Detection (LVD) module
  - Supports interrupt on low voltage detection
- Programmable Brown-out Reset (BOR)

CAN BUS Module Features:

- Message bit rates up to 1 Mbps
- Conforms to CAN 2.0B ACTIVE Spec with:
  - 29-bit Identifier Fields
  - 8 byte message length
- 3 Transmit Message Buffers with prioritization
- 2 Receive Message Buffers
- 6 full 29-bit Acceptance Filters
- Prioritization of Acceptance Filters
- Multiple Receive Buffers for High Priority Messages to prevent loss due to overflow
- Advanced Error Management Features

Special Microcontroller Features:

- Power-on Reset (POR), Power-up Timer (PWRT), and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Watchdog Timer (WDT) with its own on-chip RC oscillator
- Programmable code protection
- Power saving SLEEP mode
- Selectable oscillator options, including:
  - 4X Phase Lock Loop (of primary oscillator)
  - Secondary Oscillator (32 kHz) clock input
- In-Circuit Serial Programming (ICSP™) via two pins

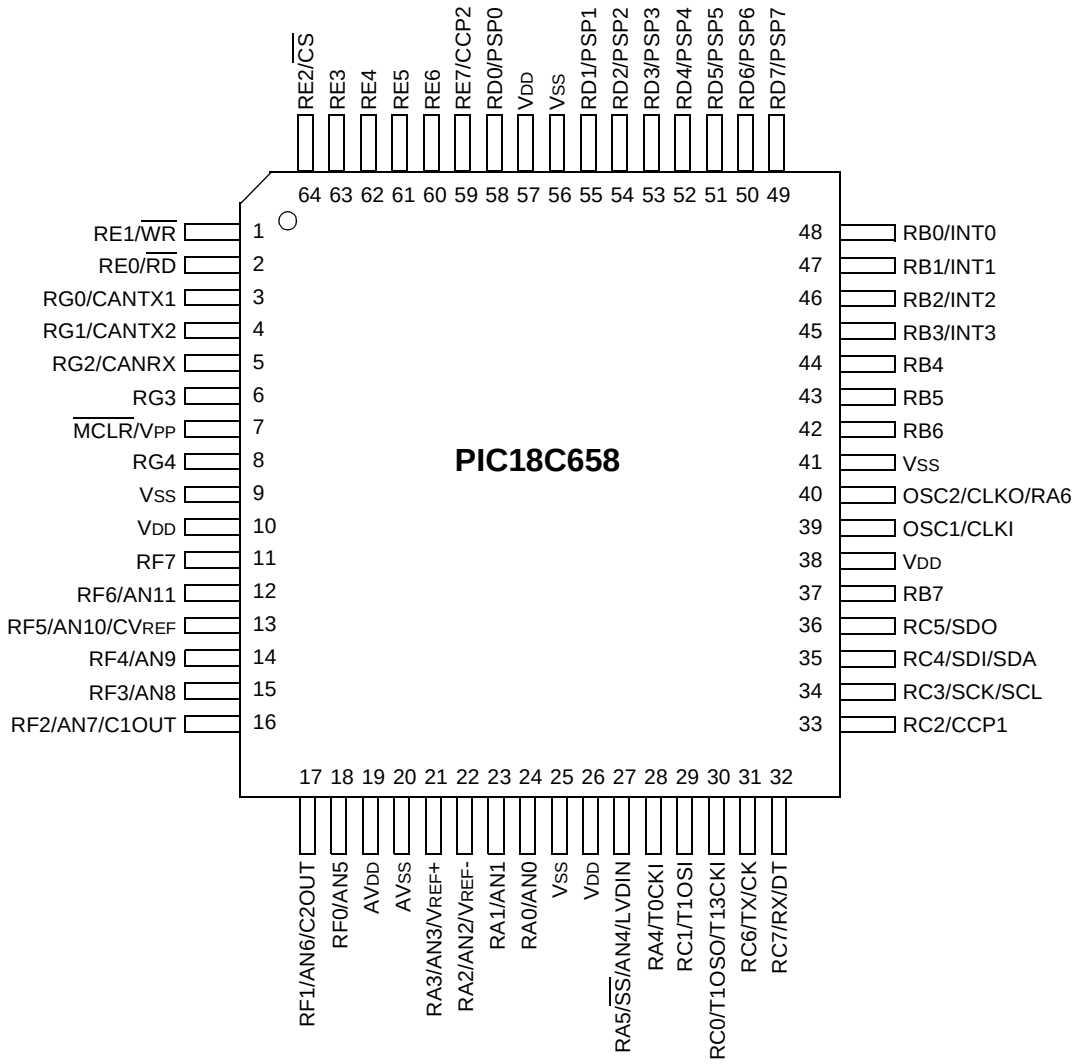
CMOS Technology:

- Low power, high speed EPROM technology
- Fully static design
- Wide operating voltage range (2.5V to 5.5V)
- Industrial and Extended temperature ranges
- Low power consumption

© 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Pin Diagrams

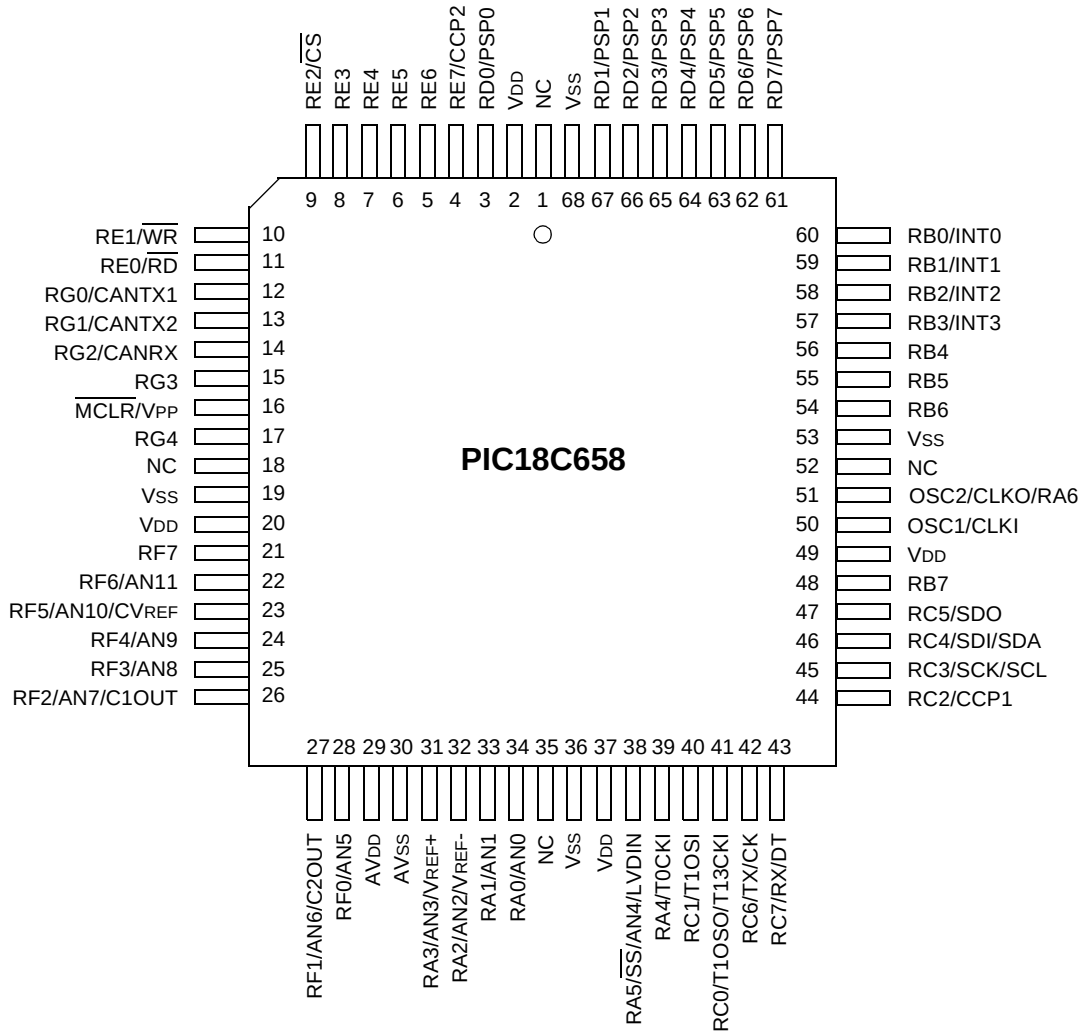
64-Pin TQFP



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

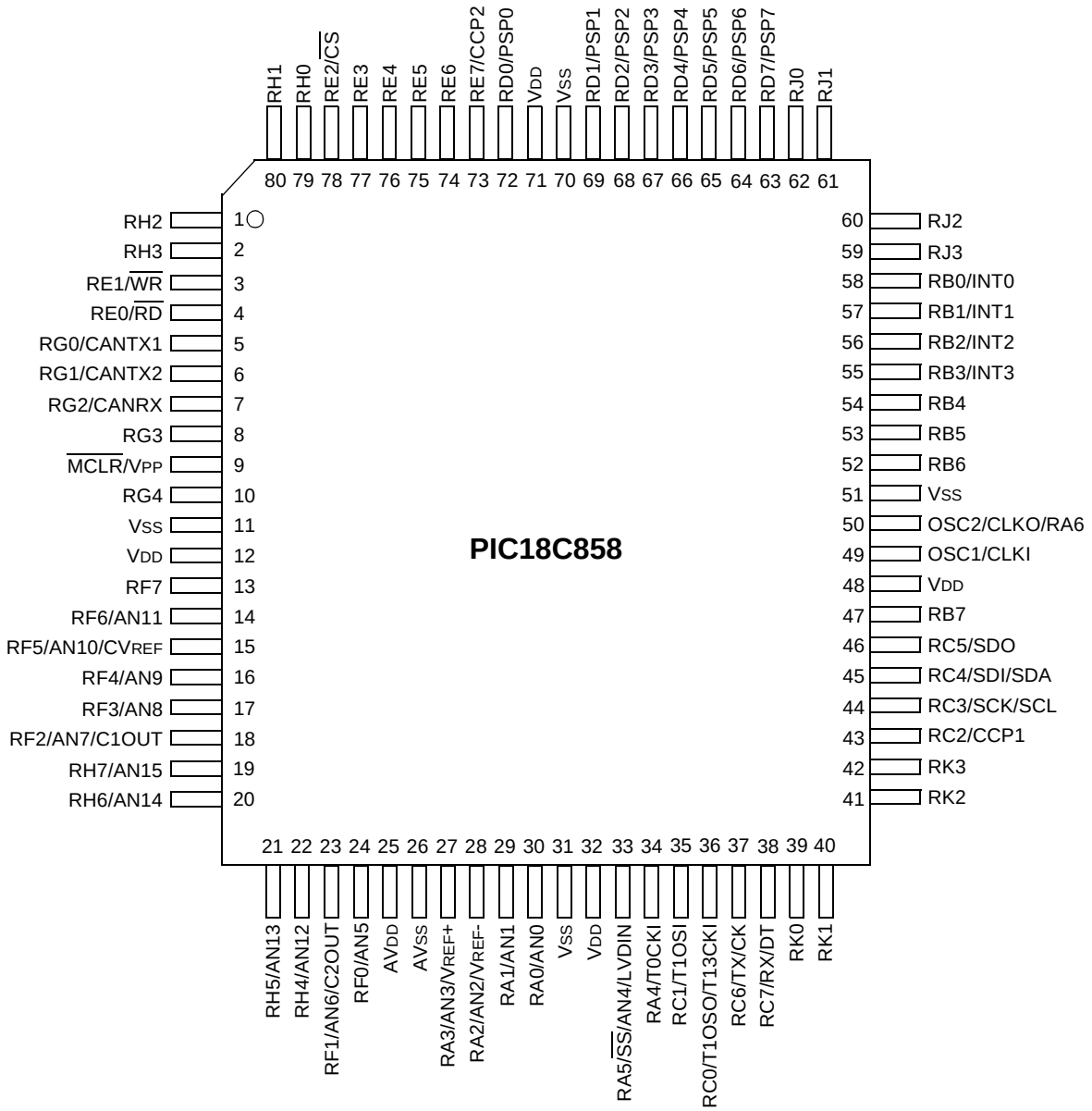
Pin Diagrams (Cont.'d)

68-Pin PLCC



Pin Diagrams (Cont.'d)

80-Pin TQFP



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Pin Diagrams (Cont.'d)

84-Pin PLCC

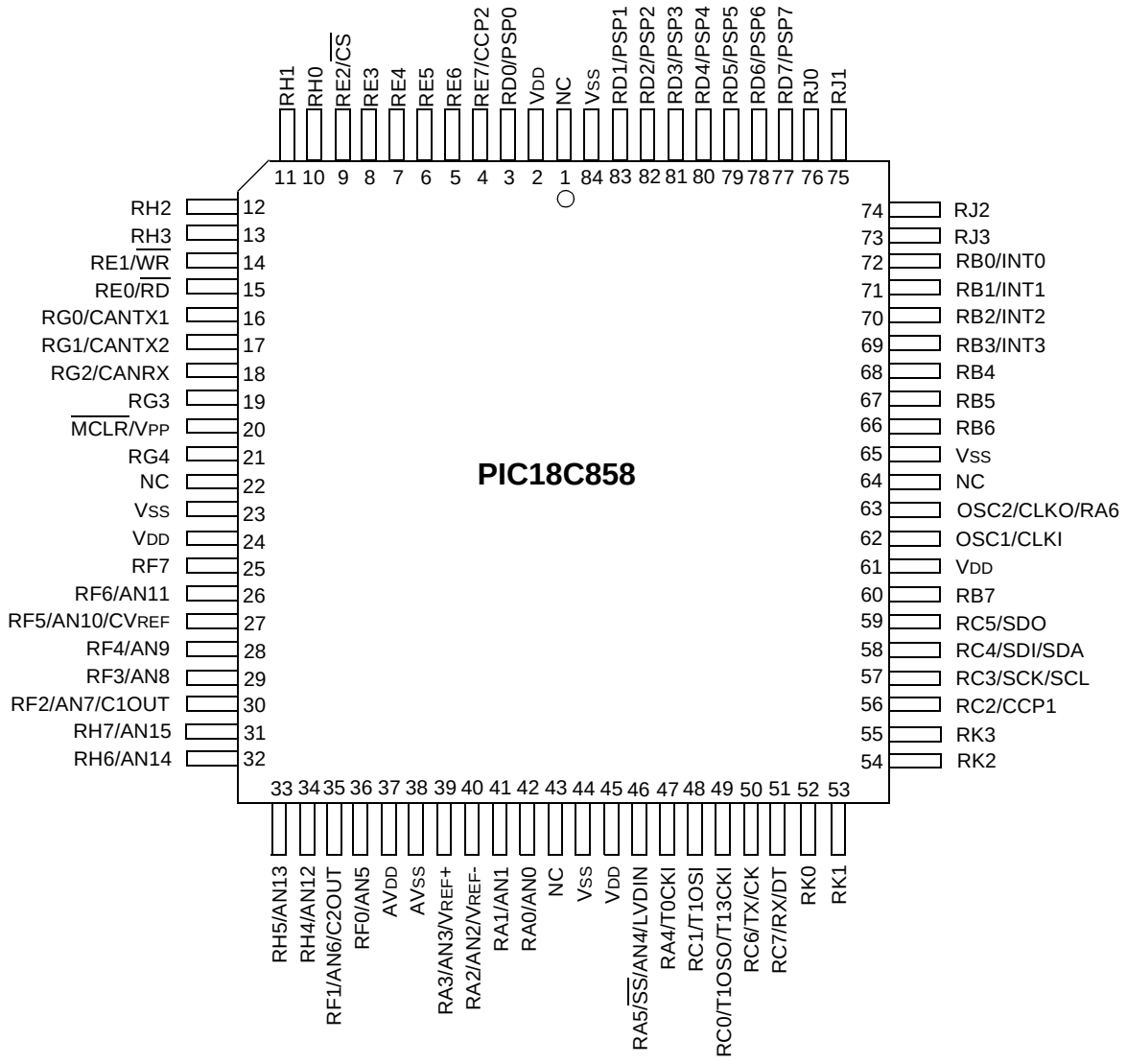


Table of Contents

1.0 Device Overview ... 9
2.0 Oscillator Configurations ... 21
3.0 Reset ... 29
4.0 Memory Organization ... 41
5.0 Table Reads/Table Writes ... 65
6.0 8 X 8 Hardware Multiplier ... 71
7.0 Interrupts ... 75
8.0 I/O Ports ... 89
9.0 Parallel Slave Port ... 109
10.0 Timer0 Module ... 113
11.0 Timer1 Module ... 117
12.0 Timer2 Module ... 121
13.0 Timer3 Module ... 123
14.0 Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) Modules ... 127
15.0 Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) Module ... 135
16.0 Addressable Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) ... 167
17.0 CAN Module ... 183
18.0 10-bit Analog-to-Digital Converter (A/D) Module ... 227
19.0 Comparator Module ... 237
20.0 Comparator Voltage Reference Module ... 243
21.0 Low Voltage Detect ... 247
22.0 Special Features of the CPU ... 251
23.0 Instruction Set Summary ... 261
24.0 Development Support ... 305
25.0 Electrical Characteristics ... 311
26.0 DC and AC Characteristics Graphs and Tables ... 341
27.0 Packaging Information ... 343
Appendix A: Data Sheet Revision History ... 349
Appendix B: Device Differences ... 349
Appendix C: Device Migrations ... 350
Appendix D: Migrating from other PICmicro Devices ... 350
Appendix E: Development Tool Version Requirements ... 351
Index ... 353
On-Line Support ... 361
Reader Response ... 362
PIC18CXX8 Product Identification System ... 363

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at **docerrors@mail.microchip.com** or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

http://www.microchip.com

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; http://www.microchip.com
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)
- The Microchip Corporate Literature Center; U.S. FAX: (480) 792-7277

When contacting a sales office or the literature center, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at **www.microchip.com/cn** to receive the most current information on all of our products.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

This document contains device specific information for the following three devices:

1. PIC18C658
2. PIC18C858

The PIC18C658 is available in 64-pin TQFP and 68-pin PLCC packages. The PIC18C858 is available in 80-pin TQFP and 84-pin PLCC packages.

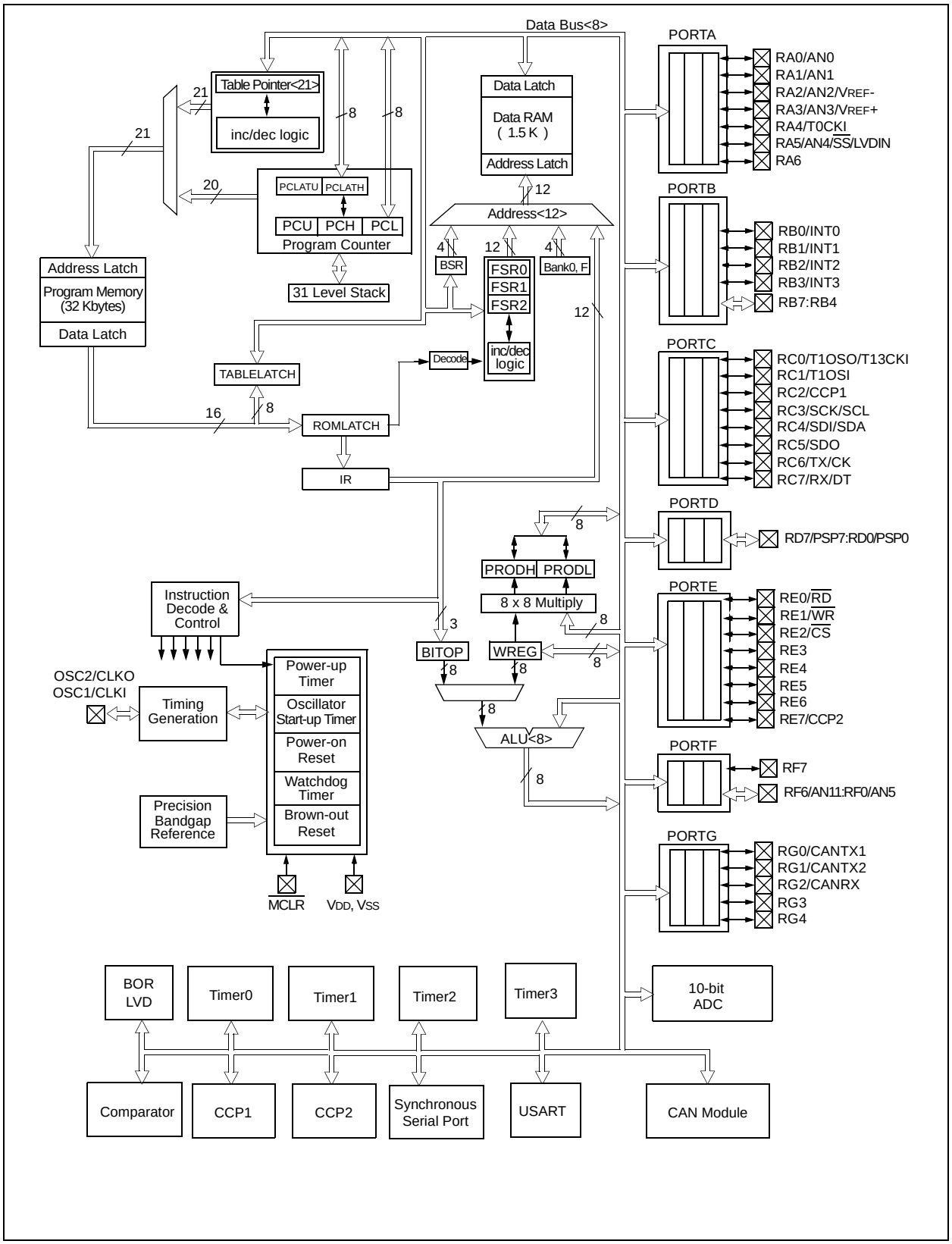
An overview of features is shown in Table 1-1.

The following two figures are device block diagrams sorted by pin count; 64/68-pin for Figure 1-1 and 80/84-pin for Figure 1-2. The 64/68-pin and 80/84-pin pinouts are listed in Table 1-2.

TABLE 1-1: DEVICE FEATURES

Features			PIC18C658	PIC18C858
Operating Frequency			DC - 40 MHz	DC - 40 MHz
Program Memory	Internal	Bytes	32 K	32 K
		# of Single word Instructions	16384	16384
Data Memory (Bytes)			1536	1536
Interrupt sources			21	21
I/O Ports			Ports A – G	Ports A – H, J, K
Timers			4	4
Capture/Compare/PWM modules			2	2
Serial Communications			MSSP, CAN Addressable USART	MSSP, CAN Addressable USART
Parallel Communications			PSP	PSP
10-bit Analog-to-Digital Module			12 input channels	16 input channels
Analog Comparators			2	2
RESETS (and Delays)			POR, BOR, `RESET` Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)	POR, BOR, `RESET` Instruction, Stack Full, Stack Underflow (PWRT, OST)
Programmable Low Voltage Detect			Yes	Yes
Programmable Brown-out Reset			Yes	Yes
CAN Module			Yes	Yes
In-Circuit Serial Programming (ICSP™)			Yes	Yes
Instruction Set			75 Instructions	75 Instructions
Packages			64-pin TQFP 68-pin CERQUAD (Windowed) 68-pin PLCC	80-pin TQFP 84-pin CERQUAD (Windowed) 84-pin PLCC

FIGURE 1-1: PIC18C658 BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 1-2: PIC18C858 BLOCK DIAGRAM

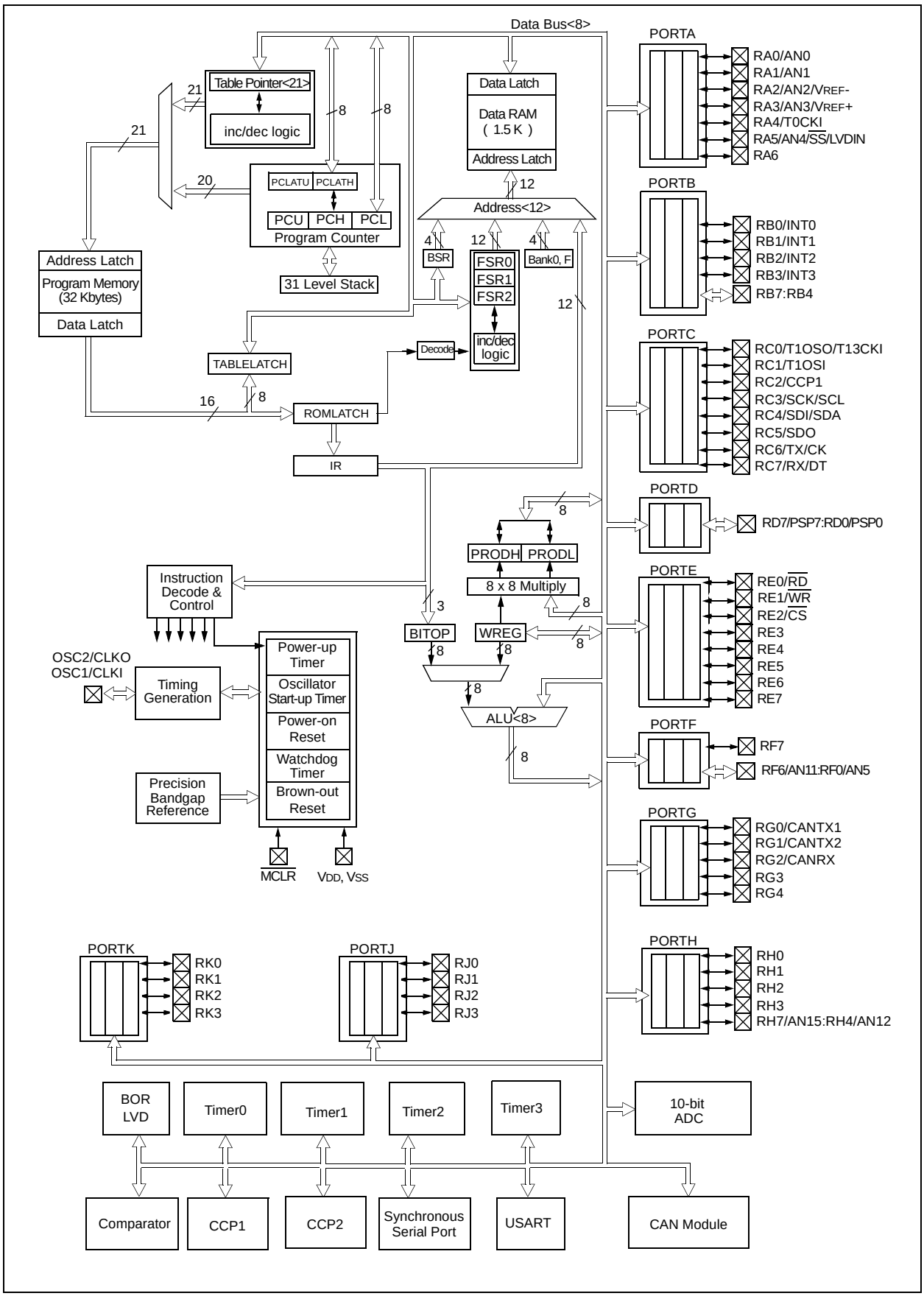


TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP	7	16	9	20			
$\overline{MCLR}$					I	ST	Master clear (RESET) input. This pin is an active low RESET to the device.
VPP					P		Programming voltage input
NC	—	1, 18, 35, 52	—	1, 22, 43, 64	—	—	These pins should be left unconnected
OSC1/CLKI	39	50	49	62			
OSC1					I	CMOS/ST	Oscillator crystal input or external clock source input. ST buffer when configured in RC mode. Otherwise CMOS.
CLKI					I	CMOS	External clock source input. Always associated with pin function OSC1 (see OSC1/CLKI, OSC2/CLKO pins).
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	40	51	50	63			
OSC2					O	—	Oscillator crystal output. Connects to crystal or resonator in Crystal Oscillator mode.
CLKO					O	—	In RC mode, OSC2 pin outputs CLKO, which has 1/4 the frequency of OSC1 and denotes the instruction cycle rate
RA6					I/O	TTL	General purpose I/O pin

Legend:
TTL = TTL compatible input
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
P = Power
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
Analog = Analog input
O = Output
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTA is a bi-directional I/O port
RA0/AN0	24	34	30	42			
RA0					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
AN0					I	Analog	Analog input 0
RA1/AN1	23	33	29	41			
RA1					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
AN1					I	Analog	Analog input 1
RA2/AN2/V_{REF-}	22	32	28	40			
RA2					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
AN2					I	Analog	Analog input 2
V_{REF-}					I	Analog	A/D reference voltage (Low) input
RA3/AN3/V_{REF+}	21	31	27	39			
RA3					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
AN3					I	Analog	Analog input 3
V_{REF+}					I	Analog	A/D reference voltage (High) input
RA4/T0CKI	28	39	34	47			
RA4					I/O	ST/OD	Digital I/O – Open drain when configured as output
T0CKI					I	ST	Timer0 external clock input
RA5/AN4/$\overline{SS}$/LVDIN	27	38	33	46			
RA5					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
AN4					I	Analog	Analog input 4
$\overline{SS}$					I	ST	SPI slave select input
LVDIN					I	Analog	Low voltage detect input
RA6							See the OSC2/CLKO/RA6 pin

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I = Input; P = Power; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; Analog = Analog input; O = Output; OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTB is a bi-directional I/O port. PORTB can be software programmed for internal weak pull-ups on all inputs.
RB0/INT0	48	60	58	72			
RB0					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
INT0					I	ST	External interrupt 0
RB1/INT1	47	59	57	71			
RB1					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
INT1					I	ST	External interrupt 1
RB2/INT2	46	58	56	70			
RB2					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
INT2					I	ST	External interrupt 2
RB3/INT3	45	57	55	69			
RB3					I/O	TTL	Digital I/O
INT3					I/O	ST	External interrupt 3
RB4	44	56	54	68	I/O	TTL	Digital I/O Interrupt on change pin
RB5	43	55	53	67	I/O	TTL	Digital I/O Interrupt-on-change pin
RB6	42	54	52	66	I/O	TTL	Digital I/O Interrupt-on-change pin
					I	ST	ICSP programming clock
RB7	37	48	47	60	I/O	TTL	Digital I/O Interrupt-on-change pin
					I/O	ST	ICSP programming data

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
P = Power
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
Analog = Analog input
O = Output
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTC is a bi-directional I/O port
RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI	30	41	36	49			
RC0					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
T1OSO					O	—	Timer1 oscillator output
T13CKI					I	ST	Timer1/Timer3 external clock input
RC1/T1OSI	29	40	35	48			
RC1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
T1OSI					I	CMOS	Timer1 oscillator input
RC2/CCP1	33	44	43	56			
RC2					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
CCP1					I/O	ST	Capture1 input/Compare1 output/PWM1 output
RC3/SCK/SCL	34	45	44	57			
RC3					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
SCK					I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for SPI mode
SCL					I/O	ST	Synchronous serial clock input/output for I^2C mode
RC4/SDI/SDA	35	46	45	58			
RC4					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
SDI					I	ST	SPI data in
SDA					I/O	ST	I^2C data I/O
RC5/SDO	36	47	46	59			
RC5					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
SDO					O	—	SPI data out
RC6/TX/CK	31	42	37	50			
RC6					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
TX					O	—	USART asynchronous transmit
CK					I/O	ST	USART synchronous clock (See RX/DT)
RC7/RX/DT	32	43	38	51			
RC7					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RX					I	ST	USART asynchronous receive
DT					I/O	ST	USART synchronous data (See TX/CK)

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
P = Power
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
Analog = Analog input
O = Output
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTD is a bi-directional I/O port. These pins have TTL input buffers when external memory is enabled.
RD0/PSP0	58	3	72	3			
RD0					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP0					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data
RD1/PSP1	55	67	69	83			
RD1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP1					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data
RD2/PSP2	54	66	68	82			
RD2					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP2					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data
RD3/PSP3	53	65	67	81			
RD3					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP3					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data
RD4/PSP4	52	64	66	80			
RD4					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP4					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data
RD5/PSP5	51	63	65	79			
RD5					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP5					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data
RD6/PSP6	50	62	64	78			
RD6					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP6					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data
RD7/PSP7	49	61	63	77			
RD7					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
PSP7					I/O	TTL	Parallel slave port data

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
P = Power
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
Analog = Analog input
O = Output
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTE is a bi-directional I/O port
RE0/$\overline{RD}$	2	11	4	15			
RE0					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
$\overline{RD}$					I	TTL	Read control for parallel slave port (See $\overline{WR}$ and $\overline{CS}$ pins)
RE1/$\overline{WR}$	1	10	3	14			
RE1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
$\overline{WR}$					I	TTL	Write control for parallel slave port (See $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{RD}$ pins)
RE2/$\overline{CS}$	64	9	78	9			
RE2					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
$\overline{CS}$					I	TTL	Chip select control for parallel slave port (See $\overline{RD}$ and $\overline{WR}$)
RE3	63	8	77	8	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RE4	62	7	76	7	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RE5	61	6	75	6	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RE6	60	5	74	5	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RE7/CCP2	59	4	73	4			
RE7					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
CCP2					I/O	ST	Capture2 input, Compare2 output, PWM2 output

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I = Input; P = Power; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; Analog = Analog input; O = Output; OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTF is a bi-directional I/O port
RF0/AN5	18	28	24	36			
RF0					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN5					I	Analog	Analog input 5
RF1/AN6/C2OUT	17	27	23	35			
RF1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN6					I	Analog	Analog input 6
C2OUT					O	ST	Comparator 2 output
RF2/AN7/C1OUT	16	26	18	30			
RF2					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN7					I	Analog	Analog input 7
C1OUT					O	ST	Comparator 1 output
RF3/AN8	15	25	17	29			
RF1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN8					I	Analog	Analog input 8
RF4/AN9	14	24	16	28			
RF1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN9					I	Analog	Analog input 9
RF5/AN10/CVREF	13	23	15	27			
RF1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN10					I	Analog	Analog input 10
CVREF					O	Analog	Comparator VREF output
RF6/AN11	12	22	14	26			
RF6					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN11					I	Analog	Analog input 11
RF7	11	21	13	25	I/O	ST	Digital I/O

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I = Input; P = Power; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; Analog = Analog input; O = Output; OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTG is a bi-directional I/O port
RG0/CANTX1	3	12	5	16			
RG0					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
CANTX1					O	CAN Bus	CAN bus output
RG1/CANTX2	4	13	6	17			
RG1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
CANTX2					O	CAN Bus	Complimentary CAN bus output or CAN bus bit time clock
RG2/CANRX	5	14	7	18			
RG2					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
CANRX					I	CAN Bus	CAN bus input
RG3	6	15	8	19	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RG4	8	17	10	21	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
							PORTH is a bi-directional I/O port.
RH0	—	—	79	10	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RH1	—	—	80	11	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RH2	—	—	1	12	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RH3	—	—	2	13	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RH4/AN12	—	—	22	34			
RH4					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN12					I	Analog	Analog input 12
RH5/AN13	—	—	21	33			
RH5					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN13					I	Analog	Analog input 13
RH6/AN14	—	—	20	32			
RH6					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN14					I	Analog	Analog input 14
RH7/AN15	—	—	19	31			
RH7					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
AN15					I	Analog	Analog input 15

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
P = Power
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
Analog = Analog input
O = Output
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to V_{DD})

TABLE 1-2: PINOUT I/O DESCRIPTIONS (CONTINUED)

Pin Name	Pin Number				Pin Type	Buffer Type	Description
	PIC18C658		PIC18C858				
	TQFP	PLCC	TQFP	PLCC			
							PORTJ is a bi-directional I/O port
RJ0	—	—	62	76			
RJ0	—	—	—	—			
RJ0					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RJ1	—	—	61	75			
RJ1	—	—	—	—			
RJ1					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RJ2	—	—	60	74			
RJ2	—	—	—	—			
RJ2					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RJ3	—	—	59	73			
RJ3	—	—	—	—			
RJ3					I/O	ST	Digital I/O
							PORTK is a bi-directional I/O port
RK0	—	—	39	52	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RK1	—	—	40	53	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RK2	—	—	41	54	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
RK3	—	—	42	55	I/O	ST	Digital I/O
VSS	9, 25, 41, 56	19, 36, 53, 68	11, 31, 51, 70	23, 44, 65, 84	P	—	Ground reference for logic and I/O pins
VDD	10, 26, 38, 57	2, 20, 37, 49	12, 32, 48, 71	2, 24, 45, 61	P	—	Positive supply for logic and I/O pins
AVSS	20	30	26	38	P	—	Ground reference for analog modules
AVDD	19	29	25	37	P	—	Positive supply for analog modules

Legend: TTL = TTL compatible input
ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels
I = Input
P = Power
CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output
Analog = Analog input
O = Output
OD = Open Drain (no P diode to VDD)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.0 OSCILLATOR CONFIGURATIONS

2.1 Oscillator Types

The PIC18CXX8 can be operated in one of eight oscillator modes, programmable by three configuration bits (FOSC2, FOSC1, and FOSC0).

1. LP — Low Power Crystal
2. XT — Crystal/Resonator
3. HS — High Speed Crystal/Resonator
4. HS4 — High Speed Crystal/Resonator with PLL enabled
5. RC — External Resistor/Capacitor
6. RCIO — External Resistor/Capacitor with I/O pin enabled
7. EC — External Clock
8. ECIO — External Clock with I/O pin enabled

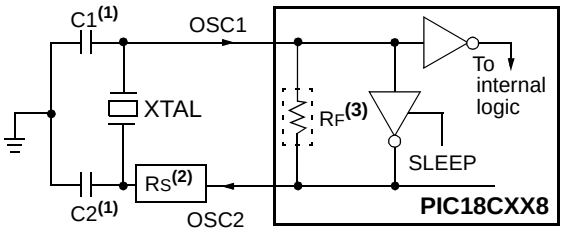
2.2 Crystal Oscillator/Ceramic Resonators

In XT, LP, HS or HS4 (PLL) oscillator modes, a crystal or ceramic resonator is connected to the OSC1 and OSC2 pins to establish oscillation. Figure 2-1 shows the pin connections. An external clock source may also be connected to the OSC1 pin, as shown in Figure 2-3 and Figure 2-4.

The PIC18CXX8 oscillator design requires the use of a parallel cut crystal.

Note:	Use of a series cut crystal may give a frequency out of the crystal manufacturer's specifications.

FIGURE 2-1: CRYSTAL/CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (HS, XT OR LP OSC CONFIGURATION)



Note 1: See Table 2-1 and Table 2-2 for recommended values of C1 and C2.

2: A series resistor (R_S) may be required for AT strip cut crystals.

3: R_F varies with the crystal chosen.

TABLE 2-1: CERAMIC RESONATORS

Ranges Tested:			
Mode	**Freq**	**OSC1**	**OSC2**
XT	455 kHz 2.0 MHz 4.0 MHz	68 - 100 pF 15 - 68 pF 15 - 68 pF	68 - 100 pF 15 - 68 pF 15 - 68 pF
HS	8.0 MHz 16.0 MHz 20.0 MHz 25.0 MHz	10 - 68 pF 10 - 22 pF TBD TBD	10 - 68 pF 10 - 22 pF TBD TBD
HS+PLL	4.0 MHz 8.0 MHz 10.0 MHz	TBD 10 - 68 pF TBD	TBD 10 - 68 pF TBD
These values are for design guidance only. See notes on this page.			
Resonators Used:			
455 kHz	Panasonic EFO-A455K04B	± 0.3%	
2.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA2.00MG	± 0.5%	
4.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA4.00MG	± 0.5%	
8.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA8.00MT	± 0.5%	
16.0 MHz	Murata Erie CSA16.00MX	± 0.5%	
All resonators used did not have built-in capacitors.			

TABLE 2-2: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR

Osc Type	Crystal Freq	Cap. Range C1	Cap. Range C2
LP	32.0 kHz	33 pF	33 pF
	200 kHz	15 pF	15 pF
XT	200 kHz	47-68 pF	47-68 pF
	1.0 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	4.0 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
HS	4.0 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	8.0 MHz	15-33 pF	15-33 pF
	20.0 MHz	15-33 pF	15-33 pF
	25.0 MHz	TBD	TBD
HS+PLL	4.0 MHz	15 pF	15 pF
	8.0 MHz	15-33 pF	15-33 pF
	10.0 MHz	TBD	TBD
These values are for design guidance only. See notes on this page.			
Crystals Used			
32.0 kHz	Epson C-001R32.768K-A	± 20 PPM	
200 kHz	STD XTL 200.000KHz	± 20 PPM	
1.0 MHz	ECS ECS-10-13-1	± 50 PPM	
4.0 MHz	ECS ECS-40-20-1	± 50 PPM	
8.0 MHz	EPSON CA-301 8.000M-C	± 30 PPM	
20.0 MHz	EPSON CA-301 20.000M-C	± 30 PPM	

Note 1: Recommended values of C1 and C2 are identical to the ranges tested (Table 2-1).
2: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.
3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.
4: Rs may be required in HS mode, as well as XT mode, to avoid overdriving crystals with low drive level specification.

PRELIMINARY

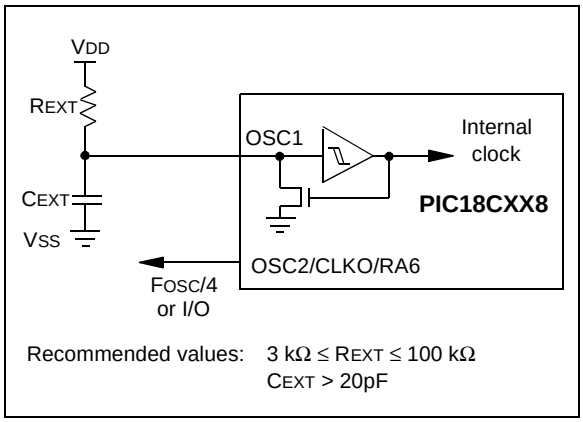
 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.3 RC Oscillator

For timing insensitive applications, the “RC” and "RCIO" device options offer additional cost savings. The RC oscillator frequency is a function of the supply voltage, the resistor (REXT) and capacitor (CEXT) values and the operating temperature. In addition to this, the oscillator frequency will vary from unit to unit due to normal process parameter variation. Furthermore, the difference in lead frame capacitance between package types will also affect the oscillation frequency, especially for low CEXT values. The user also needs to take into account variation due to tolerance of external R and C components used. Figure 2-2 shows how the R/C combination is connected.

In the RC oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic.

FIGURE 2-2: RC OSCILLATOR MODE



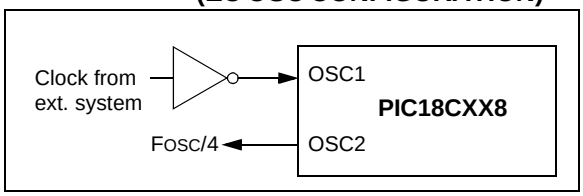
The RCIO oscillator mode functions like the RC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6).

2.4 External Clock Input

The EC and ECIO oscillator modes require an external clock source to be connected to the OSC1 pin. The feedback device between OSC1 and OSC2 is turned off in these modes to save current. There is no oscillator start-up time required after a Power-on Reset or after a recovery from SLEEP mode.

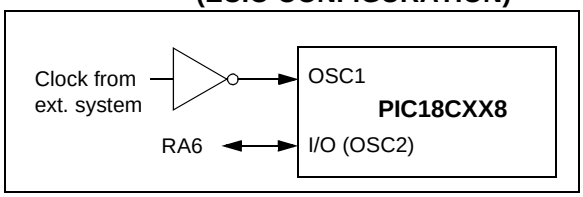
In the EC oscillator mode, the oscillator frequency divided by 4 is available on the OSC2 pin. This signal may be used for test purposes or to synchronize other logic. Figure 2-3 shows the pin connections for the EC oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-3: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (EC OSC CONFIGURATION)



The ECIO oscillator mode functions like the EC mode, except that the OSC2 pin becomes an additional general purpose I/O pin. The I/O pin becomes bit 6 of PORTA (RA6). Figure 2-4 shows the pin connections for the ECIO oscillator mode.

FIGURE 2-4: EXTERNAL CLOCK INPUT OPERATION (ECIO CONFIGURATION)



2.5 HS4 (PLL)

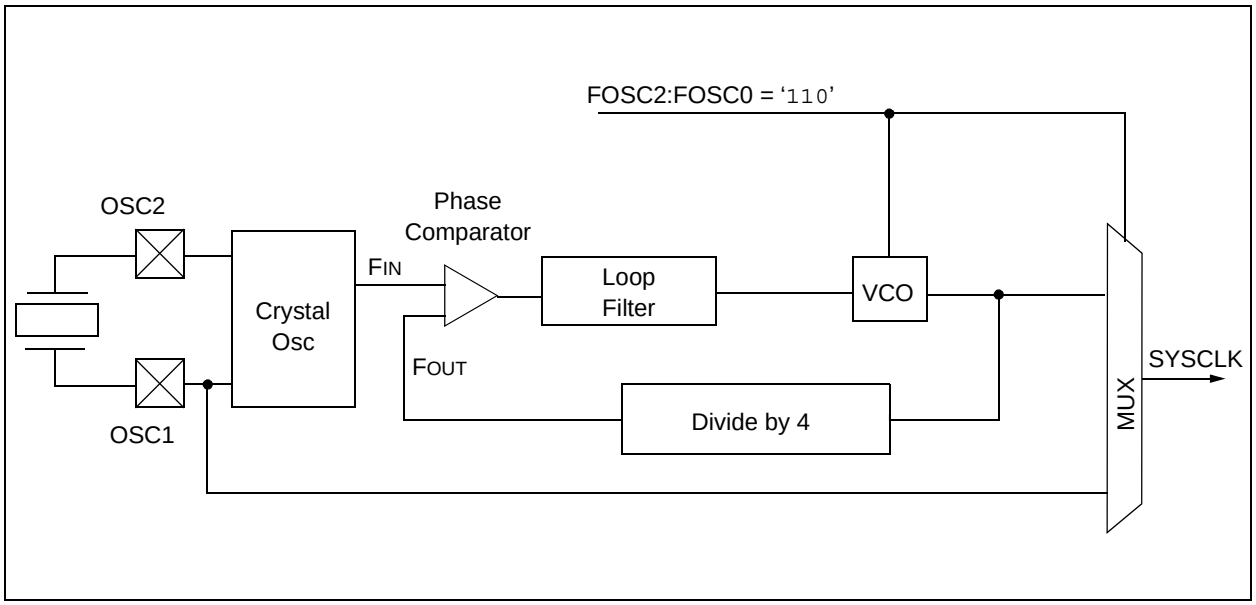
A Phase Locked Loop circuit is provided as a programmable option for users that want to multiply the frequency of the incoming crystal oscillator signal by 4. For an input clock frequency of 10 MHz, the internal clock frequency will be multiplied to 40 MHz. This is useful for customers who are concerned with EMI due to high frequency crystals.

The PLL can only be enabled when the oscillator configuration bits are programmed for HS mode. If they are programmed for any other mode, the PLL is not enabled and the system clock will come directly from OSC1.

The PLL is one of the modes of the FOSC2:FOSC0 configuration bits. The oscillator mode is specified during device programming.

A PLL lock timer is used to ensure that the PLL has locked before device execution starts. The PLL lock timer has a time-out referred to as T_{PLL}.

FIGURE 2-5: PLL BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

2.6 Oscillator Switching Feature

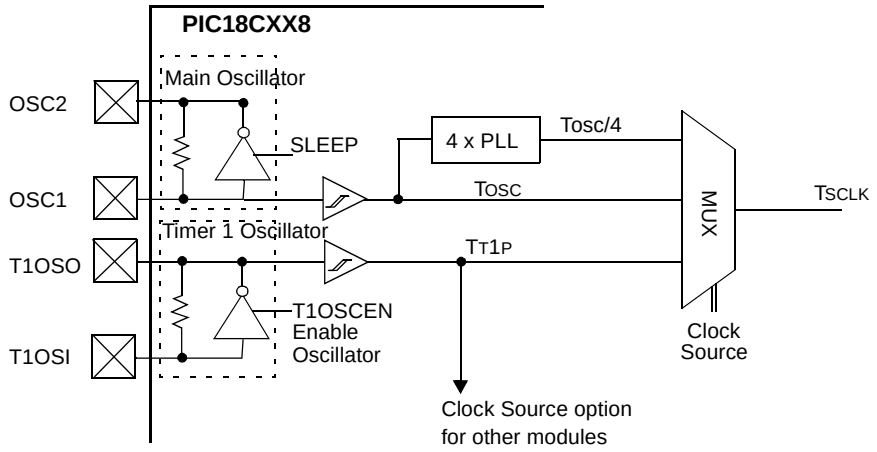
The PIC18CXX8 devices include a feature that allows the system clock source to be switched from the main oscillator to an alternate low frequency clock source. For the PIC18CXX8 devices, this alternate clock source is the Timer1 oscillator. If a low frequency crystal (32 kHz, for example) has been attached to the Timer1 oscillator pins and the Timer1 oscillator has been enabled, the device can switch to a low power execution mode. Figure 2-6 shows a block diagram of the system clock sources. The clock switching feature is enabled by programming the Oscillator Switching Enable ($\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$) bit in Configuration register CONFIG1H to a '0'. Clock switching is disabled in an erased device. See Section 9 for further details of the Timer1 oscillator. See Section 22.0 for Configuration Register details.

2.6.1 SYSTEM CLOCK SWITCH BIT

The system clock source switching is performed under software control. The system clock switch bit, SCS (OSCCON register), controls the clock switching. When the SCS bit is '0', the system clock source comes from the main oscillator selected by the FOSC2:FOSC0 configuration bits. When the SCS bit is set, the system clock source will come from the Timer1 oscillator. The SCS bit is cleared on all forms of RESET.

> **Note:** The Timer1 oscillator must be enabled to switch the system clock source. The Timer1 oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN bit in the Timer1 control register (T1CON). If the Timer1 oscillator is not enabled, any write to the SCS bit will be ignored (SCS bit forced cleared) and the main oscillator will continue to be the system clock source.

FIGURE 2-6: DEVICE CLOCK SOURCES



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

REGISTER 2-1: OSCCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCS
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **SCS:** System Clock Switch bit
when $\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$ configuration bit = '0' and T1OSCEN bit is set:
1 = Switch to Timer1 Oscillator/Clock pin
0 = Use primary Oscillator/Clock input pin
when $\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$ is clear or T1OSCEN is clear:
bit is forced clear

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

2.6.2 OSCILLATOR TRANSITIONS

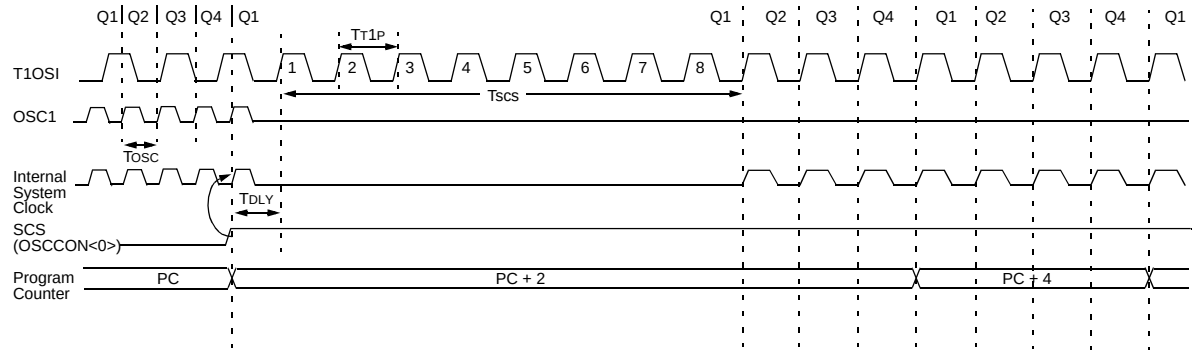
The PIC18CXX8 devices contain circuitry to prevent "glitches" when switching between oscillator sources. Essentially, the circuitry waits for eight rising edges of the clock source that the processor is switching to. This ensures that the new clock source is stable and that its pulse width will not be less than the shortest pulse width of the two clock sources.

A timing diagram indicating the transition from the main oscillator to the Timer1 oscillator is shown in Figure 2-7. The Timer1 oscillator is assumed to be running all the time. After the SCS bit is set, the processor is frozen at the next occurring Q1 cycle. After eight synchronization cycles are counted from the Timer1 oscillator, operation resumes. No additional delays are required after the synchronization cycles.

The sequence of events that takes place when switching from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator will depend on the mode of the main oscillator. In addition to eight clock cycles of the main oscillator, additional delays may take place.

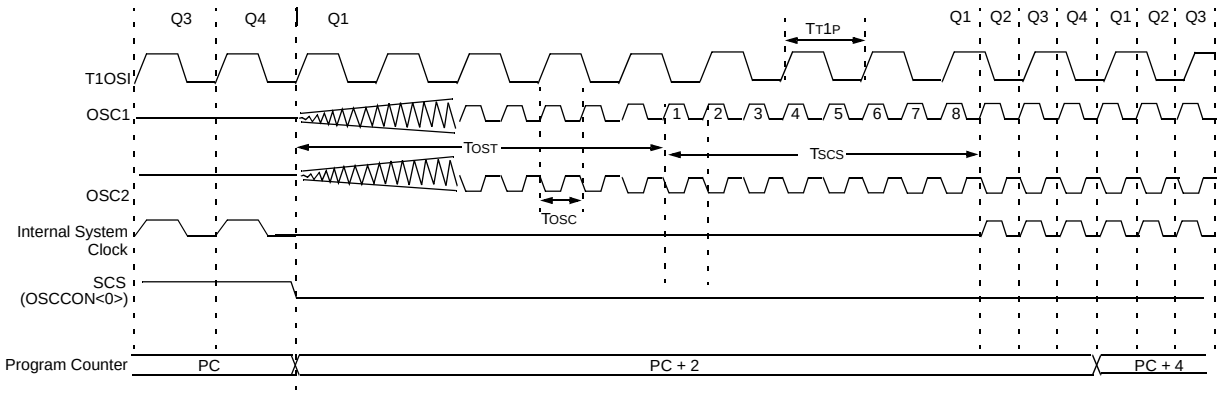
If the main oscillator is configured for an external crystal (HS, XT, LP), the transition will take place after an oscillator start-up time (TOST) has occurred. A timing diagram indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for HS, XT and LP modes is shown in Figure 2-8.

FIGURE 2-7: TIMING DIAGRAM FOR TRANSITION FROM OSC1 TO TIMER1 OSCILLATOR



Note 1: Delay on internal system clock is eight oscillator cycles for synchronization.

FIGURE 2-8: TIMING DIAGRAM FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (HS,XT,LP)



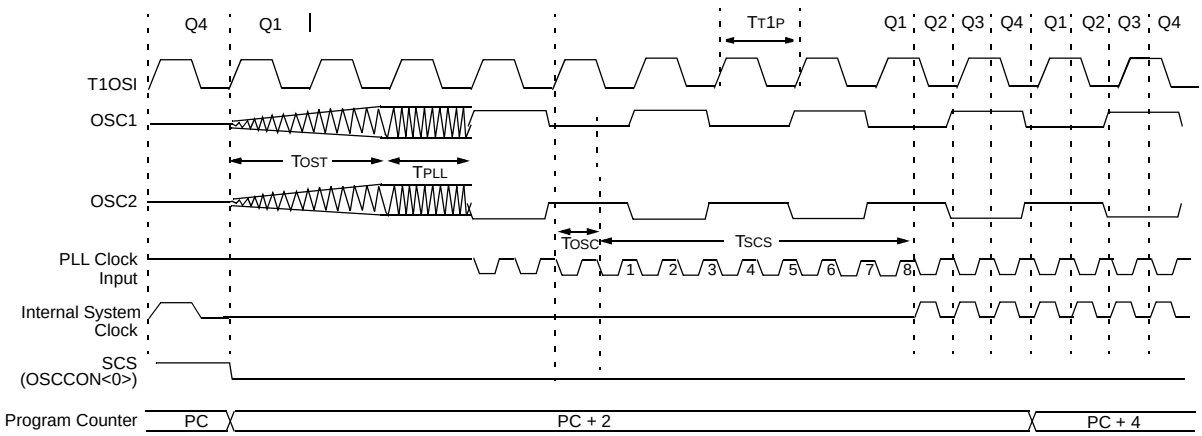
Note 1: TOST = 1024TOSC (drawing not to scale).

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

If the main oscillator is configured for HS4 (PLL) mode, an oscillator start-up time (TOST) plus an additional PLL time-out (TPLL) will occur. The PLL time-out is typically 2 ms and allows the PLL to lock to the main oscillator frequency. A timing diagram indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for HS4 mode is shown in Figure 2-9.

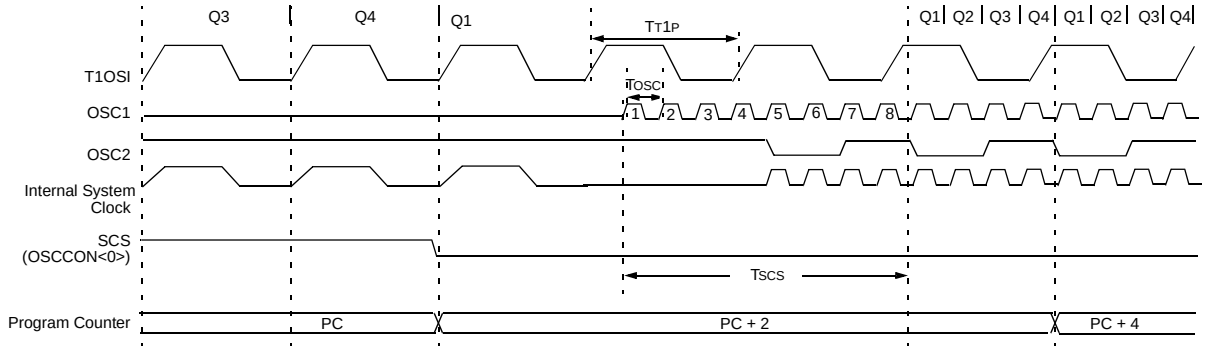
If the main oscillator is configured in the RC, RCIO, EC or ECIO modes, there is no oscillator start-up time-out. Operation will resume after eight cycles of the main oscillator have been counted. A timing diagram indicating the transition from the Timer1 oscillator to the main oscillator for RC, RCIO, EC and ECIO modes is shown in Figure 2-10.

FIGURE 2-9: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (HS WITH PLL)



Note 1: TOST = 1024TOSC (drawing not to scale).

FIGURE 2-10: TIMING FOR TRANSITION BETWEEN TIMER1 AND OSC1 (RC, EC)



Note 1: RC oscillator mode assumed.

2.7 Effects of SLEEP Mode on the On-chip Oscillator

When the device executes a SLEEP instruction, the on-chip clocks and oscillator are turned off and the device is held at the beginning of an instruction cycle (Q1 state). With the oscillator off, the OSC1 and OSC2 signals will stop oscillating. Since all the transistor switching currents have been removed, SLEEP mode achieves the lowest current consumption of the device (only leakage currents). Enabling any on-chip feature that will operate during SLEEP will increase the current consumed during SLEEP. The user can wake from SLEEP through external RESET, Watchdog Timer Reset or through an interrupt.

2.8 Power-up Delays

Power up delays are controlled by two timers, so that no external RESET circuitry is required for most applications. The delays ensure that the device is kept in RESET until the device power supply and clock are stable. For additional information on RESET operation, see Section 3.0 RESET.

The first timer is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which optionally provides a fixed delay of T_{PWRT} (parameter #33) on power-up only (POR and BOR). The second timer is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in RESET until the crystal oscillator is stable.

With the PLL enabled (HS4 oscillator mode), the time-out sequence following a Power-on Reset is different from other oscillator modes. The time-out sequence is as follows: the PWRT time-out is invoked after a POR time delay has expired, then the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is invoked. However, this is still not a sufficient amount of time to allow the PLL to lock at high frequencies. The PWRT timer is used to provide an additional time-out. This time is called T_{PLL} (parameter #7) to allow the PLL ample time to lock to the incoming clock frequency.

TABLE 2-3: OSC1 AND OSC2 PIN STATES IN SLEEP MODE

OSC Mode	OSC1 Pin	OSC2 Pin
RC	Floating, external resistor should pull high	At logic low
RCIO	Floating, external resistor should pull high	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
ECIO	Floating	Configured as PORTA, bit 6
EC	Floating	At logic low
LP, XT, and HS	Feedback inverter disabled, at quiescent voltage level	Feedback inverter disabled, at quiescent voltage level

Note: See Table 3-1 in Section 3.0 RESET, for time-outs due to SLEEP and $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

3.0 RESET

The PIC18CXX8 differentiates between various kinds of RESET:

a) Power-on Reset (POR)
b) $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during normal operation
c) $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during SLEEP
d) Watchdog Timer (WDT) Reset (during normal operation)
e) Programmable Brown-out Reset (PBOR)
f) `RESET` Instruction
g) Stack Full Reset
h) Stack Underflow Reset

Most registers are unaffected by a RESET. Their status is unknown on POR and unchanged by all other RESETs. The other registers are forced to a "RESET" state on Power-on Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$, WDT Reset, Brown-out Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during SLEEP and by the `RESET` instruction.

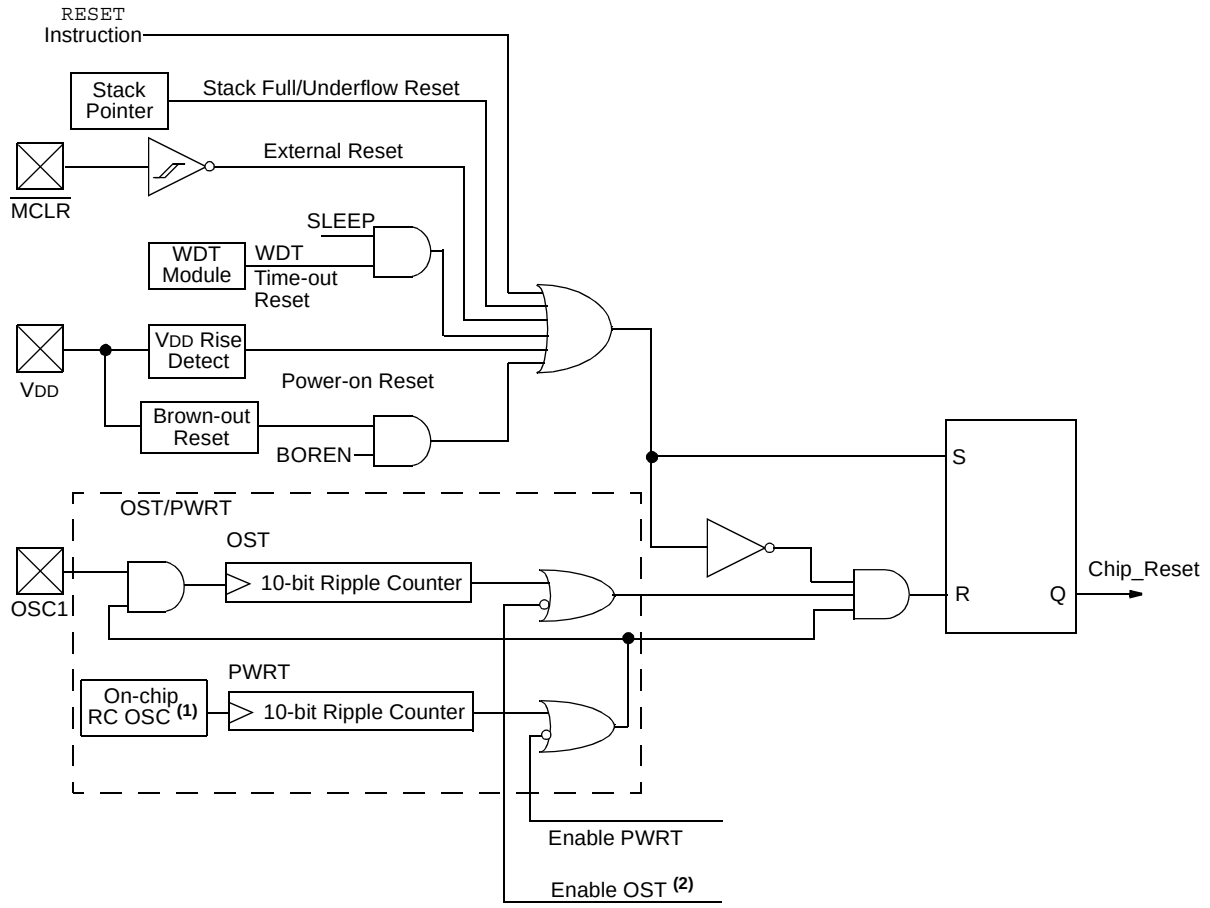
Most registers are not affected by a WDT wake-up, since this is viewed as the resumption of normal operation. Status bits from the RCON register, $\overline{\text{RI}}$, $\overline{\text{TO}}$, $\overline{\text{PD}}$, $\overline{\text{POR}}$ and $\overline{\text{BOR}}$ are set or cleared differently in different RESET situations, as indicated in Table 3-2. These bits are used in software to determine the nature of the RESET. See Table 3-3 for a full description of the RESET states of all registers.

A simplified block diagram of the on-chip RESET circuit is shown in Figure 3-1.

The Enhanced MCU devices have a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ noise filter in the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset path. The filter will detect and ignore small pulses.

A WDT Reset does not drive $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin low.

FIGURE 3-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT



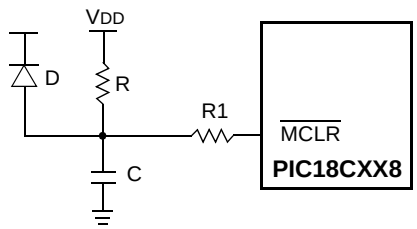
Note 1: This is a separate oscillator from the RC oscillator of the CLKI pin.
2: See Table 3-1 for time-out situations.

3.1 Power-on Reset (POR)

A Power-on Reset pulse is generated on-chip when a VDD rise is detected. To take advantage of the POR circuitry, connect the MCLR pin directly (or through a resistor) to VDD. This will eliminate external RC components usually needed to create a Power-on Reset delay. A minimum rise rate for VDD is specified (parameter D004). For a slow rise time, see Figure 3-2.

When the device starts normal operation (exits the RESET condition), device operating parameters (voltage, frequency, temperature,...) must be met to ensure operation. If these conditions are not met, the device must be held in RESET until the operating conditions are met. Brown-out Reset may be used to meet the voltage start-up condition.

FIGURE 3-2: EXTERNAL POWER-ON RESET CIRCUIT (FOR SLOW VDD POWER-UP)



Note 1: External Power-on Reset circuit is required only if the VDD power-up slope is too slow. The diode D helps discharge the capacitor quickly when VDD powers down.

2: R < 40 kΩ is recommended to make sure that the voltage drop across R does not violate the device's electrical specification.

3: R1 = 100Ω to 1 kΩ will limit any current flowing into MCLR from external capacitor C in the event of MCLR/VPP pin breakdown due to Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) or Electrical Overstress (EOS).

3.2 Power-up Timer (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer provides a fixed nominal time-out (parameter #33), only on power-up from the POR. The Power-up Timer operates on an internal RC oscillator. The chip is kept in RESET as long as the PWRT is active. The PWRT's time delay allows VDD to rise to an acceptable level. A configuration bit (PWRTEN in CONFIG2L register) is provided to enable/disable the PWRT.

The power-up time delay will vary from chip to chip due to VDD, temperature and process variation. See DC parameter #33 for details.

3.3 Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) provides 1024 oscillator cycle (from OSC1 input) delay after the PWRT delay is over (parameter #32). This ensures that the crystal oscillator or resonator has started and stabilized.

The OST time-out is invoked only for XT, LP, HS and HS4 modes and only on Power-on Reset or wake-up from SLEEP.

3.4 PLL Lock Time-out

With the PLL enabled, the time-out sequence following a Power-on Reset is different from other oscillator modes. A portion of the Power-up Timer is used to provide a fixed time-out that is sufficient for the PLL to lock to the main oscillator frequency. This PLL lock time-out (TPLL) is typically 2 ms and follows the oscillator start-up time-out (OST).

3.5 Brown-out Reset (BOR)

A configuration bit, BOREN, can disable (if clear/programmed) or enable (if set) the Brown-out Reset circuitry. If VDD falls below parameter D005 for greater than parameter #35, the brown-out situation resets the chip. A RESET may not occur if VDD falls below parameter D005 for less than parameter #35. The chip will remain in Brown-out Reset until VDD rises above BVDD. The Power-up Timer will then be invoked and will keep the chip in RESET an additional time delay (parameter #33). If VDD drops below BVDD while the Power-up Timer is running, the chip will go back into a Brown-out Reset and the Power-up Timer will be initialized. Once VDD rises above BVDD, the Power-up Timer will execute the additional time delay.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

3.6 Time-out Sequence

On power-up, the time-out sequence is as follows: First, PWRT time-out is invoked after the POR time delay has expired, then OST is activated. The total time-out will vary based on oscillator configuration and the status of the PWRT. For example, in RC mode with the PWRT disabled, there will be no time-out at all. Figure 3-3, Figure 3-4, Figure 3-5, Figure 3-6 and Figure 3-7 depict time-out sequences on power-up.

Since the time-outs occur from the POR pulse, if $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is kept low long enough, the time-outs will expire. Bringing $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ high will begin execution immediately (Figure 3-5). This is useful for testing purposes or to synchronize more than one PIC18CXX8 device operating in parallel.

Table 3-2 shows the RESET conditions for some Special Function Registers, while Table 3-3 shows the RESET conditions for all registers.

TABLE 3-1: TIME-OUT IN VARIOUS SITUATIONS

Oscillator Configuration	Power-up(2)		Brown-out(2)	Wake-up from SLEEP or Oscillator Switch
	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$ = 0	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$ = 1		
HS with PLL enabled(1)	72 ms + 1024Tosc + 2 ms	1024Tosc + 2 ms	72 ms + 1024Tosc + 2 ms	1024Tosc + 2 ms
HS, XT, LP	72 ms + 1024Tosc	1024Tosc	72 ms + 1024Tosc	1024Tosc
EC	72 ms	—	72 ms	—
External RC	72 ms	—	72 ms	—

Note 1: 2 ms = Nominal time required for the 4X PLL to lock.
2: 72 ms is the nominal power-up timer delay.

REGISTER 3-1: RCON REGISTER BITS AND POSITIONS

R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
IPEN	LWRT	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
bit 7							bit 0

TABLE 3-2: STATUS BITS, THEIR SIGNIFICANCE AND THE INITIALIZATION CONDITION FOR RCON REGISTER

Condition	Program Counter	RCON Register	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$	STKFUL	STKUNF
Power-on Reset	0000h	00-1 1100	1	1	1	0	0	u	u
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during normal operation	0000h	00-u uuuu	u	u	u	u	u	u	u
Software Reset during normal operation	0000h	0u-0 uuuu	0	u	u	u	u	u	u
Stack Full Reset during normal operation	0000h	0u-u uu11	u	u	u	1	1	u	1
Stack Underflow Reset during normal operation	0000h	0u-u uu11	u	u	u	1	1	1	u
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during SLEEP	0000h	00-u 10uu	u	1	0	u	u	u	u
WDT Reset	0000h	0u-u 01uu	u	0	1	u	u	u	u
WDT Wake-up	PC + 2	uu-u 00uu	u	0	0	u	u	u	u
Brown-out Reset	0000h	0u-1 11u0	1	1	1	u	0	u	u
Interrupt wake-up from SLEEP	PC + 2(1)	uu-u 00uu	u	0	0	u	u	u	u

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0'
Note 1: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEH or GIEL bits are set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0x000008h or 0x000018h).

FIGURE 3-3: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ TIED TO V_{DD})

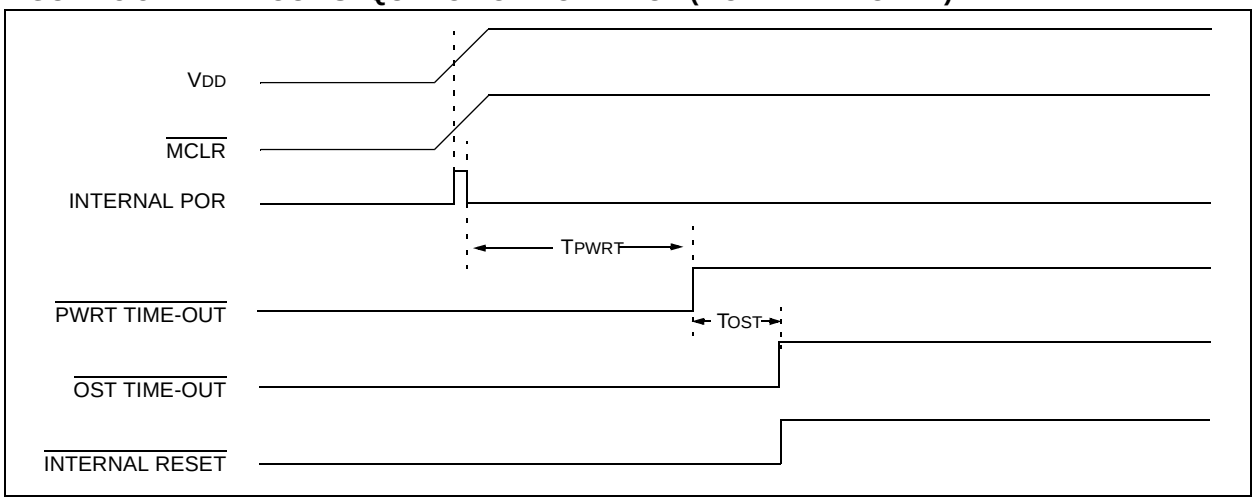


FIGURE 3-4: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ NOT TIED TO V_{DD}): CASE 1

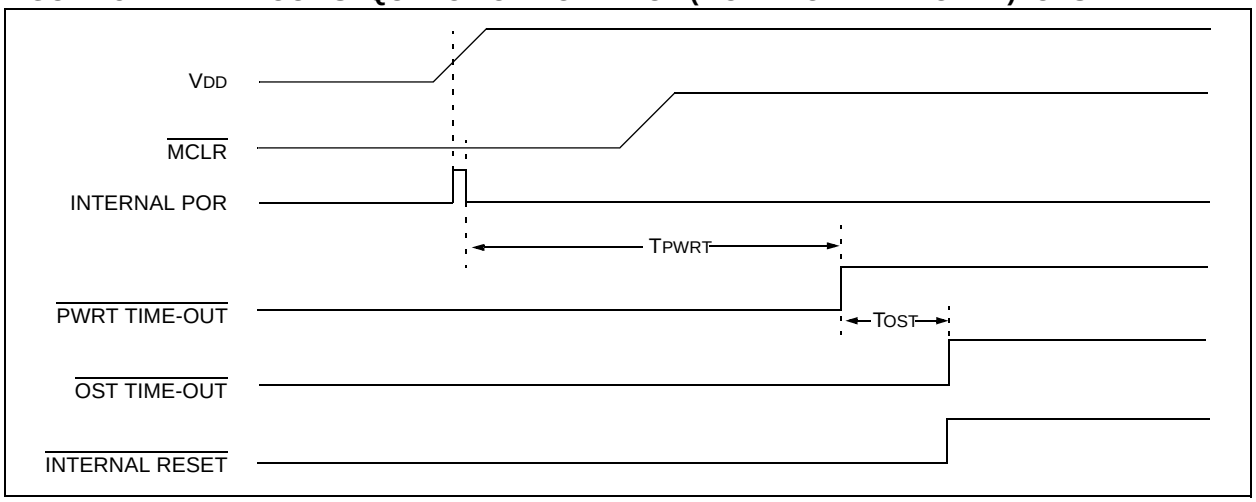
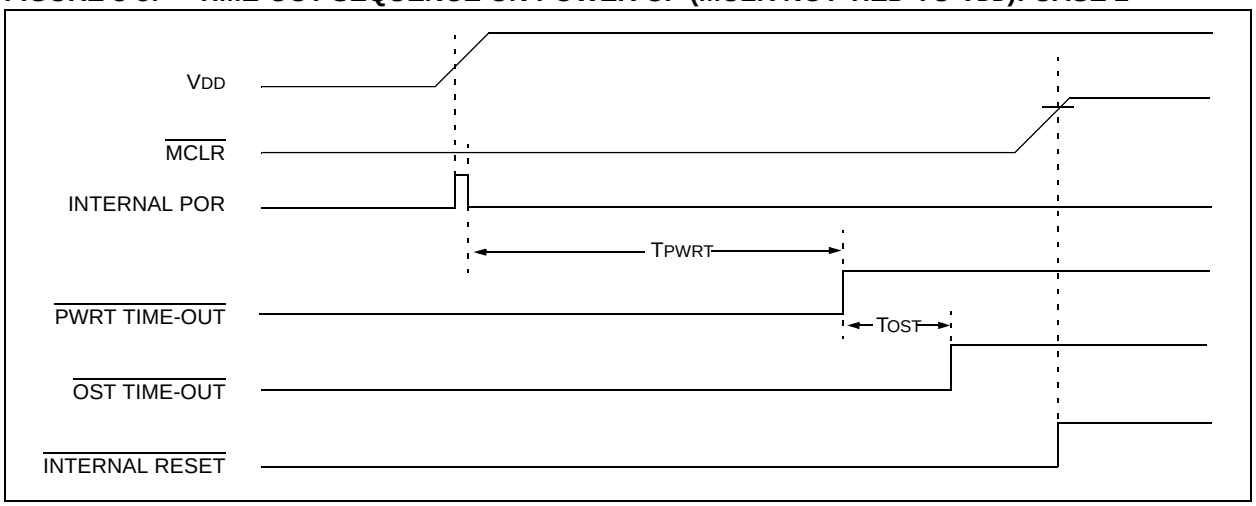


FIGURE 3-5: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POWER-UP ($\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ NOT TIED TO V_{DD}): CASE 2



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 3-6: SLOW RISE TIME ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO VDD)

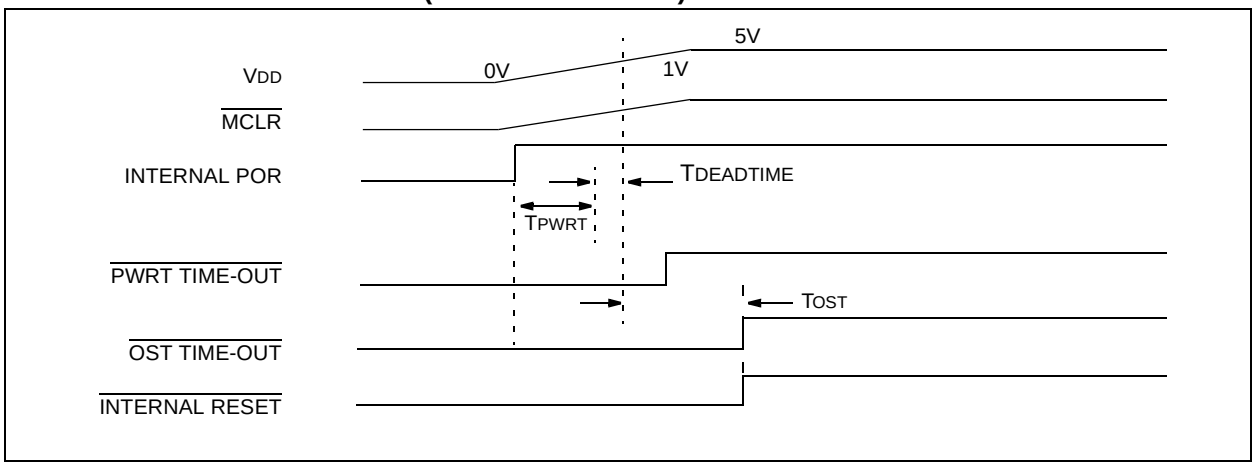
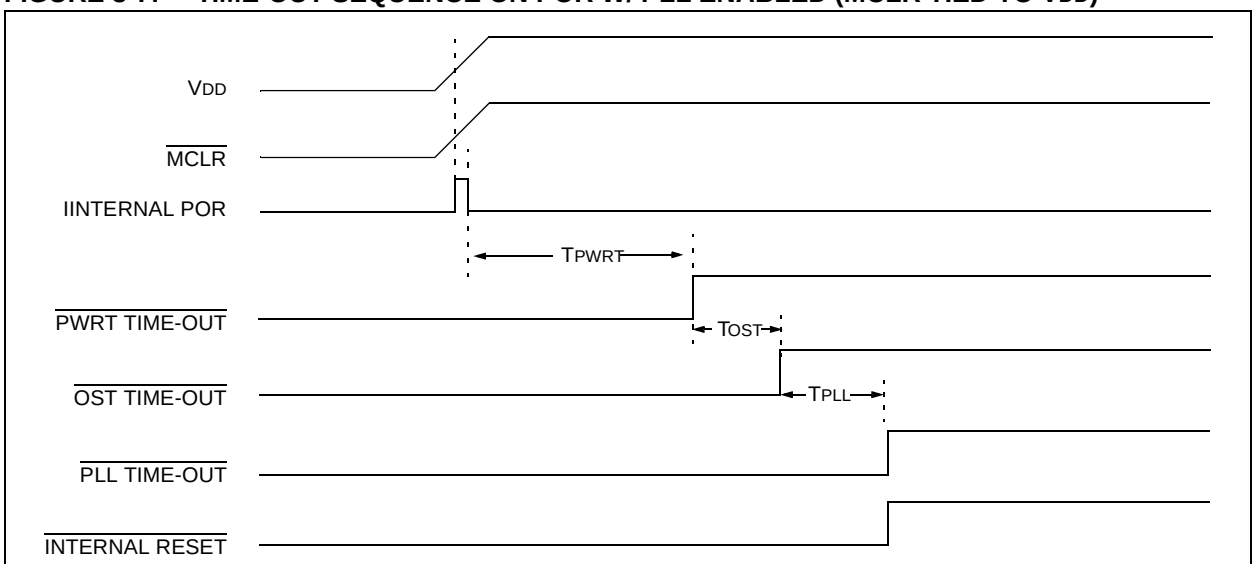


FIGURE 3-7: TIME-OUT SEQUENCE ON POR W/ PLL ENABLED ($\overline{MCLR}$ TIED TO VDD)



TOST = 1024 clock cycles.

TPLL ≈ 2 ms max. First three stages of the PWRT timer.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
TOSU	658	858	---0 0000	---0 0000	---0 uuuu(3)
TOSH	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
TOSL	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(3)
STKPTR	658	858	00-0 0000	00-0 0000	uu-u uuuu(3)
PCLATU	658	858	---0 0000	---0 0000	---u uuuu
PCLATH	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PCL	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	PC + 2(2)
TBLPTRU	658	858	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
TBLPTRH	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TBLPTRL	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TABLAT	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PRODH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PRODL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INTCON	658	858	0000 000x	0000 000u	uuuu uuuu(1)
INTCON2	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu(1)
INTCON3	658	858	1100 0000	1100 0000	uuuu uuuu(1)
INDF0	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC0	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC0	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC0	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW0	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR0H	658	858	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
FSR0L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
WREG	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
INDF1	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC1	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC1	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC1	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW1	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: The long write enable is only reset on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$.

7: Available on PIC18C858 only.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
FSR1H	658	858	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
FSR1L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
BSR	658	858	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
INDF2	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTINC2	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
POSTDEC2	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
PREINC2	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
PLUSW2	658	858	N/A	N/A	N/A
FSR2H	658	858	---- 0000	---- 0000	---- uuuu
FSR2L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
STATUS	658	858	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
TMR0H	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR0L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T0CON	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
OSCCON	658	858	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
LVDCON	658	858	--00 0101	--00 0101	--uu uuuu
WDTCON	658	858	---- ---0	---- ---0	---- ---u
RCON(4, 6)	658	858	00-1 11q0	00-1 qquu	uu-u qquu
TMR1H	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR1L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	658	858	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu	u-uu uuuu
TMR2	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PR2	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	1111 1111
T2CON	658	858	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu
SSPBUF	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
SSPADD	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPSTAT	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON1	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON2	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: The long write enable is only reset on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$.

7: Available on PIC18C858 only.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
ADRESH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	658	858	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
ADCON1	658	858	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
ADCON2	658	858	0--- -000	0--- -000	u--- -uuu
CCPR1H	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	658	858	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CCPR2H	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	658	858	--00 0000	--00 0000	--uu uuuu
CVRCON	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CMCON	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TMR3H	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TMR3L	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
T3CON	658	858	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PSPCON	658	858	0000 ----	0000 ----	uuuu ----
SPBRG	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RCREG	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXREG	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXSTA	658	858	0000 -01x	0000 -01u	uuuu -uuu
RCSTA	658	858	0000 000x	0000 000u	uuuu uuuu
IPR3	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
PIR3	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PIE3	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
IPR2	658	858	-1-- 1111	-1-- 1111	-u-- uuuu
PIR2	658	858	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000	-u-- uuuu(1)
PIE2	658	858	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000	-u-- uuuu
IPR1	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
	658	858	-111 1111	-111 1111	-uuu uuuu
PIR1	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu(1)
	658	858	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu(1)
PIE1	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
	658	858	-000 0000	-000 0000	-uuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: The long write enable is only reset on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$.

7: Available on PIC18C858 only.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
TRISJ(7)	-	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISH(7)	-	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISG	658	858	---1 1111	---1 1111	---u uuuu
TRISF	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISE	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISC	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISB	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
TRISA(5)	658	858	-111 1111(5)	-111 1111(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)
LATJ(7)	-	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATH(7)	-	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATG	658	858	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
LATF	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATE	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATD	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATC	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATB	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
LATA(5)	658	858	-xxx xxxx(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)
PORTJ(7)	-	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTH(7)	-	858	0000 xxxx	0000 uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTG	658	858	---x xxxx	---u uuuu	---u uuuu
PORTF	658	858	x000 0000	u000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PORTE	658	858	--00 xxxx	uuuu u000	uuuu uuuu
PORTD	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTC	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTB	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTA(5)	658	858	-x0x 0000(5)	-u0u 0000(5)	-uuu uuuu(5)
TRISK	658	858	1111 1111	1111 1111	uuuu uuuu
LATK	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
PORTK	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXERRCNT	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RXERRCNT	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
COMSTAT	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
CIOCON	658	858	1000 ----	1000 ----	uuuu ----
BRGCON3	658	858	-0-- -000	-0-- -000	-u-- -uuu
BRGCON2	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
BRGCON1	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: The long write enable is only reset on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$.

7: Available on PIC18C858 only.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
CANCON	658	858	xxxx xxx-	uuuu uuu-	uuuu uuu-
CANSTAT	658	858	xxx- xxx-	uuu- uuu-	uuu- uuu-
RXB0D7	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D6	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D5	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D4	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D3	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D2	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D1	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D0	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0DLC	658	858	0xxx xxxx	0uuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0SIDL	658	858	xxxx x-xx	uuuu u-uu	uuuu u-uu
RXB0SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB0CON	658	858	000- 0000	000- 0000	uuu- uuuu
RXB1D7	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D6	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D5	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D4	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D3	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D2	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D1	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D0	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1DLC	658	858	0xxx xxxx	0uuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1SIDL	658	858	xxxx x0xx	uuuu u0uu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXB1CON	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D7	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D6	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D5	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D4	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D3	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D2	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D1	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: The long write enable is only reset on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$.

7: Available on PIC18C858 only.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
TXB0D0	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0DLC	658	858	0x00 xxxx	0u00 uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0SIDL	658	858	xxx0 x0xx	uuu0 u0uu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB0CON	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D7	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D6	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D5	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D4	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D3	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D2	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D1	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D0	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1DLC	658	858	0x00 xxxx	0u00 uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1SIDL	658	858	xxx0 x0xx	uuu0 u0uu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB1CON	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D7	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D6	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D5	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D4	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D3	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D2	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D1	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D0	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2DLC	658	858	0x00 xxxx	0u00 uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2SIDL	658	858	xxx0 x0xx	uuu0 u0uu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
TXB2CON	658	858	0000 0000	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
RXM1EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXM1EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: The long write enable is only reset on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$.

7: Available on PIC18C858 only.

TABLE 3-3: INITIALIZATION CONDITIONS FOR ALL REGISTERS (CONTINUED)

Register	Applicable Devices		Power-on Reset, Brown-out Reset	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset WDT Reset RESET Instruction Stack Resets	Wake-up via WDT or Interrupt
RXM1SIDL	658	858	xxx- --xx	uuu- --uu	uuu- --uu
RXM1SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXM0EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXM0EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXM0SIDL	658	858	xxx- --xx	uuu- --uu	uuu- --uu
RXM0SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF5EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF5EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF5SIDL	658	858	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu	uuu- u-uu
RXF5SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF4EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF4EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF4SIDL	658	858	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu	uuu- u-uu
RXF4SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF3EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF3EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF3SIDL	658	858	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu	uuu- u-uu
RXF3SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF2EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF2EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF2SIDL	658	858	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu	uuu- u-uu
RXF2SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF1EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF1EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF1SIDL	658	858	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu	uuu- u-uu
RXF1SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF0EIDL	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF0EIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu
RXF0SIDL	658	858	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu	uuu- u-uu
RXF0SIDH	658	858	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu	uuuu uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, read as '0', q = value depends on condition

Note 1: One or more bits in the INTCONx or PIRx registers will be affected (to cause wake-up).

2: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0008h or 0018h).

3: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and the GIEL or GIEH bit is set, the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL are updated with the current value of the PC. The STKPTR is modified to point to the next location in the hardware stack.

4: See Table 3-2 for RESET value for specific condition.

5: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA, and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

6: The long write enable is only reset on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$.

7: Available on PIC18C858 only.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

There are two memory blocks in Enhanced MCU devices. These memory blocks are:

- Program Memory
- Data Memory

Each block has its own bus so that concurrent access can occur.

4.1 Program Memory Organization

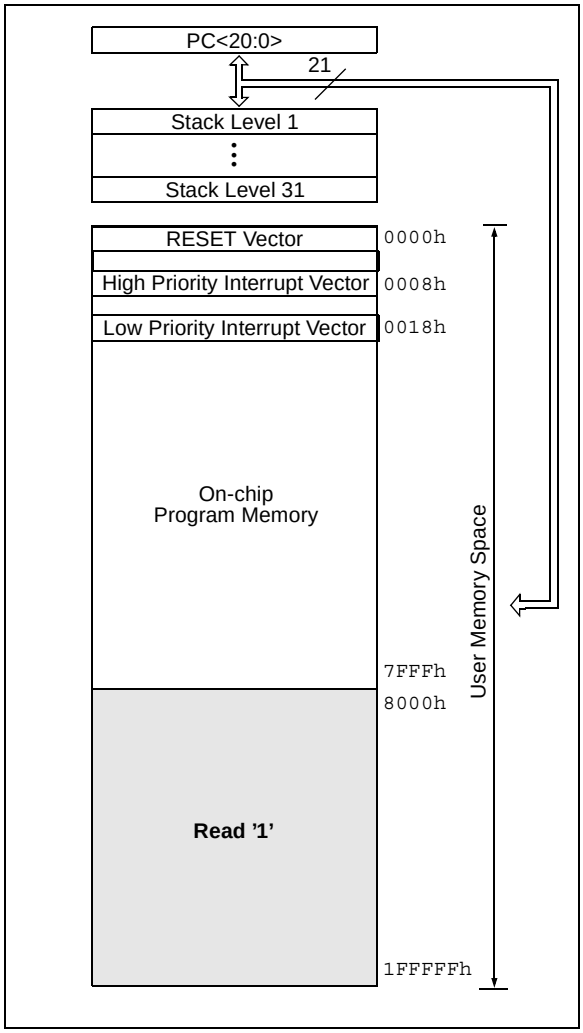
The PIC18CXX8 devices have a 21-bit program counter that is capable of addressing the 2 Mbyte program memory space.

The reset vector address is at 0000h and the interrupt vector addresses are at 0008h and 0018h. Figure 4-1 shows the diagram for program memory map and stack for the PIC18C658 and PIC18C858.

4.1.1 INTERNAL PROGRAM MEMORY OPERATION

All devices have 32 Kbytes of internal EPROM program memory. This means that the PIC18CXX8 devices can store up to 16K of single word instructions. Accessing a location between the physically implemented memory and the 2 Mbyte address will cause a read of all '0's (a `NOP` instruction).

FIGURE 4-1: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR PIC18C658/858



4.2 Return Address Stack

The return address stack allows any combination of up to 31 program calls and interrupts to occur. The PC (Program Counter) is pushed onto the stack when a `PUSH`, `CALL` or `RCALL` instruction is executed, or an interrupt is acknowledged. The PC value is pulled off the stack on a `RETURN`, `RETLW` or a `RETFIE` instruction. PCLATU and PCLATH are not affected by any of the return instructions.

The stack operates as a 31 word by 21-bit stack memory and a 5-bit stack pointer, with the stack pointer initialized to 00000b after all RESETs. There is no RAM associated with stack pointer 00000b. This is only a RESET value. During a `CALL` type instruction causing a push onto the stack, the stack pointer is first incremented and the RAM location pointed to by the stack pointer is written with the contents of the PC. During a `RETURN` type instruction causing a pop from the stack, the contents of the RAM location indicated by the STKPTR is transferred to the PC and then the stack pointer is decremented.

The stack space is not part of either program or data space. The stack pointer is readable and writable, and the data on the top of the stack is readable and writable through SFR registers. Status bits indicate if the stack pointer is at or beyond the 31 levels provided.

4.2.1 TOP-OF-STACK ACCESS

The top of the stack is readable and writable. Three register locations, TOSU, TOSH and TOSL allow access to the contents of the stack location indicated by the STKPTR register. This allows users to implement a software stack if necessary. After a `CALL`, `RCALL` or interrupt, the software can read the pushed value by reading the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL registers. These values can be placed on a user defined software stack. At return time, the software can replace the TOSU, TOSH and TOSL and do a return.

The user should disable the global interrupt enable bits during this time to prevent inadvertent stack operations.

4.2.2 RETURN STACK POINTER (STKPTR)

The STKPTR register contains the stack pointer value, the STKFUL (stack full) status bit, and the STKUNF (stack underflow) status bits. Register 4-1 shows the STKPTR register. The value of the stack pointer can be 0 through 31. The stack pointer increments when values are pushed onto the stack and decrements when values are popped off the stack. At RESET, the stack pointer value will be 0. The user may read and write the stack pointer value. This feature can be used by a Real Time Operating System for return stack maintenance.

After the PC is pushed onto the stack 31 times (without popping any values off the stack), the STKFUL bit is set. The STKFUL bit can only be cleared in software or by a POR.

The action that takes place when the stack becomes full depends on the state of the STVREN (stack overflow RESET enable) configuration bit. Refer to Section 18 for a description of the device configuration bits. If STVREN is set (default) the 31st push will push the (PC + 2) value onto the stack, set the STKFUL bit, and reset the device. The STKFUL bit will remain set and the stack pointer will be set to 0.

If STVREN is cleared, the STKFUL bit will be set on the 31st push and the stack pointer will increment to 31. The 32nd push will overwrite the 31st push (and so on), while STKPTR remains at 31.

When the stack has been popped enough times to unload the stack, the next pop will return a value of zero to the PC and sets the STKUNF bit, while the stack pointer remains at 0. The STKUNF bit will remain set until cleared in software or a POR occurs.

Note:	Returning a value of zero to the PC on an underflow has the effect of vectoring the program to the RESET vector, where the stack conditions can be verified and appropriate actions can be taken.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 4-1: STKPTR - STACK POINTER REGISTER

R/C-0	R/C-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
STKFUL	STKUNF	—	SP4	SP3	SP2	SP1	SP0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **STKFUL**: Stack Full Flag bit
1 = Stack became full or overflowed
0 = Stack has not become full or overflowed

bit 6 **STKUNF**: Stack Underflow Flag bit
1 = Stack underflow occurred
0 = Stack underflow did not occur

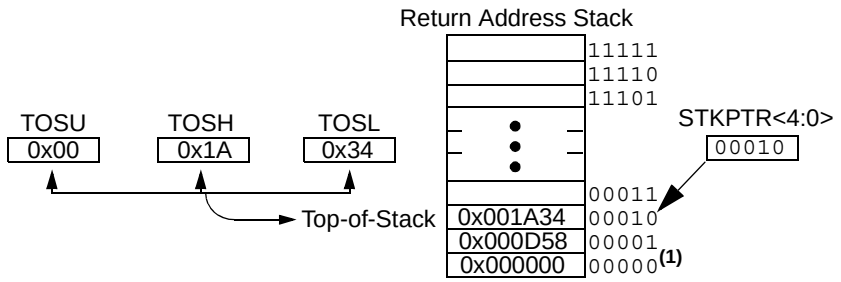
bit 5 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **SP4:SP0**: Stack Pointer Location bits

Note: Bit 7 and bit 6 can only be cleared in user software or by a POR.

Legend			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	C = Clearable bit

FIGURE 4-2: RETURN ADDRESS STACK AND ASSOCIATED REGISTERS



Note 1: No RAM associated with this address; always maintained ‘0’s.

4.2.3 PUSH AND POP INSTRUCTIONS

Since the Top-of-Stack (TOS) is readable and writable, the ability to push values onto the stack and pull values off the stack without disturbing normal program execution is a desirable option. To push the current PC value onto the stack, a `PUSH` instruction can be executed. This will increment the stack pointer and load the current PC value onto the stack. TOSU, TOSH and TOSL can then be modified to place a return address on the stack.

The `POP` instruction discards the current TOS by decrementing the stack pointer. The previous value pushed onto the stack then becomes the TOS value.

4.2.4 STACK FULL/UNDERFLOW RESETS

These RESETs are enabled by programming the STVREN configuration bit. When the STVREN bit is disabled, a full or underflow condition will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit, but not cause a device RESET. When the STVREN bit is enabled, a full or underflow will set the appropriate STKFUL or STKUNF bit and then cause a device RESET. The STKFUL or STKUNF bits are only cleared by the user software or a POR.

4.3 Fast Register Stack

A “fast return” option is available for interrupts and calls. A fast register stack is provided for the STATUS, WREG and BSR registers and is only one layer in depth. The stack is not readable or writable and is loaded with the current value of the corresponding register when the processor vectors for an interrupt. The values in the fast register stack are then loaded back into the working registers if the `fast return` instruction is used to return from the interrupt.

A low or high priority interrupt source will push values into the stack registers. If both low and high priority interrupts are enabled, the stack registers cannot be used reliably for low priority interrupts. If a high priority interrupt occurs while servicing a low priority interrupt, the stack register values stored by the low priority interrupt will be overwritten.

If high priority interrupts are not disabled during low priority interrupts, users must save the key registers in software during a low priority interrupt.

If no interrupts are used, the fast register stack can be used to restore the STATUS, WREG and BSR registers at the end of a subroutine call. To use the fast register stack for a subroutine call, a `fast call` instruction must be executed.

Example 4-1 shows a source code example that uses the fast register stack.

EXAMPLE 4-1: FAST REGISTER STACK CODE EXAMPLE

```
CALL SUB1, FAST     ;STATUS, WREG, BSR
                    ;SAVED IN FAST REGISTER
                    ;STACK
       •
       •

SUB1   •
       •
       •
   RETURN FAST      ;RESTORE VALUES SAVED
                    ;IN FAST REGISTER STACK
```

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.4 PCL, PCLATH and PCLATU

The program counter (PC) specifies the address of the instruction to fetch for execution. The PC is 21-bits wide. The low byte is called the PCL register. This register is readable and writable. The high byte is called the PCH register. This register contains the PC<15:8> bits and is not directly readable or writable. Updates to the PCH register may be performed through the PCLATH register. The upper byte is called PCU. This register contains the PC<20:16> bits and is not directly readable or writable. Updates to the PCU register may be performed through the PCLATU register.

The PC addresses bytes in the program memory. To prevent the PC from becoming misaligned with word instructions, the LSb of PCL is fixed to a value of ’0’. The PC increments by 2 to address sequential instructions in the program memory.

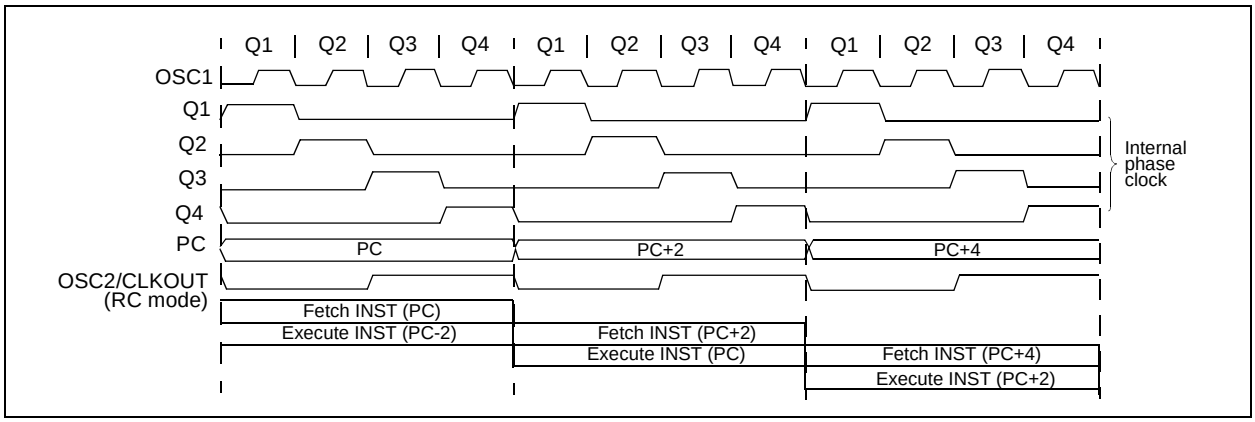
The `CALL`, `RCALL`, `GOTO` and program branch instructions write to the program counter directly. For these instructions, the contents of PCLATH and PCLATU are not transferred to the program counter.

The contents of PCLATH and PCLATU will be transferred to the program counter by an operation that writes PCL. Similarly, the upper two bytes of the program counter will be transferred to PCLATH and PCLATU by an operation that reads PCL. This is useful for computed offsets to the PC (See Section 4.8.1).

4.5 Clocking Scheme/Instruction Cycle

The clock input (from OSC1) is internally divided by four to generate four non-overlapping quadrature clocks, namely Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4. Internally, the program counter (PC) is incremented every Q1, the instruction is fetched from the program memory and latched into the instruction register in Q4. The instruction is decoded and executed during the following Q1 through Q4. The clocks and instruction execution flow are shown in Figure 4-3.

FIGURE 4-3: CLOCK/INSTRUCTION CYCLE



4.6 Instruction Flow/Pipelining

An “Instruction Cycle” consists of four Q cycles (Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4). The instruction fetch and execute are pipelined such that fetch takes one instruction cycle while decode and execute takes another instruction cycle. However, due to the pipelining, each instruction effectively executes in one cycle. If an instruction causes the program counter to change (e.g., `GOTO`), two cycles are required to complete the instruction (Example 4-2).

A fetch cycle begins with the program counter (PC) incrementing in Q1.

In the execution cycle, the fetched instruction is latched into the “Instruction Register” (IR) in cycle Q1. This instruction is then decoded and executed during the Q2, Q3, and Q4 cycles. Data memory is read during Q2 (operand read) and written during Q4 (destination write).

4.7 Instructions in Program Memory

The program memory is addressed in bytes. Instructions are stored as two bytes or four bytes in program memory. The Least Significant Byte of an instruction word is always stored in a program memory location with an even address (LSB = ’0’). Figure 4-1 shows an example of how instruction words are stored in the program memory. To maintain alignment with instruction boundaries, the PC increments in steps of 2 and the LSB will always read ’0’ (See Section 4.4).

The `CALL` and `GOTO` instructions have an absolute program memory address embedded into the instruction. Since instructions are always stored on word boundaries, the data contained in the instruction is a word address. The word address is written to PC<20:1>, which accesses the desired byte address in program memory. Instruction #2 in Figure 4-1 shows how the instruction “`GOTO 000006h`” is encoded in the program memory. Program branch instructions that encode a relative address offset operate in the same manner. The offset value stored in a branch instruction represents the number of single word instructions by which the PC will be offset. Section 23.0 provides further details of the instruction set.

EXAMPLE 4-2: INSTRUCTION PIPELINE FLOW

	TCY0	TCY1	TCY2	TCY3	TCY4	TCY5
1. `MOVLW 55h`	Fetch 1	Execute 1				
2. `MOVWF PORTB`		Fetch 2	Execute 2			
3. `BRA SUB_1`			Fetch 3	Execute 3		
4. `BSF PORTA, BIT3 (Forced NOP)`				Fetch 4	Flush	
5. `Instruction @ address SUB_1`					Fetch SUB_1	Execute SUB_1

All instructions are single cycle, except for any program branches. These take two cycles since the fetch instruction is “flushed” from the pipeline while the new instruction is being fetched and then executed.

TABLE 4-1: INSTRUCTIONS IN PROGRAM MEMORY

Instruction	Opcode	Memory	Address
—			000007h
`MOVLW 055h`	0E55h	55h	000008h
		0Eh	000009h
`GOTO 000006h`	EF03h, F000h	03h	00000Ah
		EFh	00000Bh
		00h	00000Ch
		F0h	00000Dh
`MOVFF 123h, 456h`	C123h, F456h	23h	00000Eh
		C1h	00000Fh
		56h	000010h
		F4h	000011h
—			000012h

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.7.1 TWO WORD INSTRUCTIONS

The PIC18CXX8 devices have 4 two word instructions: `MOVFF`, `CALL`, `GOTO` and `LFSR`. The second word of these instructions has the 4 MSB's set to 1's and is a special kind of `NOP` instruction. The lower 12 bits of the second word contain data to be used by the instruction. If the first word of the instruction is executed, the data in the second word is accessed. If the second word of the instruction is executed by itself (first word was skipped), it will execute as a `NOP`. This action is necessary when the two word instruction is preceded by a conditional instruction that changes the PC. A program example that demonstrates this concept is shown in Example 4-3. Refer to Section 19.0 for further details of the instruction set.

4.8 Lookup Tables

Lookup tables are implemented two ways. These are:

- Computed `GOTO`
- Table Reads

4.8.1 COMPUTED `GOTO`

A computed `GOTO` is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter (`ADDWF PCL`).

A lookup table can be formed with an `ADDWF PCL` instruction and a group of `RETLW 0xnn` instructions. WREG is loaded with an offset into the table before executing a call to that table. The first instruction of the called routine is the `ADDWF PCL` instruction. The next instruction executed will be one of the `RETLW 0xnn` instructions that returns the value `0xnn` to the calling function.

The offset value (value in WREG) specifies the number of bytes that the program counter should advance.

In this method, only one data byte may be stored in each instruction location and room on the return address stack is required.

Warning:	The LSb of PCL is fixed to a value of '0'. Hence, computed `GOTO` to an odd address is not possible.

4.8.2 TABLE READS/TABLE WRITES

A better method of storing data in program memory allows 2 bytes of data to be stored in each instruction location.

Lookup table data may be stored as 2 bytes per program word by using table reads and writes. The table pointer (TBLPTR) specifies the byte address and the table latch (TABLAT) contains the data that is read from, or written to, program memory. Data is transferred to/from program memory one byte at a time.

A description of the Table Read/Table Write operation is shown in Section 5.0.

EXAMPLE 4-3: TWO WORD INSTRUCTIONS

CASE 1:				
Object Code	**Source Code**			
0110 0110 0000 0000	TSTFSZ	REG1	;	is RAM location 0?
1100 0001 0010 0011	MOVFF	REG1, REG2	;	No, execute 2-word instruction
1111 0100 0101 0110			;	2nd operand holds address of REG2
0010 0100 0000 0000	ADDWF	REG3	;	continue code
CASE 2:				
Object Code	**Source Code**			
0110 0110 0000 0000	TSTFSZ	REG1	;	is RAM location 0?
1100 0001 0010 0011	MOVFF	REG1, REG2	;	Yes
1111 0100 0101 0110			;	2nd operand becomes NOP
0010 0100 0000 0000	ADDWF	REG3	;	continue code

4.9 Data Memory Organization

The data memory is implemented as static RAM. Each register in the data memory has a 12-bit address, allowing up to 4096 bytes of data memory. Figure 4-4 shows the data memory organization for the PIC18CXX8 devices.

The data memory map is divided into as many as 16 banks that contain 256 bytes each. The lower 4 bits of the Bank Select Register (BSR<3:0>) select which bank will be accessed. The upper 4 bits for the BSR are not implemented.

The data memory contains Special Function Registers (SFR) and General Purpose Registers (GPR). The SFR's are used for control and status of the controller and peripheral functions, while GPR's are used for data storage and scratch pad operations in the user's application. The SFR's start at the last location of Bank 15 (0xFFF) and grow downwards. GPR's start at the first location of Bank 0 and grow upwards. Any read of an unimplemented location will read as '0's.

The entire data memory may be accessed directly or indirectly. Direct addressing may require the use of the BSR register. Indirect addressing requires the use of the File Select Register (FSR). Each FSR holds a 12-bit address value that can be used to access any location in the Data Memory map without banking.

The instruction set and architecture allow operations across all banks. This may be accomplished by indirect addressing or by the use of the `MOVFF` instruction. The `MOVFF` instruction is a two word/two cycle instruction that moves a value from one register to another.

To ensure that commonly used registers (SFR's and select GPR's) can be accessed in a single cycle, regardless of the current BSR values, an Access Bank is implemented. A segment of Bank 0 and a segment of Bank 15 comprise the Access RAM. Section 4.10 provides a detailed description of the Access RAM.

4.9.1 GENERAL PURPOSE REGISTER FILE

The register file can be accessed either directly or indirectly. Indirect addressing operates through the File Select Registers (FSR). The operation of indirect addressing is shown in Section 4.12.

Enhanced MCU devices may have banked memory in the GPR area. GPR's are not initialized by a Power-on Reset and are unchanged on all other RESETS.

Data RAM is available for use as GPR registers by all instructions. Bank 15 (0xF00 to 0xFFF) contains SFR's. All other banks of data memory contain GPR registers starting with bank 0.

4.9.2 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS

The Special Function Registers (SFR's) are registers used by the CPU and Peripheral Modules for controlling the desired operation of the device. These registers are implemented as static RAM. A list of these registers is given in Table 4-2.

The SFR's can be classified into two sets: those associated with the "core" function and those related to the peripheral functions. Those registers related to the "core" are described in this section, while those related to the operation of the peripheral features are described in the section of that peripheral feature.

The SFR's are typically distributed among the peripherals whose functions they control.

The unused SFR locations will be unimplemented and read as '0's. See Table 4-2 for addresses for the SFR's.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 4-4: DATA MEMORY MAP FOR PIC18C658/858

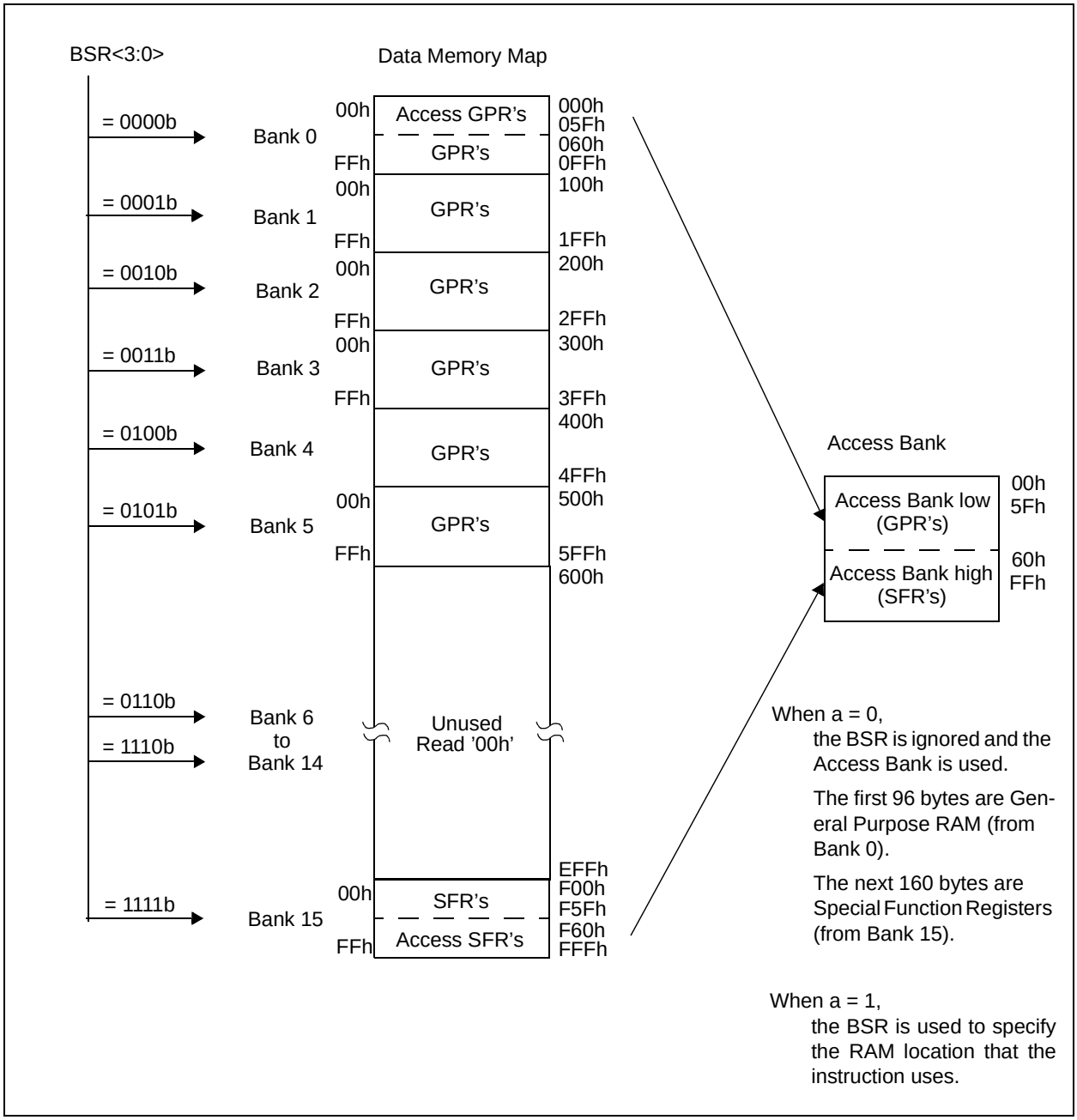


TABLE 4-2: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER MAP

Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name
FFFh	TOSU	FDFh	INDF2(2)	FBFh	CCPR1H	F9Fh	IPR1
FFEh	TOSH	FDEh	POSTINC2(2)	FBEh	CCPR1L	F9Eh	PIR1
FFDh	TOSL	FDDh	POSTDEC2(2)	FBDh	CCP1CON	F9Dh	PIE1
FFCh	STKPTR	FDCh	PREINC2(2)	FBCh	CCPR2H	F9Ch	—
FFBh	PCLATU	FDBh	PLUSW2(2)	FBBh	CCPR2L	F9Bh	—
FFAh	PCLATH	FDAh	FSR2H	FBAh	CCP2CON	F9Ah	TRISJ(5)
FF9h	PCL	FD9h	FSR2L	FB9h	—	F99h	TRISH(5)
FF8h	TBLPTRU	FD8h	STATUS	FB8h	—	F98h	TRISG
FF7h	TBLPTRH	FD7h	TMR0H	FB7h	—	F97h	TRISF
FF6h	TBLPTRL	FD6h	TMR0L	FB6h	—	F96h	TRISE
FF5h	TABLAT	FD5h	T0CON	FB5h	CVRCON	F95h	TRISD
FF4h	PRODH	FD4h	—	FB4h	CMCON	F94h	TRISC
FF3h	PRODL	FD3h	OSCCON	FB3h	TMR3H	F93h	TRISB
FF2h	INTCON	FD2h	LVDCON	FB2h	TMR3L	F92h	TRISA
FF1h	INTCON2	FD1h	WDTCON	FB1h	T3CON	F91h	LATJ(5)
FF0h	INTCON3	FD0h	RCON	FB0h	PSPCON	F90h	LATH(5)
FEFh	INDF0(2)	FCFh	TMR1H	FAFh	SPBRG	F8Fh	LATG
FEEh	POSTINC0(2)	FCEh	TMR1L	FAEh	RCREG	F8Eh	LATF
FEDh	POSTDEC0(2)	FCDh	T1CON	FADh	TXREG	F8Dh	LATE
FECh	PREINC0(2)	FCCh	TMR2	FACh	TXSTA	F8Ch	LATD
FEBh	PLUSW0(2)	FCBh	PR2	FABh	RCSTA	F8Bh	LATC
FEAh	FSR0H	FCAh	T2CON	FAAh	—	F8Ah	LATB
FE9h	FSR0L	FC9h	SSPBUF	FA9h	—	F89h	LATA
FE8h	WREG	FC8h	SSPADD	FA8h	—	F88h	PORTJ(5)
FE7h	INDF1(2)	FC7h	SSPSTAT	FA7h	—	F87h	PORTH(5)
FE6h	POSTINC1(2)	FC6h	SSPCON1	FA6h	—	F86h	PORTG
FE5h	POSTDEC1(2)	FC5h	SSPCON2	FA5h	IPR3	F85h	PORTF
FE4h	PREINC1(2)	FC4h	ADRESH	FA4h	PIR3	F84h	PORTE
FE3h	PLUSW1(2)	FC3h	ADRESL	FA3h	PIE3	F83h	PORTD
FE2h	FSR1H	FC2h	ADCON0	FA2h	IPR2	F82h	PORTC
FE1h	FSR1L	FC1h	ADCON1	FA1h	PIR2	F81h	PORTB
FE0h	BSR	FC0h	ADCON2	FA0h	PIE2	F80h	PORTA

Note 1: Unimplemented registers are read as ’0’.

2: This is not a physical register.

3: Contents of register is dependent on WIN2:WIN0 bits in CANCON register.

4: CANSTAT register is repeated in these locations to simplify application firmware. Unique names are given for each instance of the CANSTAT register due to the Microchip Header file requirement.

5: Available on PIC18C858 only.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name
F7Fh	TRISK(5)	F5Fh	—	F3Fh	—	F1Fh	RXM1EID0
F7Eh	LATK(5)	F5Eh	CANSTATRO0(4)	F3Eh	CANSTATRO2(4)	F1Eh	RXM1EID8
F7Dh	PORTK(5)	F5Dh	RXB1D7	F3Dh	TXB1D7	F1Dh	RXM1SIDL
F7Ch	—	F5Ch	RXB1D6	F3Ch	TXB1D6	F1Ch	RXM1SIDH
F7Bh	—	F5Bh	RXB1D5	F3Bh	TXB1D5	F1Bh	RXM0EID0
F7Ah	—	F5Ah	RXB1D4	F3Ah	TXB1D4	F1Ah	RXM0EID8
F79h	—	F59h	RXB1D3	F39h	TXB1D3	F19h	RXM0SIDL
F78h	—	F58h	RXB1D2	F38h	TXB1D2	F18h	RXM0SIDH
F77h	—	F57h	RXB1D1	F37h	TXB1D1	F17h	RXF5EID0
F76h	TXERRCNT	F56h	RXB1D0	F36h	TXB1D0	F16h	RXF5EID8
F75h	RXERRCNT	F55h	RXB1DLC	F35h	TXB1DLC	F15h	RXF5SIDL
F74h	COMSTAT	F54h	RXB1EIDL	F34h	TXB1EIDL	F14h	RXF5SIDH
F73h	CIOCON	F53h	RXB1EIDH	F33h	TXB1EIDH	F13h	RXF4EID0
F72h	BRGCON3	F52h	RXB1SIDL	F32h	TXB1SIDL	F12h	RXF4EID8
F71h	BRGCON2	F51h	RXB1SIDH	F31h	TXB1SIDH	F11h	RXF4SIDL
F70h	BRGCON1	F50h	RXB1CON	F30h	TXB1CON	F10h	RXF4SIDH
F6Fh	CANCON	F4Fh	—	F2Fh	—	F0Fh	RXF3EID0
F6Eh	CANSTAT	F4Eh	CANSTATRO1(4)	F2Eh	CANSTATRO3(4)	F0Eh	RXF3EID8
F6Dh	RXB0D7(3)	F4Dh	TXB0D7	F2Dh	TXB2D7	F0Dh	RXF3SIDL
F6Ch	RXB0D6(3)	F4Ch	TXB0D6	F2Ch	TXB2D6	F0Ch	RXF3SIDH
F6Bh	RXB0D5(3)	F4Bh	TXB0D5	F2Bh	TXB2D5	F0Bh	RXF2EID0
F6Ah	RXB0D4(3)	F4Ah	TXB0D4	F2Ah	TXB2D4	F0Ah	RXF2EID8
F69h	RXB0D3(3)	F49h	TXB0D3	F29h	TXB2D3	F09h	RXF2SIDL
F68h	RXB0D2(3)	F48h	TXB0D2	F28h	TXB2D2	F08h	RXF2SIDH
F67h	RXB0D1(3)	F47h	TXB0D1	F27h	TXB2D1	F07h	RXF1EID0
F66h	RXB0D0(3)	F46h	TXB0D0	F26h	TXB2D0	F06h	RXF1EID8
F65h	RXB0DLC(3)	F45h	TXB0DLC	F25h	TXB2DLC	F05h	RXF1SIDL
F64h	RXB0EIDL(3)	F44h	TXB0EIDL	F24h	TXB2EIDL	F04h	RXF1SIDH
F63h	RXB0EIDH(3)	F43h	TXB0EIDH	F23h	TXB2EIDH	F03h	RXF0EIDL
F62h	RXB0SIDL(3)	F42h	TXB0SIDL	F22h	TXB2SIDL	F02h	RXF0EIDH
F61h	RXB0SIDH(3)	F41h	TXB0SIDH	F21h	TXB2SIDH	F01h	RXF0SIDL
F60h	RXB0CON(3)	F40h	TXB0CON	F20h	TXB2CON	F00h	RXF0SIDH

Note: Shaded registers are available in Bank 15, while the rest are in Access Bank low.

Note 1: Unimplemented registers are read as ’0’.

2: This is not a physical register.

3: Contents of register is dependent on WIN2:WIN0 bits in CANCON register.

4: CANSTAT register is repeated in these locations to simplify application firmware. Unique names are given for each instance of the CANSTAT register due to the Microchip Header file requirement.

5: Available on PIC18C858 only.

TABLE 4-3: REGISTER FILE SUMMARY

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
TOSU	—	—	—	Top-of-Stack upper Byte (TOS<20:16>)					---0 0000	---0 0000
TOSH	Top-of-Stack High Byte (TOS<15:8>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
TOSL	Top-of-Stack Low Byte (TOS<7:0>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
STKPTR	STKFUL	STKUNF	—	Return Stack Pointer					00-0 0000	00-0 0000
PCLATU	—	—	bit 21(3)	Holding Register for PC<20:16>					--00 0000	--00 0000
PCLATH	Holding Register for PC<15:8>								0000 0000	0000 0000
PCL	PC Low Byte (PC<7:0>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
TBLPTRU	—	—	bit 21(2)	Program Memory Table Pointer Upper Byte (TBLPTR<20:16>)					---0 0000	---0 0000
TBLPTRH	Program Memory Table Pointer High Byte (TBLPTR<15:8>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
TBLPTRL	Program Memory Table Pointer Low Byte (TBLPTR<7:0>)								0000 0000	0000 0000
TABLAT	Program Memory Table Latch								0000 0000	0000 0000
PRODH	Product Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PRODL	Product Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
INTCON2	$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP	1111 1111	1111 1111
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF	1100 0000	1100 0000
INDF0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
POSTINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
POSTDEC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
PREINC0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
PLUSW0	Uses contents of FSR0 to address data memory - value of FSR0 pre-incremented (not a physical register) - value of FSR0 offset by WREG								n/a	n/a
FSR0H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 High				---- 0000	---- 0000
FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 0 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
WREG	Working Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
INDF1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
POSTINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
POSTDEC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
PREINC1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
PLUSW1	Uses contents of FSR1 to address data memory - value of FSR1 pre-incremented (not a physical register) - value of FSR1 offset by WREG								n/a	n/a
FSR1H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 High				---- 0000	---- 0000
FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 1 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
BSR	—	—	—	—	Bank Select Register				---- 0000	---- 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
INDF2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 not changed (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
POSTINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 post-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
POSTDEC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 post-decremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
PREINC2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 pre-incremented (not a physical register)								n/a	n/a
PLUSW2	Uses contents of FSR2 to address data memory - value of FSR2 pre-incremented (not a physical register) - value of FSR2 offset by WREG								n/a	n/a
FSR2H	—	—	—	—	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 High				---- 0000	---- 0000
FSR2L	Indirect Data Memory Address Pointer 2 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
STATUS	—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC	C	---x xxxx	---u uuuu
TMR0H	Timer0 register high byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
TMR0L	Timer0 register low byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T0CON	TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	T0PS3	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
OSCCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCS	---- ---0	---- ---0
LVDCON	—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0	--00 0101	--00 0101
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN	---- ---0	---- ---0
RCON	IPEN	$\overline{\text{LWRT}}$	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$	00-1 11qq	00-q qquu
TMR1H	Timer1 Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1L	Timer1 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
TMR2	Timer2 Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
PR2	Timer2 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
SSPBUF	SSP Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
SSPADD	SSP Address Register in I^2C Slave mode. SSP Baud Rate Reload Register in I^2C Master mode.								0000 0000	0000 0000
SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{\text{A}}$	P	S	R/$\overline{\text{W}}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000
SSPCON1	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
SSPCON2	GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN	0000 0000	0000 0000
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	—	—	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	--00 0000	--00 0000
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	-000 0000	-000 0000
ADCON2	ADFM	—	—	—	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	0--- -000	0--- -000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCPM3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCPM3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	0000 0000	0000 0000
VRCON	VREN	VROEN	VRR	VRSS	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
TMR3H	Timer3 Register High Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR3L	Timer3 Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
PSPCON	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----
SPBRG	USART Baud Rate Generator								0000 0000	0000 0000
RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
IPR3	IRXIP	WAKIP	ERRIP	TXB2IP	TXB1IP	TXB0IP	RXB1IP	RXB0IP	1111 1111	1111 1111
PIR3	IRXIF	WAKIF	ERRIF	TXB2IF	TXB1IF	TXB0IF	RXB1IF	RXB0IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE3	IRXIE	WAKIE	ERRIE	TXB2IE	TXB1IE	TXB0IE	RXB1IE	RXB0IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-1-- 1111	-1-- 1111
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	1111 1111	1111 1111
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISJ(4)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTJ								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISH(4)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTH								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISG	—	—	—	Data Direction Control Register for PORTG					---1 1111	---1 1111
TRISF	Data Direction Control Register for PORTF								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISE	Data Direction Control Register for PORTE								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISD	Data Direction Control Register for PORTD								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISC	Data Direction Control Register for PORTC								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISB	Data Direction Control Register for PORTB								1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISA	—	Bit 6(1)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTA						--11 1111	--11 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through MCLR and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
LATJ(4)	Read PORTJ Data Latch, Write PORTJ Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATH(4)	Read PORTH Data Latch, Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATG	—	—	—	Read PORTG Data Latch, Write PORTG Data Latch					---x xxxx	---u uuuu
LATF	Read PORTF Data Latch, Write PORTF Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATE	Read PORTE Data Latch, Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATD	Read PORTD Data Latch, Write PORTD Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATC	Read PORTC Data Latch, Write PORTC Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATB	Read PORTB Data Latch, Write PORTB Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATA	—	Bit 6(1)	Read PORTA Data Latch, Write PORTA Data Latch						--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
PORTJ(4)	Read PORTJ pins, Write PORTJ Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTH(4)	Read PORTH pins, Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTG	—	—	—	Read PORTG pins, Write PORTG Data Latch					---x xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTF	Read PORTF pins, Write PORTF Data Latch								0000 0000	0000 0000
PORTE	Read PORTE pins, Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTD	Read PORTD pins, Write PORTD Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTC	Read PORTC pins, Write PORTC Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTB	Read PORTB pins, Write PORTB Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTA	—	Bit 6(1)	Read PORTA pins, Write PORTA Data Latch						--0x 0000	--0u 0000
TRISK(4)	Data Direction Control Register for PORTK								1111 1111	1111 1111
LATK(4)	Read PORTK Data Latch, Write PORTK Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PORTK(4)	Read PORTK pins, Write PORTK Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXERRCNT	TEC7	TEC6	TEC5	TEC4	TEC3	TEC2	TEC1	TEC0	0000 0000	0000 0000
RXERRCNT	REC7	REC6	REC5	REC4	REC3	REC2	REC1	REC0	0000 0000	0000 0000
COMSTAT	RXB0OVFL	RXB1OVFL	TXBO	TXBP	RXBP	TXWARN	RXWARN	EWARN	0000 0000	0000 0000
CIOCON	TX1SRC	TX1EN	ENDRHI	CANCAP	—	—	—	—	1000 ----	1000 ----
BRGCON3	—	WAKFIL	—	—	—	SEG2PH2	SEG2PH1	SEG2PH0	-0-- -000	-0-- -000
BRGCON2	SEG2PHTS	SAM	SEG1PH2	SEG1PH1	SEG1PH0	PRSEG2	PRSEG1	PRSEG0	0000 0000	0000 0000
BRGCON1	SJW1	SJW0	BRP5	BRP4	BRP3	BRP2	BRP1	BRP0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CANCON	REQOP2	REQOP1	REQOP0	ABAT	WIN2	WIN1	WIN0	—	xxxx xxx-	uuuu uuu-
CANSTAT	OPMODE2	OPMODE1	OPMODE0	—	ICODE2	ICODE1	ICOED0	—	xxx- xxx-	uuu- uuu-

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
RXB0D7	RXB0D77	RXB0D76	RXB0D75	RXB0D74	RXB0D73	RXB0D72	RXB0D71	RXB0D70	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D6	RXB0D67	RXB0D66	RXB0D65	RXB0D64	RXB0D63	RXB0D62	RXB0D61	RXB0D60	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D5	RXB0D57	RXB0D56	RXB0D55	RXB0D54	RXB0D53	RXB0D52	RXB0D51	RXB0D50	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D4	RXB0D47	RXB0D46	RXB0D45	RXB0D44	RXB0D43	RXB0D42	RXB0D41	RXB0D40	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D3	RXB0D37	RXB0D36	RXB0D35	RXB0D34	RXB0D33	RXB0D32	RXB0D31	RXB0D30	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D2	RXB0D27	RXB0D26	RXB0D25	RXB0D24	RXB0D23	RXB0D22	RXB0D21	RXB0D20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D1	RXB0D17	RXB0D16	RXB0D15	RXB0D14	RXB0D13	RXB0D12	RXB0D11	RXB0D10	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0D0	RXB0D07	RXB0D06	RXB0D05	RXB0D04	RXB0D03	RXB0D02	RXB0D0?	RXB0D00	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0DLC	—	RXRTR	RESB1	RESB0	DLC3	DLC2	DLC1	DLC0	0xxx xxxx	0uuu uuuu
RXB0EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	SRR	EXID	—	EID17	EID16	xxxx x-xx	uuuu u-uu
RXB0SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB0CON	RXFUL	RXM1	RXM0	—	RXRTRRO	RXB0DBEN	JTOFF	FILHIT0	000- 0000	000- 0000
CANSTAT	OPMODE2	OPMODE1	OPMODE0	—	ICODE2	ICODE1	ICODE0	—	xxx- xxx-	uuu- uuu-
RXB1D7	RXB1D77	RXB1D76	RXB1D75	RXB1D74	RXB1D73	RXB1D72	RXB1D71	RXB1D70	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D6	RXB1D67	RXB1D66	RXB1D65	RXB1D64	RXB1D63	RXB1D62	RXB1D61	RXB1D60	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D5	RXB1D57	RXB1D56	RXB1D55	RXB1D54	RXB1D53	RXB1D52	RXB1D51	RXB1D50	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D4	RXB1D47	RXB1D46	RXB1D45	RXB1D44	RXB1D43	RXB1D42	RXB1D41	RXB1D40	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D3	RXB1D37	RXB1D36	RXB1D35	RXB1D34	RXB1D33	RXB1D32	RXB1D31	RXB1D30	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D2	RXB1D27	RXB1D26	RXB1D25	RXB1D24	RXB1D23	RXB1D22	RXB1D21	RXB1D20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D1	RXB1D17	RXB1D16	RXB1D15	RXB1D14	RXB1D13	RXB1D12	RXB1D11	RXB1D10	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1D0	RXB1D07	RXB1D06	RXB1D05	RXB1D04	RXB1D03	RXB1D02	RXB1D01	RXB1D00	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1DLC	—	RXRTR	RESB1	RESB0	DLC3	DLC2	DLC1	DLC0	0xxx xxxx	0uuu uuuu
RXB1EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	SRR	EXID	—	EID17	EID16	xxxx x0xx	uuuu u0uu
RXB1SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXB1CON	RXFUL	RXM1	RXM0	—	RXRTRRO	FILHIT2	FILHIT1	FILHIT0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CANSTAT	OPMODE2	OPMODE1	OPMODE0	—	ICODE2	ICODE1	ICODE0	—	xxx- xxx-	uuu- uuu-

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read ‘0’.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through MCLR and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
TXB0D7	TXB0D77	TXB0D76	TXB0D75	TXB0D74	TXB0D73	TXB0D72	TXB0D71	TXB0D70	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D6	TXB0D67	TXB0D66	TXB0D65	TXB0D64	TXB0D63	TXB0D62	TXB0D61	TXB0D60	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D5	TXB0D57	TXB0D56	TXB0D55	TXB0D54	TXB0D53	TXB0D52	TXB0D51	TXB0D50	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D4	TXB0D47	TXB0D46	TXB0D45	TXB0D44	TXB0D43	TXB0D42	TXB0D41	TXB0D40	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D3	TXB0D37	TXB0D36	TXB0D35	TXB0D34	TXB0D33	TXB0D32	TXB0D31	TXB0D30	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D2	TXB0D27	TXB0D26	TXB0D25	TXB0D24	TXB0D23	TXB0D22	TXB0D21	TXB0D20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D1	TXB0D17	TXB0D16	TXB0D15	TXB0D14	TXB0D13	TXB0D12	TXB0D11	TXB0D10	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0D0	TXB0D07	TXB0D06	TXB0D05	TXB0D04	TXB0D03	TXB0D02	TXB0D01	TXB0D00	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0DLC	—	TXRTR	—	—	DLC3	DLC2	DLC1	DLC0	0x00 xxxx	0u00 uuuu
TXB0EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx0 x0xx	uuu0 u0uu
TXB0SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB0CON	—	TXABT	TXLARB	TXERR	TXREQ	—	TXPRI1	TXPRI0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CANSTAT	OPMODE2	OPMODE1	OPMODE0	—	ICODE2	ICODE1	ICODE0	—	xxx- xxx-	uuu- uuu-
TXB1D7	TXB1D77	TXB1D76	TXB1D75	TXB1D74	TXB1D73	TXB1D72	TXB1D71	TXB1D70	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D6	TXB1D67	TXB1D66	TXB1D65	TXB1D64	TXB1D63	TXB1D62	TXB1D61	TXB1D60	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D5	TXB1D57	TXB1D56	TXB1D55	TXB1D54	TXB1D53	TXB1D52	TXB1D51	TXB1D50	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D4	TXB1D47	TXB1D46	TXB1D45	TXB1D44	TXB1D43	TXB1D42	TXB1D41	TXB1D40	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D3	TXB1D37	TXB1D36	TXB1D35	TXB1D34	TXB1D33	TXB1D32	TXB1D31	TXB1D30	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D2	TXB1D27	TXB1D26	TXB1D25	TXB1D24	TXB1D23	TXB1D22	TXB1D21	TXB1D20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D1	TXB1D17	TXB1D16	TXB1D15	TXB1D14	TXB1D13	TXB1D12	TXB1D11	TXB1D10	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1D0	TXB1D07	TXB1D06	TXB1D05	TXB1D04	TXB1D03	TXB1D02	TXB1D01	TXB1D00	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1DLC	—	TXRTR	—	—	DLC3	DLC2	DLC1	DLC0	0x00 xxxx	0u00 uuuu
TXB1EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDE	—	EID17	EID16	xxx0 x0xx	uuu0 u0uu
TXB1SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB1CON	—	TXABT	TXLARB	TXERR	TXREQ	—	TXPRI1	TXPRI0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CANSTAT	OPMODE2	OPMODE1	OPMODE0	—	ICODE2	ICODE1	ICODE0	—	xxx- xxx-	uuu- uuu-

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read ‘0’.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
TXB2D7	TXB2D77	TXB2D76	TXB2D75	TXB2D74	TXB2D73	TXB2D72	TXB2D71	TXB2D70	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D6	TXB2D67	TXB2D66	TXB2D65	TXB2D64	TXB2D63	TXB2D62	TXB2D61	TXB2D60	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D5	TXB2D57	TXB2D56	TXB2D55	TXB2D54	TXB2D53	TXB2D52	TXB2D51	TXB2D50	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D4	TXB2D47	TXB2D46	TXB2D45	TXB2D44	TXB2D43	TXB2D42	TXB2D41	TXB2D40	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D3	TXB2D37	TXB2D36	TXB2D35	TXB2D34	TXB2D33	TXB2D32	TXB2D31	TXB2D30	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D2	TXB2D27	TXB2D26	TXB2D25	TXB2D24	TXB2D23	TXB2D22	TXB2D21	TXB2D20	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D1	TXB2D17	TXB2D16	TXB2D15	TXB2D14	TXB2D13	TXB2D12	TXB2D11	TXB2D10	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2D0	TXB2D07	TXB2D06	TXB2D05	TXB2D04	TXB2D03	TXB2D02	TXB2D01	TXB2D00	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2DLC	—	TXRTR	—	—	DLC3	DLC2	DLC1	DLC0	0x00 xxxx	0u00 uuuu
TXB2EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx0 x0xx	uuu0 u0uu
TXB2SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TXB2CON	—	TXABT	TXLARB	TXERR	TXREQ	—	TXPRI1	TXPRI0	0000 0000	0000 0000
RXM1EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXM1EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXM1SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	—	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- --xx	uuu- --uu
RXM1SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXM0EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXM0EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXM0SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	—	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- --xx	uuu- --uu
RXM0SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF5EID0	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF5EID8	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF5SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu
RXF5SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF4EID0	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF4EID8	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF4SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu
RXF4SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF3EID0	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF3EID8	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF3SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu
RXF3SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read '0'.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through MCLR and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Filename	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS(3)
RXF2EID0	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF2EID8	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF2SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu
RXF2SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF1EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF1EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF1SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu
RXF1SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF0EIDL	EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF0EIDH	EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
RXF0SIDL	SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16	xxx- x-xx	uuu- u-uu
RXF0SIDH	SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read ‘0’.

2: Bit 21 of the TBLPTRU allows access to the device configuration bits.

3: Other (non-power-up) RESETs include external RESET through $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ and Watchdog Timer Reset.

4: These registers are reserved on PIC18C658.

4.10 Access Bank

The Access Bank is an architectural enhancement that is very useful for C compiler code optimization. The techniques used by the C compiler are also be useful for programs written in assembly.

This data memory region can be used for:

- Intermediate computational values
- Local variables of subroutines
- Faster context saving/switching of variables
- Common variables
- Faster evaluation/control of SFR's (no banking)

The Access Bank is comprised of the upper 160 bytes in Bank 15 (SFR's) and the lower 96 bytes in Bank 0. These two sections will be referred to as Access Bank High and Access Bank Low, respectively. Figure 4-4 indicates the Access Bank areas.

A bit in the instruction word specifies if the operation is to occur in the bank specified by the BSR register, or in the Access Bank.

When forced in the Access Bank (a = '0'), the last address in Access Bank Low is followed by the first address in Access Bank High. Access Bank High maps most of the Special Function Registers so that these registers can be accessed without any software overhead.

4.11 Bank Select Register (BSR)

The need for a large general purpose memory space dictates a RAM banking scheme. The data memory is partitioned into sixteen banks. When using direct addressing, the BSR should be configured for the desired bank.

BSR<3:0> holds the upper 4 bits of the 12-bit RAM address. The BSR<7:4> bits will always read '0's, and writes will have no effect.

A `MOVLB` instruction has been provided in the instruction set to assist in selecting banks.

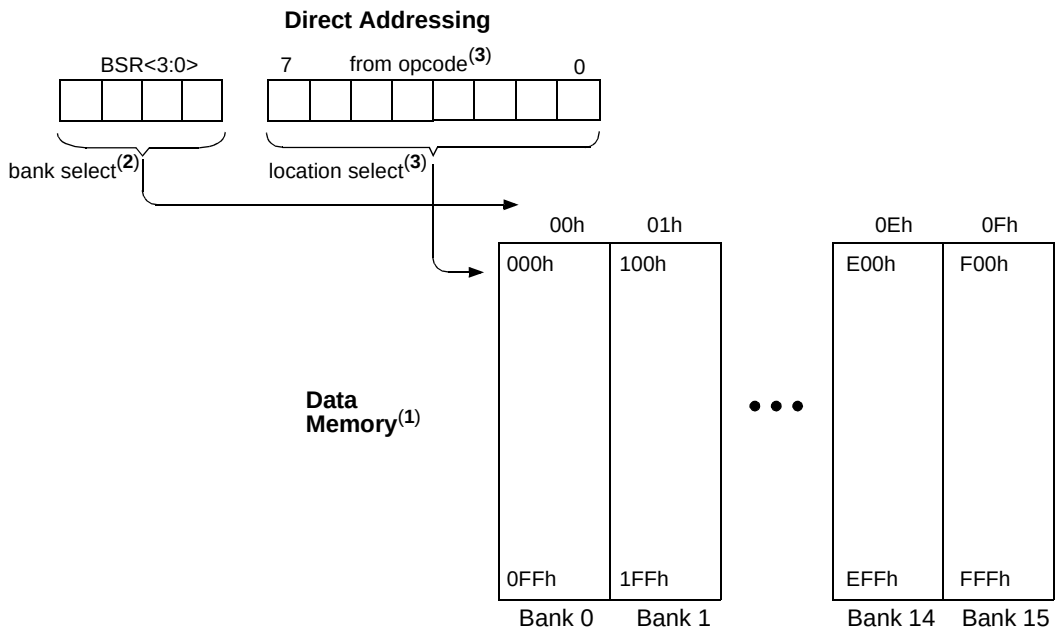
If the currently selected bank is not implemented, any read will return all '0's and all writes are ignored. The STATUS register bits will be set/cleared as appropriate for the instruction performed.

Each Bank extends up to FFh (256 bytes). All data memory is implemented as static RAM.

A `MOVFF` instruction ignores the BSR, since the 12-bit addresses are embedded into the instruction word.

Section 4.12 provides a description of indirect addressing, which allows linear addressing of the entire RAM space.

FIGURE 4-5: DIRECT ADDRESSING



Note 1: For register file map detail, see Table 4-2.

2: The access bit of the instruction can be used to force an override of the selected bank (BSR<3:0>) to the registers of the Access Bank.

3: The `MOVFF` instruction embeds the entire 12-bit address in the instruction.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.12 Indirect Addressing, INDF and FSR Registers

Indirect addressing is a mode of addressing data memory, where the data memory address in the instruction is not fixed. A SFR register is used as a pointer to the data memory location that is to be read or written. Since this pointer is in RAM, the contents can be modified by the program. This can be useful for data tables in the data memory and for software stacks. Figure 4-6 shows the operation of indirect addressing. This shows the moving of the value to the data memory address specified by the value of the FSR register.

Indirect addressing is possible by using one of the INDF registers. Any instruction using the INDF register actually accesses the register indicated by the File Select Register, FSR. Reading the INDF register itself indirectly (FSR = '0') will read 00h. Writing to the INDF register indirectly results in a no-operation. The FSR register contains a 12-bit address, which is shown in Figure 4-6.

The INDFn ($0 \le n \le 2$) register is not a physical register. Addressing INDFn actually addresses the register whose address is contained in the FSRn register (FSRn is a pointer). This is indirect addressing.

Example 4-4 shows a simple use of indirect addressing to clear the RAM in Bank 1 (locations 100h-1FFh) in a minimum number of instructions.

EXAMPLE 4-4: HOW TO CLEAR RAM (BANK 1) USING INDIRECT ADDRESSING

```
     LFSR     FSR0, 0x100  ;
NEXT CLRF     POSTINC0     ; Clear INDF
                           ; register
                           ; & inc pointer
     BTFSS    FSR0H, 1     ; All done
                           ; w/ Bank1?
     GOTO     NEXT         ; NO, clear next
CONTINUE                   ;
     :                     ; YES, continue
```

There are three indirect addressing registers. To address the entire data memory space (4096 bytes), these registers are 12-bit wide. To store the 12-bits of addressing information, two 8-bit registers are required. These indirect addressing registers are:

1. FSR0: composed of FSR0H:FSR0L
2. FSR1: composed of FSR1H:FSR1L
3. FSR2: composed of FSR2H:FSR2L

In addition, there are registers INDF0, INDF1 and INDF2, which are not physically implemented. Reading or writing to these registers activates indirect addressing, with the value in the corresponding FSR register being the address of the data.

If an instruction writes a value to INDF0, the value will be written to the address indicated by FSR0H:FSR0L. A read from INDF1 reads the data from the address indicated by FSR1H:FSR1L. INDFn can be used in code anywhere an operand can be used.

If INDF0, INDF1 or INDF2 are read indirectly via an FSR, all '0's are read (zero bit is set). Similarly, if INDF0, INDF1 or INDF2 are written to indirectly, the operation will be equivalent to a `NOP` instruction and the STATUS bits are not affected.

4.12.1 INDIRECT ADDRESSING OPERATION

Each FSR register has an INDF register associated with it, plus four additional register addresses. Performing an operation on one of these five registers determines how the FSR will be modified during indirect addressing.

When data access is done to one of the five INDFn locations, the address selected will configure the FSRn register to:

- Do nothing to FSRn after an indirect access (no change) - INDFn
- Auto-decrement FSRn after an indirect access (post-decrement) - POSTDECn
- Auto-increment FSRn after an indirect access (post-increment) - POSTINCn
- Auto-increment FSRn before an indirect access (pre-increment) - PREINCn
- Use the value in the WREG register as an offset to FSRn. Do not modify the value of the WREG or the FSRn register after an indirect access (no change) - PLUSWn

When using the auto-increment or auto-decrement features, the effect on the FSR is not reflected in the STATUS register. For example, if the indirect address causes the FSR to equal '0', the Z bit will not be set.

Incrementing or decrementing an FSR affects all 12 bits. That is, when FSRnL overflows from an increment, FSRnH will be incremented automatically.

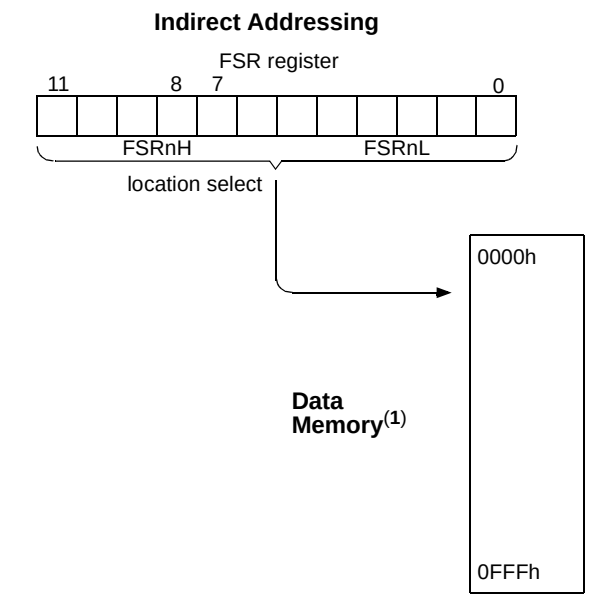
Adding these features allows the FSRn to be used as a software stack pointer in addition to its uses for table operations in data memory.

Each FSR has an address associated with it that performs an indexed indirect access. When a data access to this INDFn location (PLUSWn) occurs, the FSRn is configured to add the 2's complement value in the WREG register and the value in FSR to form the address before an indirect access. The FSR value is not changed.

If an FSR register contains a value that indicates one of the INDFn, an indirect read will read 00h (zero bit is set), while an indirect write will be equivalent to a `NOP` (STATUS bits are not affected).

If an indirect addressing operation is done where the target address is an FSRnH or FSRnL register, the write operation will dominate over the pre- or post-increment/decrement functions.

FIGURE 4-6: INDIRECT ADDRESSING



Note 1: For register file map detail, see Table 4-2.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

4.13 STATUS Register

The STATUS register, shown in Register 4-2, contains the arithmetic status of the ALU. The STATUS register can be the destination for any instruction, as with any other register. If the STATUS register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC, C, OV or N bits, then the write to these five bits is disabled. These bits are set or cleared according to the device logic. Therefore, the result of an instruction with the STATUS register as destination may be different than intended.

For example, `CLRF STATUS` will clear the upper three bits and set the Z bit. This leaves the STATUS register as `000u u1uu` (where `u` = unchanged).

It is recommended, therefore, that only `BCF, BSF, SWAPF, MOVFF` and `MOVWF` instructions are used to alter the STATUS register, because these instructions do not affect the Z, C, DC, OV or N bits from the STATUS register. For other instructions which do not affect the status bits, see Table 23-2.

Note:	The C and DC bits operate as a $\overline{\text{borrow}}$ and $\overline{\text{digit borrow}}$ bit respectively, in subtraction.

REGISTER 4-2: STATUS REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
—	—	—	N	OV	Z	DC	C
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **N:** Negative bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates whether the result of the ALU operation was negative, (ALU MSb = 1)
`1` = Result was negative
`0` = Result was positive

bit 3 **OV:** Overflow bit
This bit is used for signed arithmetic (2's complement). It indicates an overflow of the 7-bit magnitude, which causes the sign bit (bit 7) to change state.
`1` = Overflow occurred for signed arithmetic (in this arithmetic operation)
`0` = No overflow occurred

bit 2 **Z:** Zero bit
`1` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero
`0` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero

bit 1 **DC:** Digit carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit
For `ADDWF, ADDLW, SUBLW,` and `SUBWF` instructions
`1` = A carry-out from the 4th low order bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the 4th low order bit of the result

Note: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRCF, RRNCF, RLCF,` and `RLNCF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the bit 4 or bit 3 of the source register.

bit 0 **C:** Carry/$\overline{\text{borrow}}$ bit
For `ADDWF, ADDLW, SUBLW,` and `SUBWF` instructions
`1` = A carry-out from the most significant bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the most significant bit of the result occurred

Note: For $\overline{\text{borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two's complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF, RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high or low order bit of the source register.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

4.13.1 RCON REGISTER

The Reset Control (RCON) register contains flag bits that allow differentiation between the sources of a device RESET. These flags include the $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$, $\overline{POR}$, $\overline{BOR}$ and $\overline{RI}$ bits. This register is readable and writable.

> **Note 1:** If the BOREN configuration bit is set, $\overline{BOR}$ is '1' on Power-on Reset. If the BOREN configuration bit is clear, $\overline{BOR}$ is unknown on Power-on Reset.
> The $\overline{BOR}$ status bit is a "don't care" and is not necessarily predictable if the brown-out circuit is disabled (the BOREN configuration bit is clear). $\overline{BOR}$ must then be set by the user and checked on subsequent RESETs to see if it is clear, indicating a brown-out has occurred.
>
> **2:** It is recommended that the $\overline{POR}$ bit be set after a Power-on Reset has been detected, so that subsequent Power-on Resets may be detected.

REGISTER 4-3: RCON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	LWRT	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (16CXXX compatibility mode)

bit 6 **LWRT:** Long Write Enable bit
1 = Enable TBLWT to internal program memory
Once this bit is set, it can only be cleared by a POR or $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset
0 = Disable `TBLWT` to internal program memory; `TBLWT` only to external program memory

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{RI}$:** `RESET` Instruction Flag bit
1 = The `RESET` instruction was not executed
0 = The `RESET` instruction was executed causing a device RESET
(must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

bit 3 **$\overline{TO}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
1 = After power-up, `CLRWDT` instruction, or `SLEEP` instruction
0 = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 2 **$\overline{PD}$:** Power-down Detection Flag bit
1 = After power-up or by the `CLRWDT` instruction
0 = By execution of the `SLEEP` instruction

bit 1 **$\overline{POR}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit
1 = A Power-on Reset has not occurred
0 = A Power-on Reset occurred
(must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)

bit 0 **$\overline{BOR}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
1 = A Brown-out Reset has not occurred
0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred
(must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.0 TABLE READS/TABLE WRITES

All PICmicro® devices have two memory spaces: the program memory space and the data memory space. Table Reads and Table Writes have been provided to move data between these two memory spaces through an 8-bit register (TABLAT).

The operations that allow the processor to move data between the data and program memory spaces are:

- Table Read (`TBLRD`)
- Table Write (`TBLWT`)

Table Read operations retrieve data from program memory and place it into the data memory space. Figure 5-1 shows the operation of a Table Read with program and data memory.

Table Write operations store data from the data memory space into program memory. Figure 5-2 shows the operation of a Table Write with program and data memory.

Table operations work with byte entities. A table block containing data is not required to be word aligned, so a table block can start and end at any byte address. If a table write is being used to write an executable program to program memory, program instructions will need to be word aligned.

FIGURE 5-1: TABLE READ OPERATION

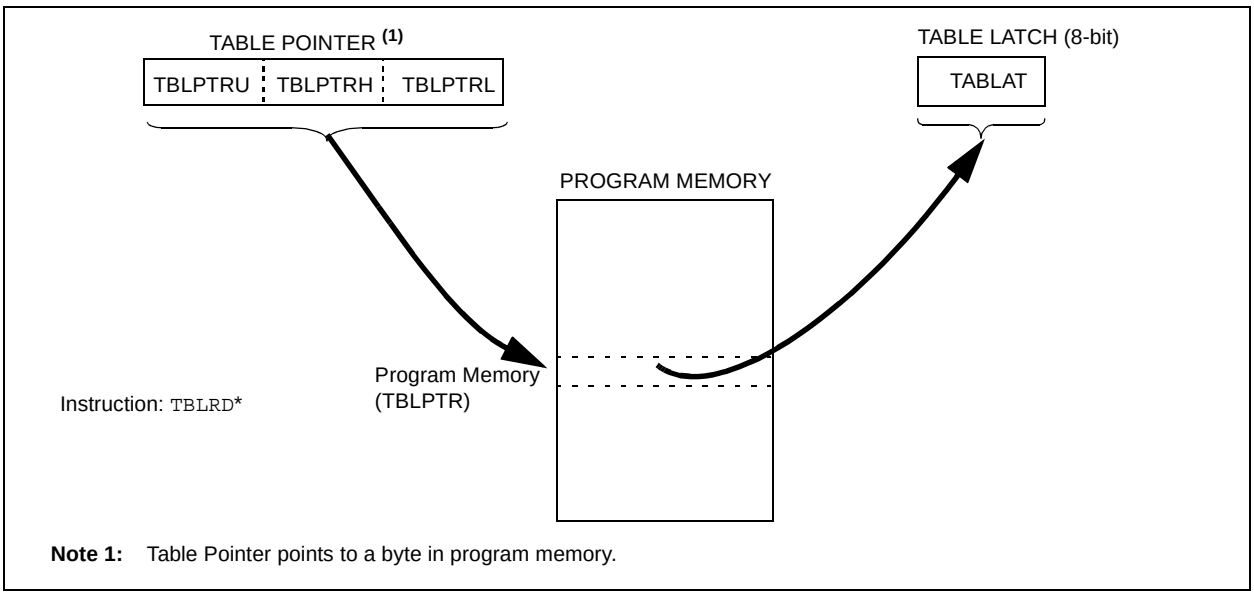
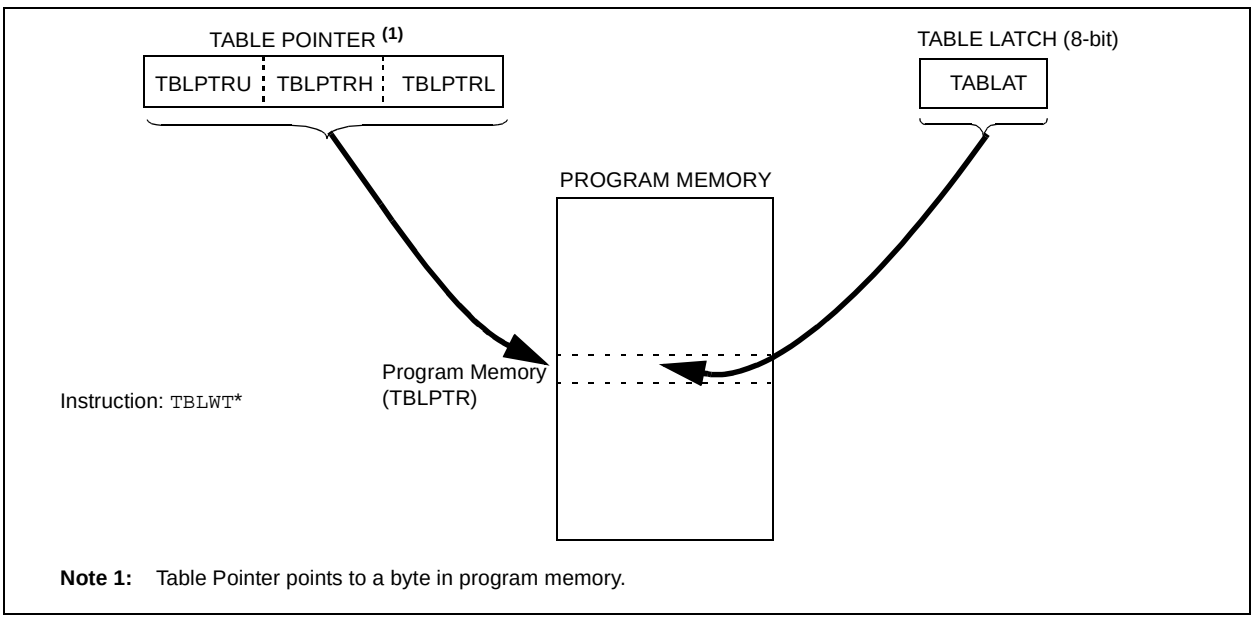


FIGURE 5-2: TABLE WRITE OPERATION



5.1 Control Registers

Several control registers are used in conjunction with the TBLRD and TBLWT instructions. These include:

- RCON register
- TABLAT register
- TBLPTR registers

5.1.1 RCON REGISTER

The LWRT bit specifies the operation of Table Writes to internal memory when the VPP voltage is applied to the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin. When the LWRT bit is set, the controller continues to execute user code, but long table writes are allowed (for programming internal program memory) from user mode. The LWRT bit can be cleared only by performing either a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.

REGISTER 5-1: RCON REGISTER (ADDRESS: 0xFD0h)

R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	LWRT	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable
1 = Enable priority levels on interrupts
0 = Disable priority levels on interrupts (16CXXX compatibility mode)

bit 6 **LWRT:** Long Write Enable
1 = Enable TBLWT to internal program memory
0 = Disable TBLWT to internal program memory.

Note 1: Only cleared on a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ reset.
This bit has no effect on TBLWTs to external program memory.

bit 5 **Unimplemented**: Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{\text{RI}}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit
1 = No RESET instruction occurred
0 = A RESET instruction occurred

bit 3 **$\overline{\text{TO}}$:** Time-out bit
1 = After power-up, CLRWDT instruction, or SLEEP instruction
0 = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{PD}}$:** Power-down bit
1 = After power-up or by the CLRWDT instruction
0 = By execution of the SLEEP instruction

bit 1 **$\overline{\text{POR}}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit
1 = No Power-on Reset occurred
0 = A Power-on Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{BOR}}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
1 = No Brown-out Reset nor POR Reset occurred
0 = A Brown-out Reset or POR Reset occurred
(must be set in software after a Brown-out Reset occurs)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.1.2 TABLAT - TABLE LATCH REGISTER

The Table Latch (TABLAT) is an 8-bit register mapped into the SFR space. The Table Latch is used to hold 8-bit data during data transfers between program memory and data memory.

5.1.3 TBLPTR - TABLE POINTER REGISTER

The Table Pointer (TBLPTR) addresses a byte within the program memory. The TBLPTR is comprised of three SFR registers (Table Pointer Upper byte, High byte and Low byte). These three registers (TBLPTRU:TBLPTRH:TBLPTRL) join to form a 22-bit wide pointer. The low order 21-bits allow the device to address up to 2 Mbytes of program memory space. The 22nd bit allows read only access to the Device ID, the User ID and the Configuration bits.

The table pointer TBLPTR is used by the `TBLRD` and `TBLWT` instructions. These instructions can update the TBLPTR in one of four ways based on the table operation. These operations are shown in Table 5-1. These operations on the TBLPTR only affect the low order 21-bits.

TABLE 5-1: TABLE POINTER OPERATIONS WITH `TBLRD` AND `TBLWT` INSTRUCTIONS

Example	Operation on Table Pointer
`TBLRD*` `TBLWT*`	TBLPTR is not modified
`TBLRD*+` `TBLWT*+`	TBLPTR is incremented after the read/write
`TBLRD*-` `TBLWT*-`	TBLPTR is decremented after the read/write
`TBLRD+*` `TBLWT+*`	TBLPTR is incremented before the read/write

5.2 Program Memory Read/Writes

5.2.1 TABLE READ OVERVIEW (TBLRD)

The `TBLRD` instructions are used to read data from program memory to data memory.

TBLPTR points to a byte address in program space. Executing `TBLRD` places the byte pointed to into TABLAT. In addition, TBLPTR can be modified automatically for the next Table Read operation.

Table Reads from program memory are performed one byte at a time. The instruction will load TABLAT with the one byte from program memory pointed to by TBLPTR.

5.2.2 PROGRAM MEMORY WRITE BLOCK SIZE

The program memory of PIC18CXX8 devices is written in blocks. For PIC18CXX8 devices, the write block size is 2 bytes. Consequently, Table Write operations to program memory are performed in pairs, one byte at a time.

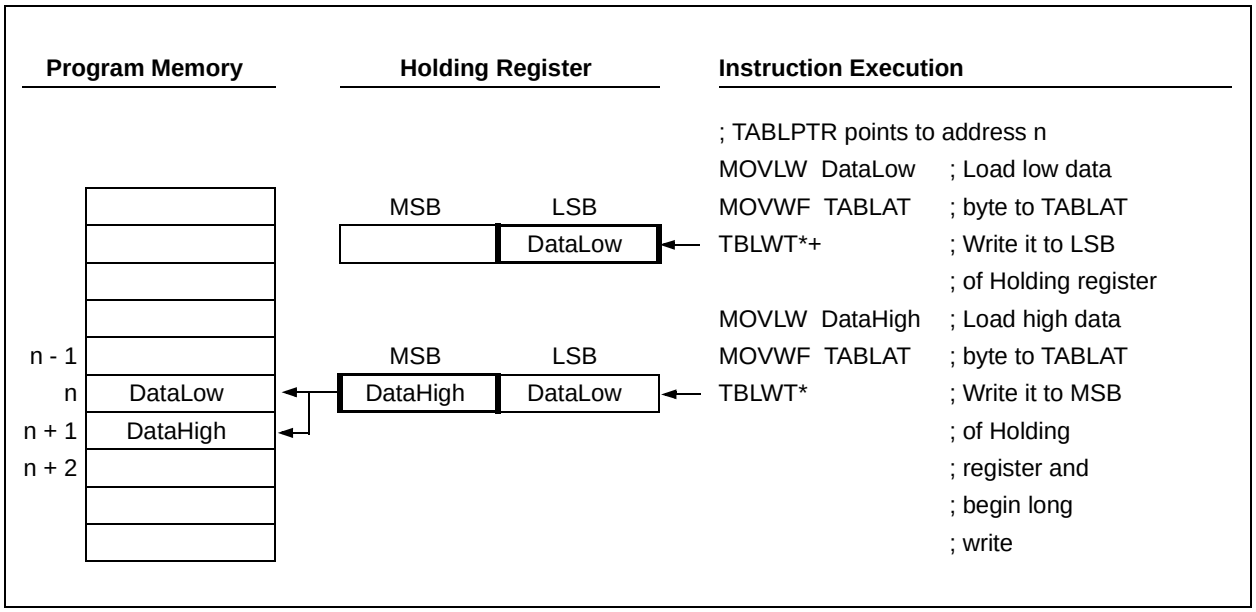
When a Table Write occurs to an even program memory address (TBLPTR<0> = 0), the contents of TABLAT are transferred to an internal holding register. This is performed as a short write and the program memory block is not actually programmed at this time. The holding register is not accessible by the user.

When a Table Write occurs to an odd program memory address (TBLPTR<0> = 1), a long write is started. During the long write, the contents of TABLAT are written to the high byte of the program memory block and the contents of the holding register are transferred to the low byte of the program memory block.

Figure 5-3 shows the holding register and the program memory write blocks.

If a single byte is to be programmed, the low (even) byte of the destination program word should be read using `TBLRD*`, modified or changed, if required, and written back to the same address using `TBLWT*+`. The high (odd) byte should be read using `TBLRD*`, modified or changed if required, and written back to the same address using `TBLWT`. The write to an odd address will cause a long write to begin. This process ensures that existing data in either byte will not be changed unless desired.

FIGURE 5-3: HOLDING REGISTER AND THE WRITE



EXAMPLE 5-1: TABLE READ CODE EXAMPLE

```
; Read a byte from location 0x0020
CLRF   TBLPTRU          ; Load upper 5 bits of
                        ; 0x0020
CLRF   TBLPTRH          ; Load higher 8 bits of
                        ; 0x0020
MOVLW  0x20             ; Load 0x20 into
MOVWF  TBLPTRL          ; TBLPTRL
MOVWF  TBLRD*           ; Data is in TABLAT
```

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

5.2.2.1 Long Write Operation

The long write is what actually programs words of data into the internal memory. When a `TBLWT` to the MSB of the write block occurs, instruction execution is halted. During this time, programming voltage and the data stored in internal latches is applied to program memory.

For a long write to occur:

1. $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin must be at the programming voltage
2. LWRT bit must be set
3. `TBLWT` to the address of the MSB of the write block

If the LWRT bit is clear, a short write will occur and program memory will not be changed. If the `TBLWT` is not to the MSB of the write block, then the programming phase is not initiated.

Setting the LWRT bit enables long writes when the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin is taken to VPP voltage. Once the LWRT bit is set, it can be cleared only by performing a POR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.

To ensure that the memory location has been well programmed, a minimum programming time is required. The long write can be terminated after the programming time has expired by a RESET or an interrupt. Having only one interrupt source enabled to terminate the long write, ensures that no unintended interrupts will prematurely terminate the long write.

5.2.2.2 Sequence of Events

The sequence of events for programming an internal program memory location should be:

1. Enable the interrupt that terminates the long write. Disable all other interrupts.
2. Clear the source interrupt flag.
3. If Interrupt Service Routine execution is desired when the device wakes, enable global interrupts.
4. Set LWRT bit in the RCON register.
5. Raise $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin to the programming voltage, VPP.
6. Clear the WDT (if enabled).
7. Set the interrupt source to interrupt at the required time.
8. Execute the Table Write for the lower (even) byte. This will be a short write.
9. Execute the Table Write for the upper (odd) byte. This will be a long write. The controller will HALT while programming. The interrupt wakes the controller.
10. If GIE was set, service the interrupt request.
11. Go to 7 if more bytes to be programmed.
12. Lower $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin to VDD.
13. Verify the memory location (table read).
14. Reset the device.

5.2.3 LONG WRITE INTERRUPTS

The long write must be terminated by a RESET or any interrupt.

The interrupt source must have its interrupt enable bit set. When the source sets its interrupt flag, programming will terminate. This will occur regardless of the settings of interrupt priority bits, the GIE/GIEH bit or the PIE/GIEL bit.

Depending on the states of interrupt priority bits, the GIE/GIEH bit or the PIE/GIEL bit, program execution can either be vectored to the high or low priority Interrupt Service Routine (ISR), or continue execution from where programming commenced.

In either case, the interrupt flag will not be cleared when programming is terminated and will need to be cleared by the software.

5.3 Unexpected Termination of Write Operations

If a write is terminated by an unplanned event such as loss of power, an unexpected RESET, or an interrupt that was not disabled, the memory location just programmed should be verified and reprogrammed if needed.

TABLE 5-2: SLEEP MODE, INTERRUPT ENABLE BITS AND INTERRUPT RESULTS

GIE/ GIEH	PIE/ GIEL	Priority	Interrupt Enable	Interrupt Flag	Action
X	X	X	0 (default)	X	Long write continues even if interrupt flag becomes set during SLEEP.
X	X	X	1	0	Long write continues, will wake when the interrupt flag is set.
0 (default)	0 (default)	X	1	1	Terminates long write, executes next instruction. Interrupt flag not cleared.
0 (default)	1	1 high priority (default)	1	1	Terminates long write, executes next instruction. Interrupt flag not cleared.
1	0 (default)	0 low	1	1	Terminates long write, executes next instruction. Interrupt flag not cleared.
0 (default)	1	0 low	1	1	Terminates long write, branches to low priority interrupt vector. Interrupt flag can be cleared by ISR.
1	0 (default)	1 high priority (default)	1	1	Terminates long write, branches to high priority interrupt vector. Interrupt flag can be cleared by ISR.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

6.0 8 X 8 HARDWARE MULTIPLIER

An 8 x 8 hardware multiplier is included in the ALU of the PIC18CXX8 devices. By making the multiply a hardware operation, it completes in a single instruction cycle. This is an unsigned multiply that gives a 16-bit result. The result is stored into the 16-bit product register pair (PRODH:PRODL). The multiplier does not affect any flags in the STATUS register.

Making the 8 x 8 multiplier execute in a single cycle gives the following advantages:

- Higher computational throughput
- Reduces code size requirements for multiply algorithms

The performance increase allows the device to be used in applications previously reserved for Digital Signal Processors.

Table 6-1 shows a performance comparison between enhanced devices using the single cycle hardware multiply, and performing the same function without the hardware multiply.

TABLE 6-1: PERFORMANCE COMPARISON

Routine	Multiply Method	Program Memory (Words)	Cycles (Max)	Time		
				@ 40 MHz	@ 10 MHz	@ 4 MHz
8 x 8 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	13	69	6.9 µs	27.6 µs	69 µs
	Hardware multiply	1	1	100 ns	400 ns	1 µs
8 x 8 signed	Without hardware multiply	33	91	9.1 µs	36.4 µs	91 µs
	Hardware multiply	6	6	600 ns	2.4 µs	6 µs
16 x 16 unsigned	Without hardware multiply	21	242	24.2 µs	96.8 µs	242 µs
	Hardware multiply	24	24	2.4 µs	9.6 µs	24 µs
16 x 16 signed	Without hardware multiply	52	254	25.4 µs	102.6 µs	254 µs
	Hardware multiply	36	36	3.6 µs	14.4 µs	36 µs

6.1 Operation

Example 6-1 shows the sequence to perform an 8 x 8 unsigned multiply. Only one instruction is required when one argument of the multiply is already loaded in the WREG register.

Example 6-2 shows the sequence to do an 8 x 8 signed multiply. To account for the sign bits of the arguments, each argument's most significant bit (MSb) is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EXAMPLE 6-1: 8 x 8 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVFF    ARG1, WREG  ;
MULWF    ARG2        ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                     ;   PRODH:PRODL
```

EXAMPLE 6-2: 8 x 8 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
MOVFF    ARG1, WREG
MULWF    ARG2            ; ARG1 * ARG2 ->
                         ; PRODH:PRODL
BTFSC    ARG2, SB        ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF    PRODH, F        ; PRODH = PRODH
                         ;         - ARG1
MOVFF    ARG2, WREG
BTFSC    ARG1, SB        ; Test Sign Bit
SUBWF    PRODH, F        ; PRODH = PRODH
                         ;         - ARG2
```

Example 6-3 shows the sequence to perform a 16 x 16 unsigned multiply. Equation 6-1 shows the algorithm that is used. The 32-bit result is stored in 4 registers RES3:RES0.

EQUATION 6-1: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

$$
\begin{aligned}
RES3:RES0 &= ARG1H:ARG1L \bullet ARG2H:ARG2L \\
&= (ARG1H \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{16}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1H \bullet ARG2L \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2H \bullet 2^{8}) + \\
&\quad (ARG1L \bullet ARG2L)
\end{aligned}
$$

EXAMPLE 6-3: 16 x 16 UNSIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
   MOVFF    ARG1L, WREG
   MULWF    ARG2L          ; ARG1L * ARG2L ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVFF    PRODH, RES1    ;
   MOVFF    PRODL, RES0    ;
;
   MOVFF    ARG1H, WREG
   MULWF    ARG2H          ; ARG1H * ARG2H ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVFF    PRODH, RES3    ;
   MOVFF    PRODL, RES2    ;
;
   MOVFF    ARG1L, WREG
   MULWF    ARG2H          ; ARG1L * ARG2H ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVF     PRODL, W       ;
   ADDWF    RES1, F        ; Add cross
   MOVF     PRODH, W       ;    products
   ADDWFC   RES2, F        ;
   CLRF     WREG           ;
   ADDWFC   RES3, F        ;
;
   MOVFF    ARG1H, WREG    ;
   MULWF    ARG2L          ; ARG1H * ARG2L ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVF     PRODL, W       ;
   ADDWF    RES1, F        ; Add cross
   MOVF     PRODH, W       ;    products
   ADDWFC   RES2, F        ;
   CLRF     WREG           ;
   ADDWFC   RES3, F        ;
```

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

Example 6-4 shows the sequence to perform an 16 x 16 signed multiply. Equation 6-2 shows the algorithm used. The 32-bit result is stored in four registers RES3:RES0. To account for the sign bits of the arguments, each argument pairs most significant bit (MSb) is tested and the appropriate subtractions are done.

EQUATION 6-2: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLICATION ALGORITHM

```
RES3:RES0
    =  ARG1H:ARG1L • ARG2H:ARG2L
    =  (ARG1H • ARG2H • 2^16)   +
       (ARG1H • ARG2L • 2^8)    +
       (ARG1L • ARG2H • 2^8)    +
       (ARG1L • ARG2L)          +
       (-1 • ARG2H<7> • ARG1H:ARG1L • 2^16)  +
       (-1 • ARG1H<7> • ARG2H:ARG2L • 2^16)
```

EXAMPLE 6-4: 16 x 16 SIGNED MULTIPLY ROUTINE

```
   MOVFF    ARG1L, WREG
   MULWF    ARG2L          ; ARG1L * ARG2L ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVFF    PRODH, RES1    ;
   MOVFF    PRODL, RES0    ;
;
   MOVFF    ARG1H, WREG
   MULWF    ARG2H          ; ARG1H * ARG2H ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVFF    PRODH, RES3    ;
   MOVFF    PRODL, RES2    ;
;
   MOVFF    ARG1L, WREG
   MULWF    ARG2H          ; ARG1L * ARG2H ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVF     PRODL, W       ;
   ADDWF    RES1, F        ; Add cross
   MOVF     PRODH, W       ;    products
   ADDWFC   RES2, F        ;
   CLRF     WREG           ;
   ADDWFC   RES3, F        ;
;
   MOVFF    ARG1H, WREG    ;
   MULWF    ARG2L          ; ARG1H * ARG2L ->
                           ;   PRODH:PRODL
   MOVF     PRODL, W       ;
   ADDWF    RES1, F        ; Add cross
   MOVF     PRODH, W       ;    products
   ADDWFC   RES2, F        ;
   CLRF     WREG           ;
   ADDWFC   RES3, F        ;
;
   BTFSS    ARG2H, 7       ; ARG2H:ARG2L neg?
   GOTO     SIGN_ARG1      ; no, check ARG1
   MOVFF    ARG1L, WREG    ;
   SUBWF    RES2           ;
   MOVFF    ARG1H, WREG    ;
   SUBWFB   RES3
;
SIGN_ARG1
   BTFSS    ARG1H, 7       ; ARG1H:ARG1L neg?
   GOTO     CONT_CODE      ; no, done
   MOVFF    ARG2L, WREG    ;
   SUBWF    RES2           ;
   MOVFF    ARG2H, WREG    ;
   SUBWFB   RES3
;
CONT_CODE
     :
```

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

7.0 INTERRUPTS

The PIC18CXX8 devices have multiple interrupt sources and an interrupt priority feature that allows each interrupt source to be assigned a high priority level or a low priority level. The high priority interrupt vector is at 000008h and the low priority interrupt vector is at 000018h. High priority interrupt events will override any low priority interrupts that may be in progress.

There are 13 registers that are used to control interrupt operation. These registers are:

- RCON
- INTCON
- INTCON2
- INTCON3
- PIR1, PIR2, PIR3
- PIE1, PIE2, PIE3
- IPR1, IPR2, IPR3

It is recommended that the Microchip header files supplied with MPLAB be used for the symbolic bit names in these registers. This allows the assembler/compiler to automatically take care of the placement of these bits within the specified register.

Each interrupt source has three bits to control its operation. The functions of these bits are:

- Flag bit to indicate that an interrupt event occurred
- Enable bit that allows program execution to branch to the interrupt vector address when the flag bit is set
- Priority bit to select high priority or low priority

The interrupt priority feature is enabled by setting the IPEN bit (RCON register). When interrupt priority is enabled, there are two bits that enable interrupts globally. Setting the GIEH bit (INTCON register) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit set. Setting the GIEL bit (INTCON register) enables all interrupts that have the priority bit cleared. When the interrupt flag, enable bit and appropriate global interrupt enable bit are set, the interrupt will vector immediately to address 000008h or 000018h, depending on the priority level. Individual interrupts can be disabled through their corresponding enable bits.

When the IPEN bit is cleared (default state), the interrupt priority feature is disabled and interrupts are compatible with PICmicro® mid-range devices. In Compatibility mode, the interrupt priority bits for each source have no effect. The PEIE bit (INTCON register) enables/disables all peripheral interrupt sources. The GIE bit (INTCON register) enables/disables all interrupt sources. All interrupts branch to address 000008h in Compatibility mode.

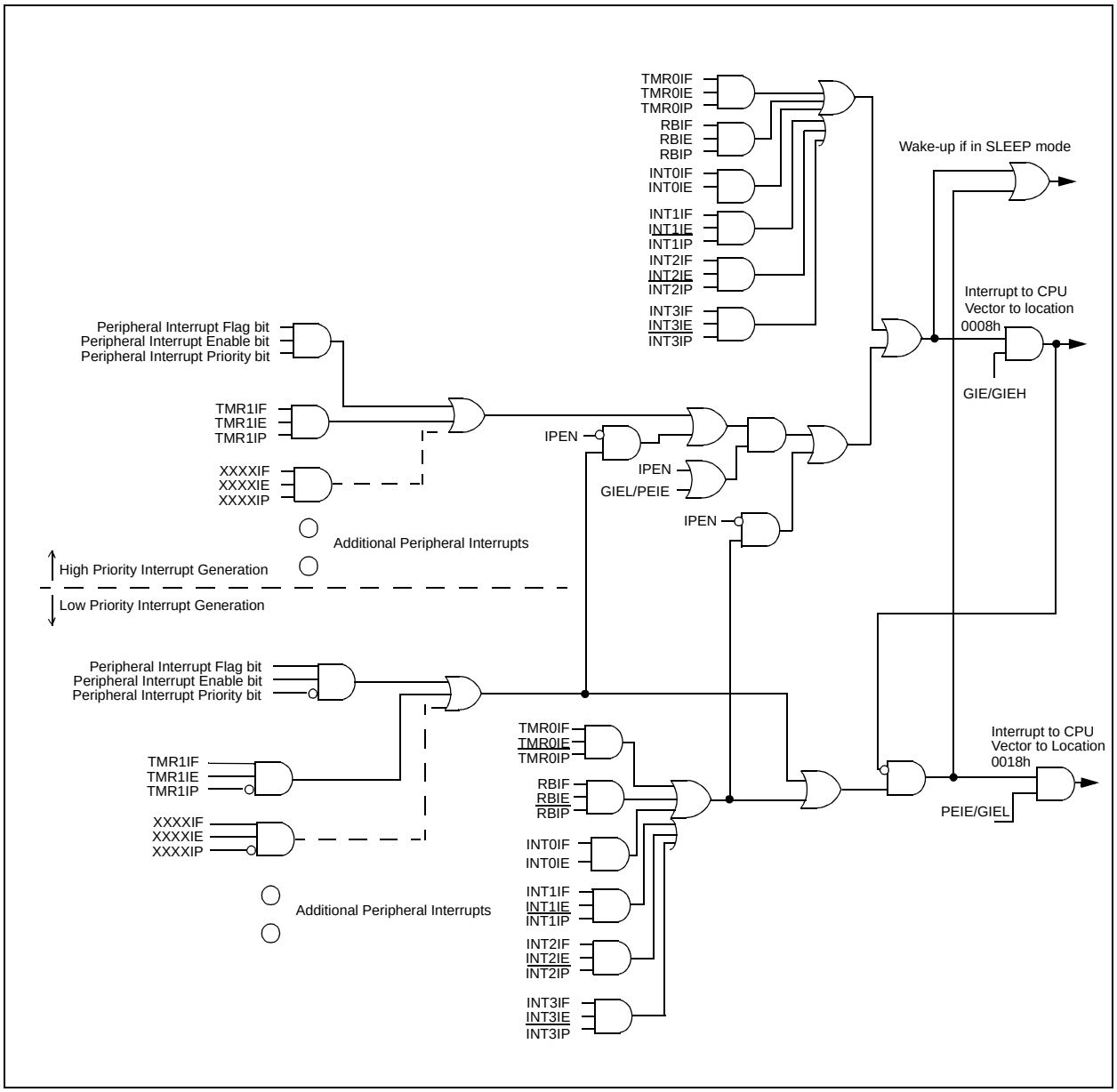
When an interrupt is responded to, the Global Interrupt Enable bit is cleared to disable further interrupts. If the IPEN bit is cleared, this is the GIE bit. If interrupt priority levels are used, this will be either the GIEH or GIEL bit. High priority interrupt sources can interrupt a low priority interrupt.

The return address is pushed onto the stack and the PC is loaded with the interrupt vector address (000008h or 000018h). Once in the interrupt service routine, the source(s) of the interrupt can be determined by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bits must be cleared in software before re-enabling interrupts to avoid recursive interrupts.

The "return from interrupt" instruction, `RETFIE`, exits the interrupt routine and sets the GIE bit (GIEH or GIEL if priority levels are used), which re-enables interrupts.

For external interrupt events, such as the INT pins or the PORTB input change interrupt, the interrupt latency will be three to four instruction cycles. The exact latency is the same for one or two cycle instructions. Individual interrupt flag bits are set, regardless of the status of their corresponding enable bit or the GIE bit.

FIGURE 7-1: INTERRUPT LOGIC



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

7.1 Control Registers

This section contains the control and status registers.

7.1.1 INTCON REGISTERS

The INTCON Registers are readable and writable registers, which contain various enable, priority, and flag bits.

REGISTER 7-1: INTCON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-x
GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GIE/GIEH:** Global Interrupt Enable bit

When IPEN = 0:
1 = Enables all un-masked interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts

When IPEN = 1:
1 = Enables all high priority interrupts
0 = Disables all high priority interrupts

bit 6 **PEIE/GIEL:** Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit

When IPEN = 0:
1 = Enables all un-masked peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts

When IPEN = 1:
1 = Enables all low priority peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all priority peripheral interrupts

bit 5 **TMR0IE:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR0 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR0 overflow interrupt

bit 4 **INT0IE:** INT0 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT0 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT0 external interrupt

bit 3 **RBIE:** RB Port Change Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the RB port change interrupt
0 = Disables the RB port change interrupt

bit 2 **TMR0IF:** TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR0 register has overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR0 register did not overflow

bit 1 **INT0IF:** INT0 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT0 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software by reading PORTB)
0 = The INT0 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **RBIF:** RB Port Change Interrupt Flag bit
1 = At least one of the RB7:RB4 pins changed state (must be cleared in software)
0 = None of the RB7:RB4 pins have changed state

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: Interrupt flag bits get set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows software polling.

REGISTER 7-2: INTCON2 REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{RBPU}}$**: PORTB Pull-up Enable bit
1 = All PORTB pull-ups are disabled
0 = PORTB pull-ups are enabled by individual port latch values

bit 6 **INTEDG0**: External Interrupt 0 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 5 **INTEDG1**: External Interrupt 1 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 4 **INTEDG2**: External Interrupt 2 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 3 **INTEDG3:** External Interrupt 3 Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge
0 = Interrupt on falling edge

bit 2 **TMR0IP**: TMR0 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **INT3IP**: INT3 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **RBIP**: RB Port Change Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: Interrupt flag bits get set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows software polling.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 7-3: INTCON3 REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **INT2IP:** INT2 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **INT1IP:** INT1 External Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **INT3IE:** INT3 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT3 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT3 external interrupt

bit 4 **INT2IE:** INT2 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT2 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT2 external interrupt

bit 3 **INT1IE:** INT1 External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT1 external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT1 external interrupt

bit 2 **INT3IF: I**NT3 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT3 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT3 external interrupt did not occur

bit 1 **INT2IF:** INT2 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT2 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT2 external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **INT1IF:** INT1 External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT1 external interrupt occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = The INT1 external interrupt did not occur

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: Interrupt flag bits get set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt. This feature allows software polling.

7.1.2 PIR REGISTERS

The Peripheral Interrupt Request (PIR) registers contain the individual flag bits for the peripheral interrupts (Register 7-5). Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Request (Flag) registers (PIR1, PIR2, PIR3).

> **Note 1:** Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the global enable bit, GIE (INTCON register).
>
> **2:** User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are cleared prior to enabling an interrupt, and after servicing that interrupt.

7.1.3 PIE REGISTERS

The Peripheral Interrupt Enable (PIE) registers contain the individual enable bits for the peripheral interrupts (Register 7-5). Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Enable registers (PIE1, PIE2, PIE3). When IPEN is clear, the PEIE bit must be set to enable any of these peripheral interrupts.

7.1.4 IPR REGISTERS

The Interrupt Priority (IPR) registers contain the individual priority bits for the peripheral interrupts (Register 7-7). Due to the number of peripheral interrupt sources, there are three Peripheral Interrupt Priority registers (IPR1, IPR2, IPR3). The operation of the priority bits requires that the Interrupt Priority Enable bit (IPEN) be set.

7.1.5 RCON REGISTER

The Reset Control (RCON) register contains the bit that is used to enable prioritized interrupts (IPEN).

REGISTER 7-4: RCON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
IPEN	LWRT	—	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IPEN:** Interrupt Priority Enable bit
`1` = Enable priority levels on interrupts
`0` = Disable priority levels on interrupts (16CXXX compatibility mode)

bit 6 **LWRT:** Long Write Enable
For details of bit operation see Register 4-3

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4 **$\overline{\text{RI}}$:** `RESET` Instruction Flag bit
For details of bit operation see Register 4-3

bit 3 **$\overline{\text{TO}}$:** Watchdog Time-out Flag bit
For details of bit operation see Register 4-3

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{PD}}$:** Power-down Detection Flag bit
For details of bit operation see Register 4-3

bit 1 **$\overline{\text{POR}}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit
For details of bit operation see Register 4-3

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{BOR}}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit
For details of bit operation see Register 4-3

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 7-5: PIR REGISTERS

	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF
	bit 7							bit 0

	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF
	bit 7							bit 0

	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PIR3	IRXIF	WAKIF	ERRIF	TXB2IF	TXB1IF	TXB0IF	RXB1IF	RXB0IF
	bit 7							bit 0

PIR1

bit 7 **PSPIF:** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Flag bit
1 = A read or a write operation has taken place (must be cleared in software)
0 = No read or write has occurred

bit 6 **ADIF**: A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An A/D conversion completed (must be cleared in software)
0 = The A/D conversion is not complete

bit 5 **RCIF**: USART Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART receive buffer, RCREG, is full (cleared when RCREG is read)
0 = The USART receive buffer is empty

bit 4 **TXIF**: USART Transmit Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The USART transmit buffer, TXREG, is empty (cleared when TXREG is written)
0 = The USART transmit buffer is full

bit 3 **SSPIF**: Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The transmission/reception is complete (must be cleared in software)
0 = Waiting to transmit/receive

bit 2 **CCP1IF**: CCP1 Interrupt Flag bit
Capture Mode
1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred
Compare Mode
1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred
PWM Mode
Unused in this mode

bit 1 **TMR2IF:** TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR2 to PR2 match occurred (must be cleared in software)
0 = No TMR2 to PR2 match occurred

bit 0 **TMR1IF:** TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR1 register overflowed (must be cleared in software)
0 = TMR1 register did not overflow

REGISTER 7-5: PIR REGISTERS (CONT'D)

PIR2	bit 7	**Unimplemented:** Read as'0'
	bit 6	**CMIF:** Comparator Interrupt Flag bit 1 = Comparator input has changed 0 = Comparator input has not changed
	bit 5-4	**Unimplemented:** Read as'0'
	bit 3	**BCLIF:** Bus Collision Interrupt Flag bit 1 = A Bus Collision occurred (must be cleared in software) 0 = No Bus Collision occurred
	bit 2	**LVDIF:** Low Voltage Detect Interrupt Flag bit 1 = A low voltage condition occurred (must be cleared in software) 0 = The device voltage is above the Low Voltage Detect trip point
	bit 1	**TMR3IF:** TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit 1 = TMR3 register overflowed (must be cleared in software) 0 = TMR3 register did not overflow
	bit 0	**CCP2IF:** CCPx Interrupt Flag bit <u>Capture Mode</u> 1 = A TMR1 register capture occurred (must be cleared in software) 0 = No TMR1 register capture occurred <u>Compare Mode</u> 1 = A TMR1 register compare match occurred (must be cleared in software) 0 = No TMR1 register compare match occurred <u>PWM Mode</u> Unused in this mode

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 7-5: PIR REGISTERS (CONT'D)

PIR3

bit 7 **IRXIF:** Invalid Message Received Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An invalid message has occurred on the CAN bus
0 = An invalid message has not occurred on the CAN bus

bit 6 **WAKIF:** Bus Activity Wake-up Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Activity on the CAN bus has occurred
0 = Activity on the CAN bus has not occurred

bit 5 **ERRIF:** CAN Bus Error Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An error has occurred in the CAN module (multiple sources)
0 = An error has not occurred in the CAN module

bit 4 **TXB2IF:** Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Transmit Buffer 2 has completed transmission of a message, and may be reloaded
0 = Transmit Buffer 2 has not completed transmission of a message

bit 3 **TXB1IF:** Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Transmit Buffer 1 has completed transmission of a message, and may be reloaded
0 = Transmit Buffer 1 has not completed transmission of a message

bit 2 **TXB0IF:** Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Transmit Buffer 0 has completed transmission of a message, and may be reloaded
0 = Transmit Buffer 0 has not completed transmission of a message

bit 1 **RXB1IF:** Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Receive Buffer 1 has received a new message
0 = Receive Buffer 1 has not received a new message

bit 0 **RXB0IF:** Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Receive Buffer 0 has received a new message
0 = Receive Buffer 0 has not received a new message

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 7-6: PIE REGISTERS

	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE
	bit 7							bit 0

	U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE
	bit 7							bit 0

	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
PIE3	IVRE	WAKIE	ERRIE	TXB2IE	TXB1IE	TXB0IE	RXB1IE	RXB0IE
	bit 7							bit 0

PIE1

bit 7 **PSPIE:** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the PSP read/write interrupt
0 = Disables the PSP read/write interrupt

bit 6 **ADIE**: A/D Converter Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the A/D interrupt
0 = Disables the A/D interrupt

bit 5 **RCIE**: USART Receive Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART receive interrupt
0 = Disables the USART receive interrupt

bit 4 **TXIE**: USART Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the USART transmit interrupt

bit 3 **SSPIE**: Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the MSSP interrupt
0 = Disables the MSSP interrupt

bit 2 **CCP1IE**: CCP1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP1 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP1 interrupt

bit 1 **TMR2IE**: TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR2 to PR2 match interrupt

bit 0 **TMR1IE**: TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR1 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR1 overflow interrupt

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 7-6: PIE REGISTERS (CONT'D)

PIE2

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **CMIE:** Comparator Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the comparator interrupt
0 = Disables the comparator interrupt

bit 5-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **BCLIE**: Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 2 **LVDIE**: Low-voltage Detect Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enabled
0 = Disabled

bit 1 **TMR3IE**: TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR3 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR3 overflow interrupt

bit 0 **CCP2IE**: CCP2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP2 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP2 interrupt

PIE3

bit 7 **IVRE:** Invalid CAN Message Received Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Invalid CAN Message Received Interrupt
0 = Disables the Invalid CAN Message Received Interrupt

bit 6 **WAKIE:** Bus Activity Wake-up Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Bus Activity Wake-Up Interrupt
0 = Disables the Bus Activity Wake-Up Interrupt

bit 5 **ERRIE:** CAN Bus Error Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CAN Bus Error Interrupt
0 = Disables the CAN Bus Error Interrupt

bit 4 **TXB2IE:** Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt
0 = Disables the Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt

bit 3 **TXB1IE:** Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt
0 = Disables the Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt

bit 2 **TXB0IE:** Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt
0 = Disables the Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt

bit 1 **RXB1IE:** Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt
0 = Disables the Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt

bit 0 **RXB0IE:** Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt
0 = Disables the Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 7-7: IPR REGISTERS

	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP
	bit 7							bit 0

	U-0	R/W-1	U-0	U-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP
	bit 7							bit 0

	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
IPR3	IVRP	WAKIP	ERRIP	TXB2IP	TXB1IP	TXB0IP	RXB1IP	RXB0IP
	bit 7							bit 0

IPR1

bit 7 **PSPIP:** Parallel Slave Port Read/Write Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **ADIP**: A/D Converter Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **RCIP**: USART Receive Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 4 **TXIP**: USART Transmit Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **SSPIP**: Master Synchronous Serial Port Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 2 **CCP1IP**: CCP1 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **TMR2IP**: TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **TMR1IP**: TMR1 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 7-7: IPR REGISTERS (CONT'D)

IPR2	bit 7	**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
	bit 6	**CMIP:** Comparator Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 5-4	**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
	bit 3	**BCLIP**: Bus Collision Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 2	**LVDIP**: Low Voltage Detect Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 1	**TMR3IP**: TMR3 Overflow Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 0	**CCP2IP**: CCP2 Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
IPR3	bit 7	**IVRP:** Invalid Message Received Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 6	**WAKIP:** Bus Activity Wake-up Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 5	**ERRIP:** CAN Bus Error Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 4	**TXB2IP:** Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 3	**TXB1IP:** Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 2	**TXB0IP:** Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 1	**RXB1IP:** Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority
	bit 0	**RXB0IP:** Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt Priority bit 1 = High priority 0 = Low priority

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

7.1.6 INT INTERRUPTS

External interrupts on the RB0/INT0, RB1/INT1, RB2/INT2, and RB3/INT3 pins are edge triggered: either rising if the corresponding INTEDGx bit is set in the INTCON2 register, or falling, if the INTEDGx bit is clear. When a valid edge appears on the RBx/INTx pin, the corresponding flag bit INTxIF is set. This interrupt can be disabled by clearing the corresponding enable bit INTxIE. Flag bit INTxIF must be cleared in software in the Interrupt Service Routine before re-enabling the interrupt. All external interrupts (INT0, INT1, INT2, and INT3) can wake-up the processor from SLEEP, if bit INTxIE was set prior to going into SLEEP. If the global interrupt enable bit GIE is set, the processor will branch to the interrupt vector following wake-up.

Interrupt priority for INT1, INT2 and INT3 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bits INT1IP (INTCON3 register), INT3IP (INTCON3 register), and INT2IP (INTCON2 register). There is no priority bit associated with INT0; it is always a high priority interrupt source.

7.1.7 TMR0 INTERRUPT

In 8-bit mode (which is the default), an overflow (FFh → 00h) in the TMR0 register will set flag bit TMR0IF. In 16-bit mode, an overflow (FFFFh → 0000h) in the TMR0H:TMR0L registers will set flag bit TMR0IF. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit TMR0IE (INTCON register). Interrupt priority for Timer0 is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit TMR0IP (INTCON2 register). See Section 10.0 for further details on the Timer0 module.

7.1.8 PORTB INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE

An input change on PORTB<7:4> sets flag bit RBIF (INTCON register). The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit RBIE (INTCON register). Interrupt priority for PORTB interrupt-on-change is determined by the value contained in the interrupt priority bit RBIP (INTCON2 register).

7.2 Context Saving During Interrupts

During an interrupt, the return PC value is saved on the stack. Additionally, the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers are saved on the fast return stack. If a fast return from interrupt is not used (See Section 4.3), the user may need to save the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers in software. Depending on the user's application, other registers may also need to be saved. Example 7-1 saves and restores the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers during an Interrupt Service Routine.

EXAMPLE 7-1: SAVING STATUS, WREG AND BSR REGISTERS IN RAM

```
MOVWF    W_TEMP                    ; W_TEMP is in Low Access bank
MOVFF    STATUS, STATUS_TEMP       ; STATUS_TEMP located anywhere
MOVFF    BSR, BSR_TEMP             ; BSR located anywhere
;
; USER ISR CODE
;
MOVFF   BSR_TEMP, BSR              ; Restore BSR
MOVF    W_TEMP, W                  ; Restore WREG
MOVFF   STATUS_TEMP, STATUS        ; Restore STATUS
```

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.0 I/O PORTS

Depending on the device selected, there are up to eleven ports available. Some pins of the I/O ports are multiplexed with an alternate function from the peripheral features on the device. In general, when a peripheral is enabled, that pin may not be used as a general purpose I/O pin.

Each port has three registers for its operation. These registers are:

- TRIS register (Data Direction register)
- PORT register (reads the levels on the pins of the device)
- LAT register (output latch)

The data latch (LAT register) is useful for read-modify-write operations on the value that the I/O pins are driving.

8.1 PORTA, TRISA and LATA Registers

PORTA is a 6-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISA. Setting a TRISA bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISA bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as inputs and read as '0'.

Reading the PORTA register reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the port latch.

Read-modify-write operations on the LATA register, reads and writes the latched output value for PORTA.

The RA4 pin is multiplexed with the Timer0 module clock input to become the RA4/T0CKI pin. The RA4/T0CKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input and an open drain output. All other RA port pins have TTL input levels and full CMOS output drivers.

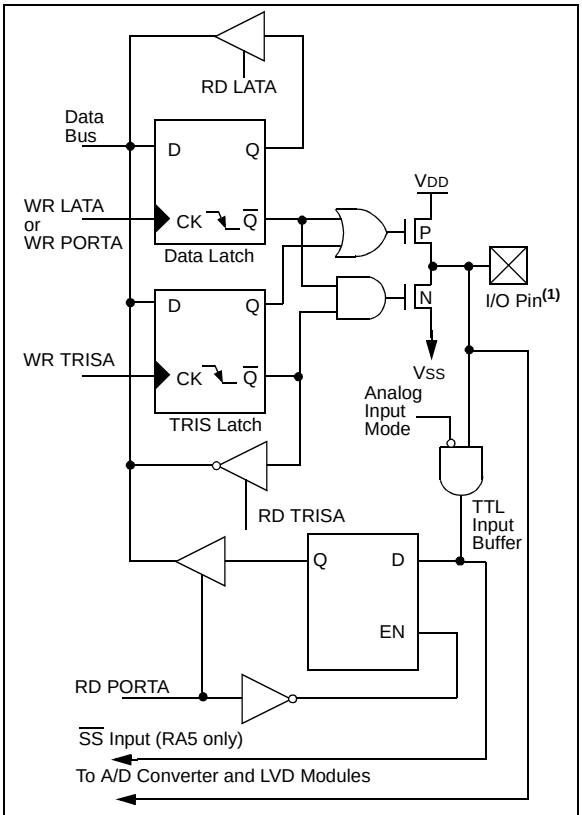
The other PORTA pins are multiplexed with analog inputs and the analog V_{REF}+ and V_{REF}- inputs. The operation of each pin is selected by clearing/setting the control bits in the ADCON1 register (A/D Control Register1). On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as analog inputs and read as '0'.

The TRISA register controls the direction of the RA pins, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user must ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs.

EXAMPLE 8-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

```
CLRF   PORTA    ; Initialize PORTA by
                ; clearing output
                ; data latches
CLRF   LATA     ; Alternate method
                ; to clear output
                ; data latches
MOVLW  0x07     ; Configure A/D
MOVWF  ADCON1   ; for digital inputs
MOVLW  0xCF     ; Value used to
                ; initialize data
                ; direction
MOVWF  TRISA    ; Set RA3:RA0 as inputs
                ; RA5:RA4 as outputs
```

FIGURE 8-1: RA3:RA0 AND RA5 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to V_{DD} and V_{SS}.

FIGURE 8-2: RA4/T0CKI PIN BLOCK DIAGRAM

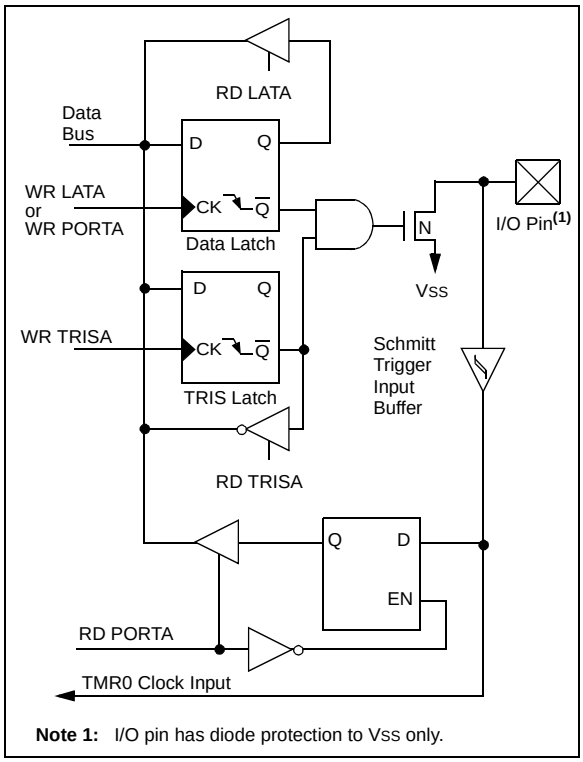


FIGURE 8-3: RA6 BLOCK DIAGRAM

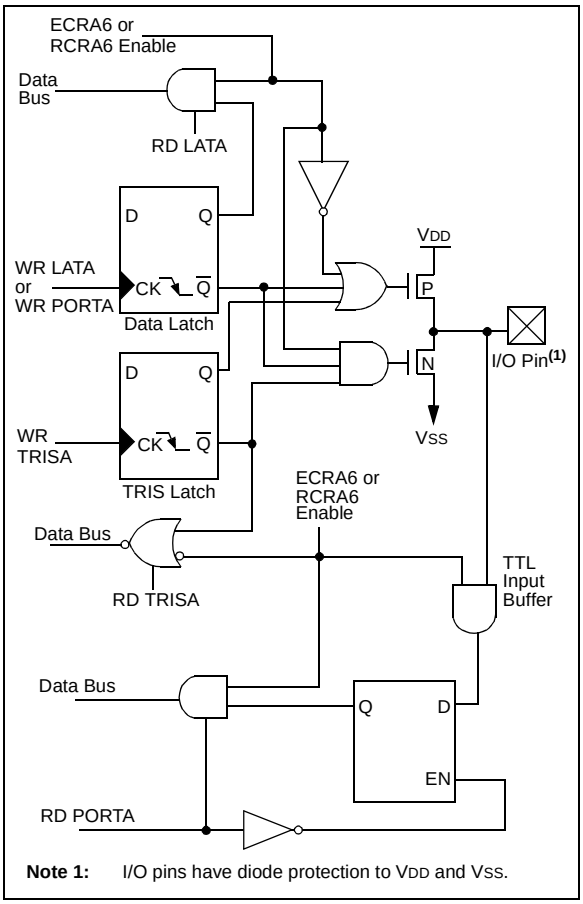


TABLE 8-1: PORTA FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RA0/AN0	bit0	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA1/AN1	bit1	TTL	Input/output or analog input.
RA2/AN2/VREF-	bit2	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF-.
RA3/AN3/VREF+	bit3	TTL	Input/output or analog input or VREF+.
RA4/T0CKI	bit4	ST/OD	Input/output or external clock input for Timer0 output is open drain type.
RA5/$\overline{SS}$/AN4/LVDIN	bit5	TTL	Input/output or slave select input for synchronous serial port or analog input, or low voltage detect input.
OSC2/CLKO/RA6	bit6	TTL	OSC2 or clock output or I/O pin.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input, OD = Open Drain

TABLE 8-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
PORTA	—	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	-x0x 0000	-uuu uuuu
LATA	—	Latch A Data Output Register							-xxx xxxx	-uuu uuuu
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							-111 1111	-111 1111
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--uu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.2 PORTB, TRISB and LATB Registers

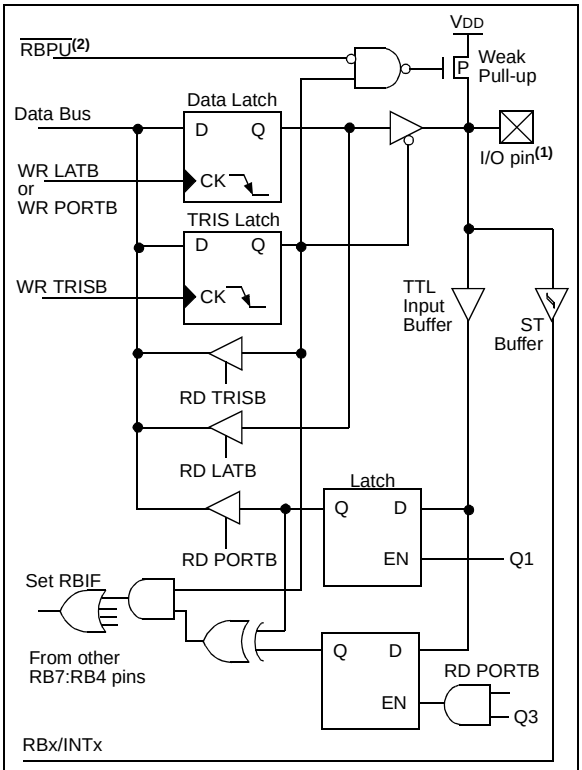
PORTB is an 8-bit wide bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISB. Setting a TRISB bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISB bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATB register read and write the latched output value for PORTB.

EXAMPLE 8-2: INITIALIZING PORTB

```
CLRF    PORTB     ; Initialize PORTB by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATB      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISB     ; Set RB3:RB0 as inputs
                  ; RB5:RB4 as outputs
                  ; RB7:RB6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 8-4: RB7:RB4 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.
2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the RBPU bit (INTCON2 register).

Each of the PORTB pins has a weak internal pull-up. A single control bit can turn on all the pull-ups. This is performed by clearing bit $\overline{\text{RBPU}}$ (INTCON2 register). The weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. The pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset.

Four of PORTB's pins, RB7:RB4, have an interrupt-on-change feature. Only pins configured as inputs can cause this interrupt to occur (i.e., any RB7:RB4 pin configured as an output is excluded from the interrupt-on-change comparison). The input pins (of RB7:RB4) are compared with the old value latched on the last read of PORTB. The "mismatch" outputs of RB7:RB4 are OR'd together to generate the RB Port Change Interrupt with flag bit RBIF (INTCON register).

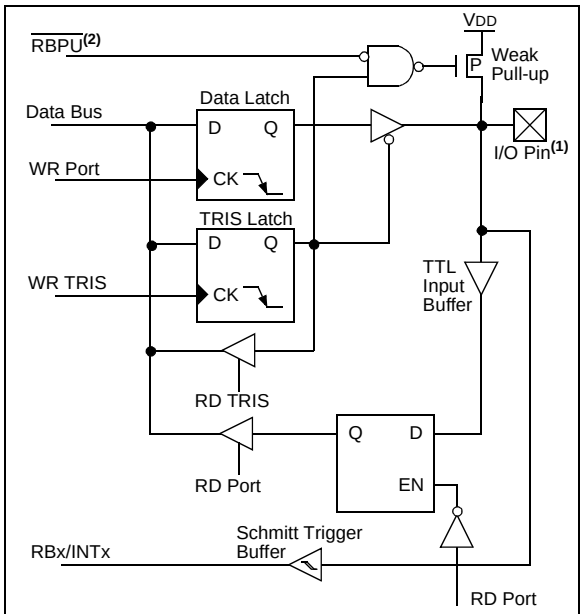
This interrupt can wake the device from SLEEP. The user, in the Interrupt Service Routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of PORTB (except with the `MOVFF` instruction). This will end the mismatch condition.
b) Clear flag bit RBIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit RBIF. Reading PORTB will end the mismatch condition and allow flag bit RBIF to be cleared.

The interrupt-on-change feature is recommended for wake-up on key depression operation and operations where PORTB is only used for the interrupt on change feature. Polling of PORTB is not recommended while using the interrupt-on-change feature.

FIGURE 8-5: RB3:RB0 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.
2: To enable weak pull-ups, set the appropriate TRIS bit(s) and clear the RBPU bit (INTCON2 register).

TABLE 8-3: PORTB FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer	Function
RB0/INT0	bit0	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt 0 input. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB1/INT1	bit1	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt 1 input. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB2/INT2	bit2	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt 2 input. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB3/INT3	bit3	TTL/ST(1)	Input/output pin or external interrupt 3 input. Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB4	bit4	TTL	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB5	bit5	TTL	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up.
RB6	bit6	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming clock.
RB7	bit7	TTL/ST(2)	Input/output pin (with interrupt-on-change). Internal software programmable weak pull-up. Serial programming data.

Legend: TTL = TTL input, ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note 1: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when configured as the external interrupt.

2: This buffer is a Schmitt Trigger input when used in Serial Programming mode.

TABLE 8-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATB	LATB Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
INTCON2	RBPU	INTEDG0	INTEDG1	INTEDG2	INTEDG3	TMR0IP	INT3IP	RBIP	1111 1111	1111 1111
INTCON3	INT2IP	INT1IP	INT3IE	INT2IE	INT1IE	INT3IF	INT2IF	INT1IF	1100 0000	1100 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.3 PORTC, TRISC and LATC Registers

PORTC is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISC. Setting a TRISC bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISC bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATC register, read and write the latched output value for PORTC.

PORTC is multiplexed with several peripheral functions (Table 8-5). PORTC pins have Schmitt Trigger input buffers.

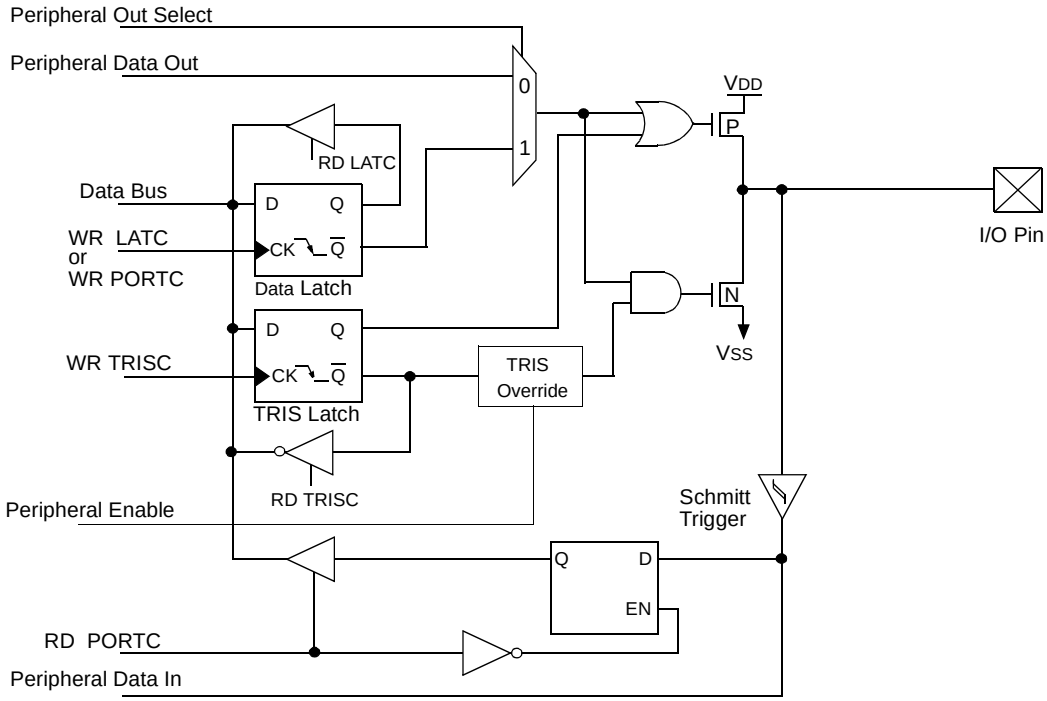
When enabling peripheral functions, care should be taken in defining TRIS bits for each PORTC pin. Some peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an output, while other peripherals override the TRIS bit to make a pin an input. The user should refer to the corresponding peripheral section for the correct TRIS bit settings.

The pin override value is not loaded into the TRIS register. This allows read-modify-write of the TRIS register, without concern due to peripheral overrides.

EXAMPLE 8-3: INITIALIZING PORTC

```
CLRF    PORTC     ; Initialize PORTC by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATC      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISC     ; Set RC3:RC0 as inputs
                  ; RC5:RC4 as outputs
                  ; RC7:RC6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 8-6: PORTC BLOCK DIAGRAM (PERIPHERAL OUTPUT OVERRIDE)



TRIS OVERRIDE

Pin	Override	Peripheral
RC0	Yes	Timer1 OSC for Timer1/Timer3
RC1	Yes	Timer1 OSC for Timer1/Timer3
RC2	No	—
RC3	Yes	SPI/I^2C Master Clock
RC4	Yes	I^2C Data Out
RC5	Yes	SPI Data Out
RC6	Yes	USART Async Xmit, Sync Clock
RC7	Yes	USART Sync Data Out

Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 8-5: PORTC FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI	bit0	ST	Input/output port pin or Timer1 oscillator output or Timer1/Timer3 clock input.
RC1/T1OSI	bit1	ST	Input/output port pin or Timer1 oscillator input.
RC2/CCP1	bit2	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture1 input/Compare1 output/PWM1 output.
RC3/SCK/SCL	bit3	ST	Input/output port pin or Synchronous Serial clock for SPI/I^2C.
RC4/SDI/SDA	bit4	ST	Input/output port pin or SPI Data in (SPI mode) or Data I/O (I^2C mode).
RC5/SDO	bit5	ST	Input/output port pin or Synchronous Serial Port data output.
RC6/TX/CK	bit6	ST	Input/output port pin Addressable USART Asynchronous Transmit or Addressable USART Synchronous Clock.
RC7/RX/DT	bit7	ST	Input/output port pin Addressable USART Asynchronous Receive or Addressable USART Synchronous Data.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 8-6: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTC

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATC	LATC Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.4 PORTD, TRISD and LATD Registers

PORTD is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISD. Setting a TRISD bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISD bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATD register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTD.

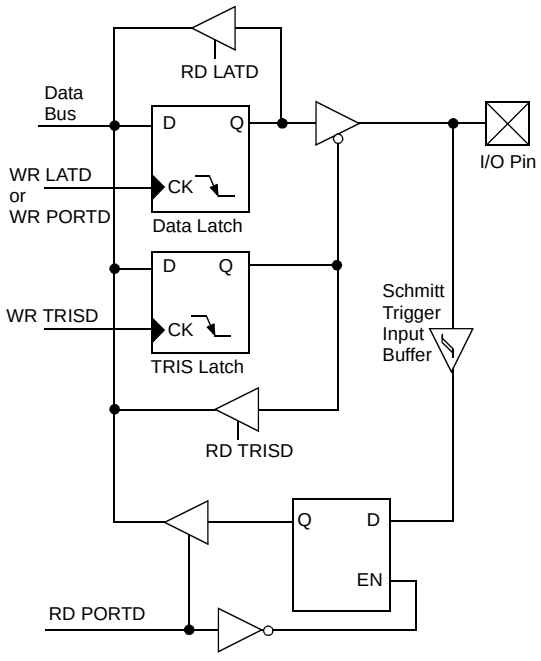
PORTD is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configurable as an input or output.

PORTD can be configured as an 8-bit wide microprocessor port (parallel slave port), by setting control bit PSPMODE (PSPCON register). In this mode, the input buffers are TTL. See Section 9.0 for additional information on the Parallel Slave Port (PSP).

EXAMPLE 8-4: INITIALIZING PORTD

```
CLRF    PORTD     ; Initialize PORTD by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATD      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISD     ; Set RD3:RD0 as inputs
                  ; RD5:RD4 as outputs
                  ; RD7:RD6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 8-7: PORTD BLOCK DIAGRAM IN I/O PORT MODE



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 8-7: PORTD FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RD0/PSP0	bit0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit0.
RD1/PSP1	bit1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit1.
RD2/PSP2	bit2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit2.
RD3/PSP3	bit3	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit3.
RD4/PSP4	bit4	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit4.
RD5/PSP5	bit5	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit5.
RD6/PSP6	bit6	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit6.
RD7/PSP7	bit7	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or parallel slave port bit7.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffer when in Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 8-8: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTD

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
PORTD	RD7	RD6	RD5	RD4	RD3	RD2	RD1	RD0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATD	LATD Data Output Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	PORTD Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PSPCON	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTD.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.5 PORTE, TRISE and LATE Registers

PORTE is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISE. Setting a TRISE bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISE bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

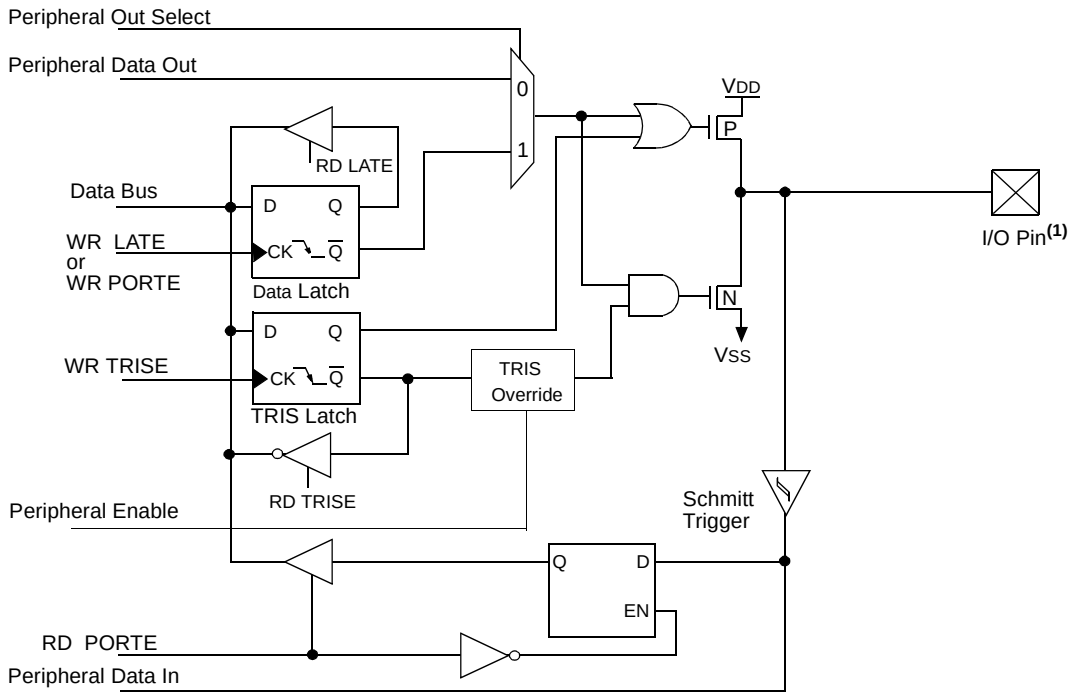
Read-modify-write operations on the LATE register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTE.

PORTE is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configurable as an input or output. PORTE is multiplexed with several peripheral functions (Table 8-9).

EXAMPLE 8-5: INITIALIZING PORTE

```
CLRF    PORTE     ; Initialize PORTE by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATE      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0x03      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISE     ; Set RE1:RE0 as inputs
                  ; RE7:RE2 as outputs
```

FIGURE 8-8: PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM



TRIS OVERRIDE

Pin	Override	Peripheral
RE0	Yes	PSP
RE1	Yes	PSP
RE2	Yes	PSP
RE3	No	—
RE4	No	—
RE5	No	—
RE6	No	—
RE7	No	—

Note 1: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 8-9: PORTE FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RE0/$\overline{RD}$	bit0	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Read control input in Parallel Slave Port mode.
RE1/$\overline{WR}$	bit1	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Write control input in Parallel Slave Port mode.
RE2/$\overline{CS}$	bit2	ST/TTL(1)	Input/output port pin or Chip Select control input in Parallel Slave Port mode.
RE3	bit3	ST	Input/output port pin.
RE4	bit4	ST	Input/output port pin.
RE5	bit5	ST	Input/output port pin.
RE6	bit6	ST	Input/output port pin.
RE7/CCP2	bit7	ST	Input/output port pin or Capture 2 input/Compare 2 output.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

Note 1: Input buffers are Schmitt Triggers when in I/O mode and TTL buffer when in Parallel Slave Port mode.

TABLE 8-10: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TRISE	PORTE Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTE	Read PORTE pin/Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATE	Read PORTE Data Latch/Write PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
PSPCON	IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.6 PORTF, LATF, and TRISF Registers

PORTF is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISF. Setting a TRISF bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTF pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISF bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTF pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATF register reads and writes the latched output value for PORTF.

PORTF is multiplexed with several analog peripheral functions including the A/D converter inputs and comparator inputs, outputs, and voltage reference.

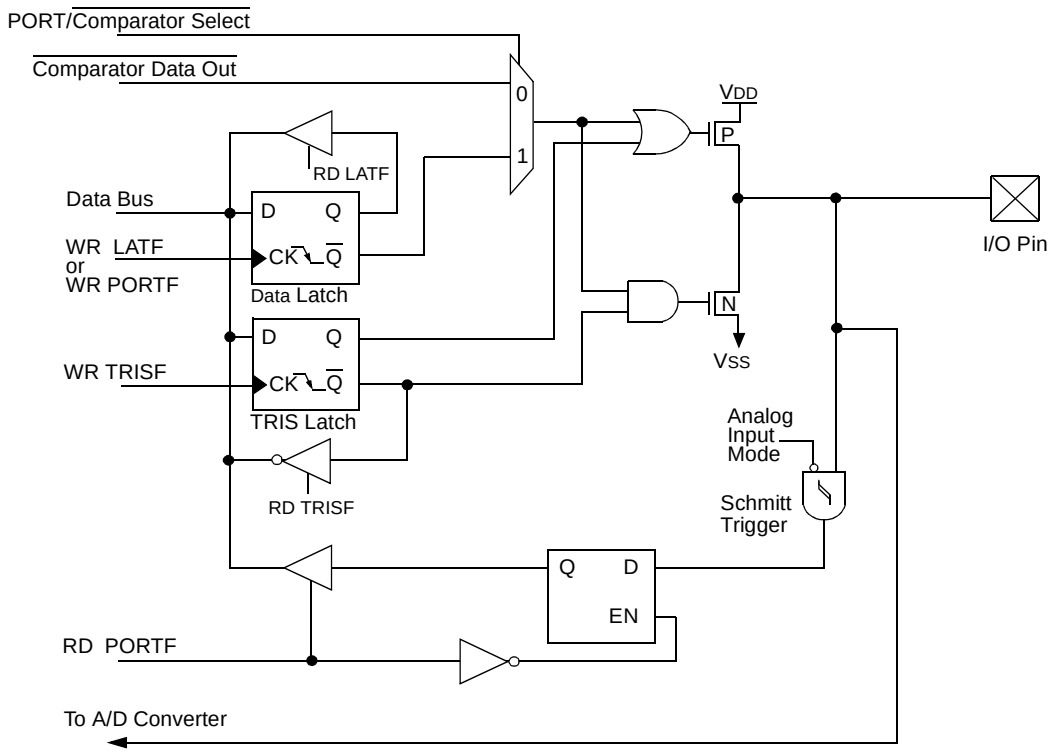
Note 1: On a Power-on Reset, the RF6:RF0 pins are configured as inputs and read as '0'.

2: To configure PORTF as digital I/O, turn off comparators and set ADCON1 value.

EXAMPLE 8-6: INITIALIZING PORTF

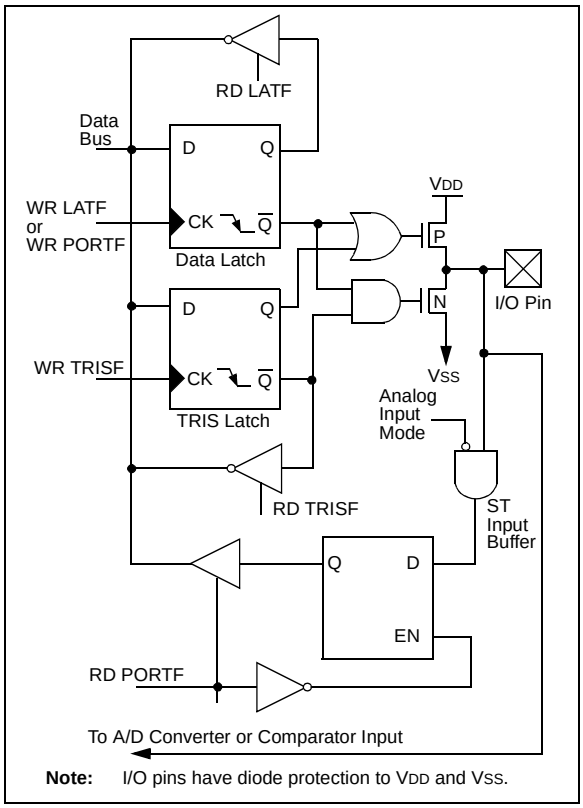
```
CLRF    PORTF     ; Initialize PORTF by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATF      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0x07      ;
MOVWF   CMCON     ; Turn off comparators
MOVLW   0x0F      ;
MOVWF   ADCON1    ; Set PORTF as digital I/O
MOVLW   0xCF      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISF     ; Set RF3:RF0 as inputs
                  ; RF5:RF4 as outputs
                  ; RF7:RF6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 8-9: PORTF RF1/AN6/C2OUT, RF2/AN5/C1OUT BLOCK DIAGRAM



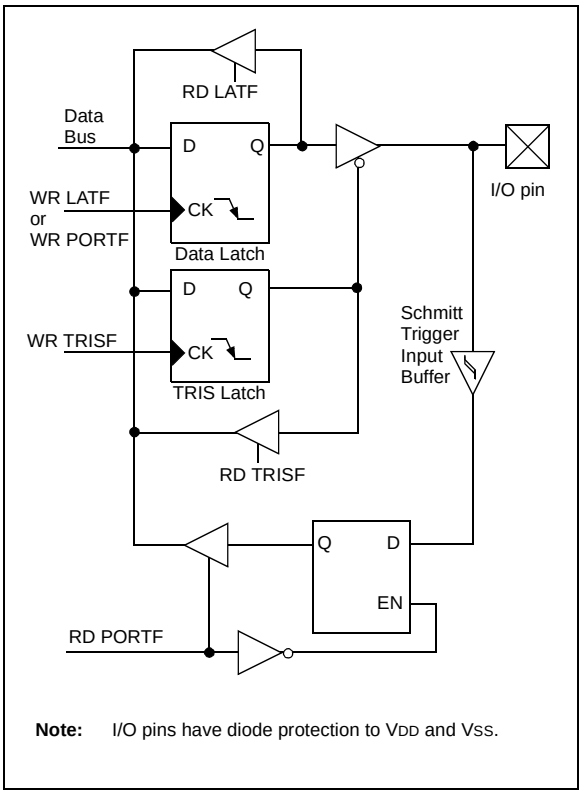
Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 8-10: RF6:RF3 AND RF0 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 8-11: RF7 PIN BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 8-11: PORTF FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RF0/AN5	bit0	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input.
RF1/AN6/C2OUT	bit1	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input or comparator 2 output.
RF2/AN7/C1OUT	bit2	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input or comparator 1 output.
RF3/AN8	bit3	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input or comparator input.
RF4/AN9	bit4	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input or comparator input.
RF5/AN10/ CVREF	bit5	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input or comparator input or comparator reference output.
RF6/AN11	bit6	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input or comparator input.
RF7	bit7	ST	Input/output port pin.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 8-12: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTF

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TRISF	PORTF Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTF	Read PORTF pin / Write PORTF Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATF	Read PORTF Data Latch/Write PORTF Data Latch								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--00 0000
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

8.7 PORTG, LATG, and TRISG Registers

PORTG is a 5-bit wide, bi-directional port. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISG. Setting a TRISG bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTG pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISG bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTG pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

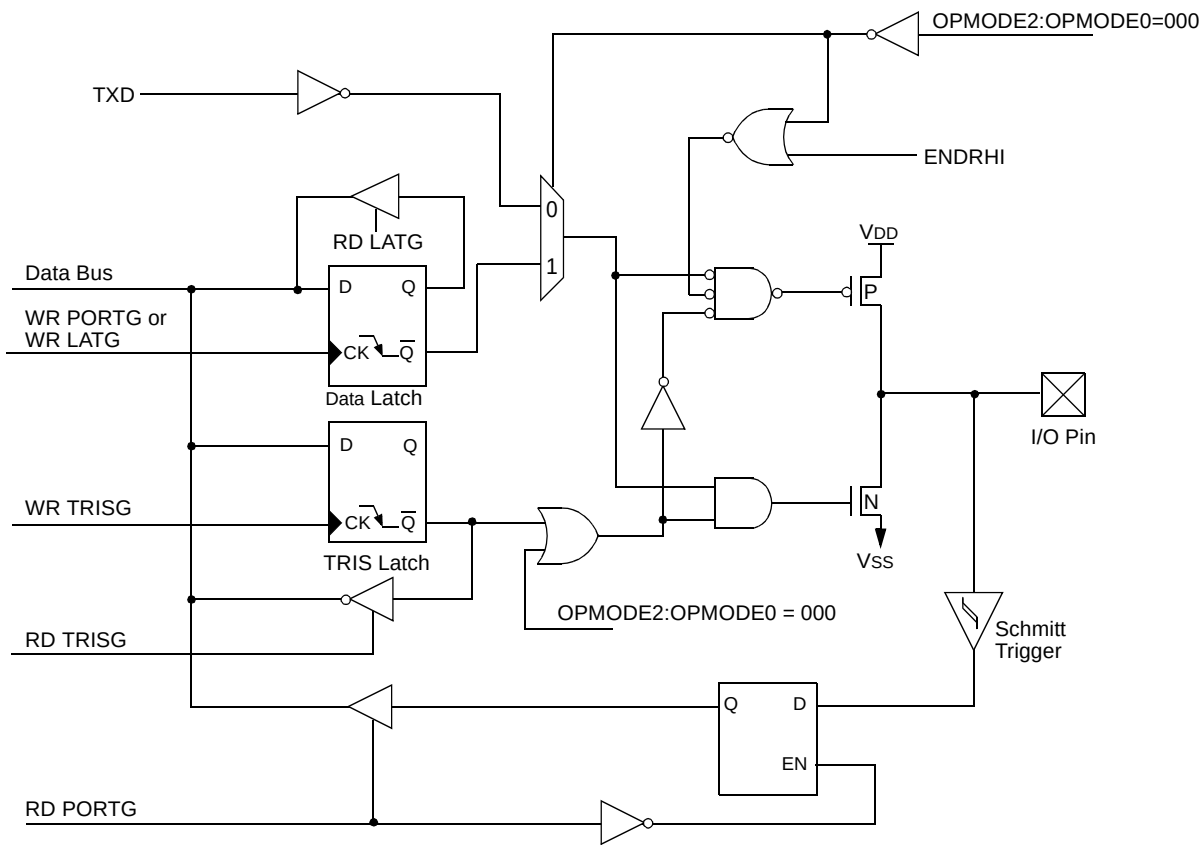
Read-modify-write operations on the LATG register read and write the latched output value for PORTG.

Pins RG0-RG2 on PORTG are multiplexed with the CAN peripheral. Refer to "CAN Module", Section 17.0 for proper settings of TRISG when CAN is enabled.

EXAMPLE 8-7: INITIALIZING PORTG

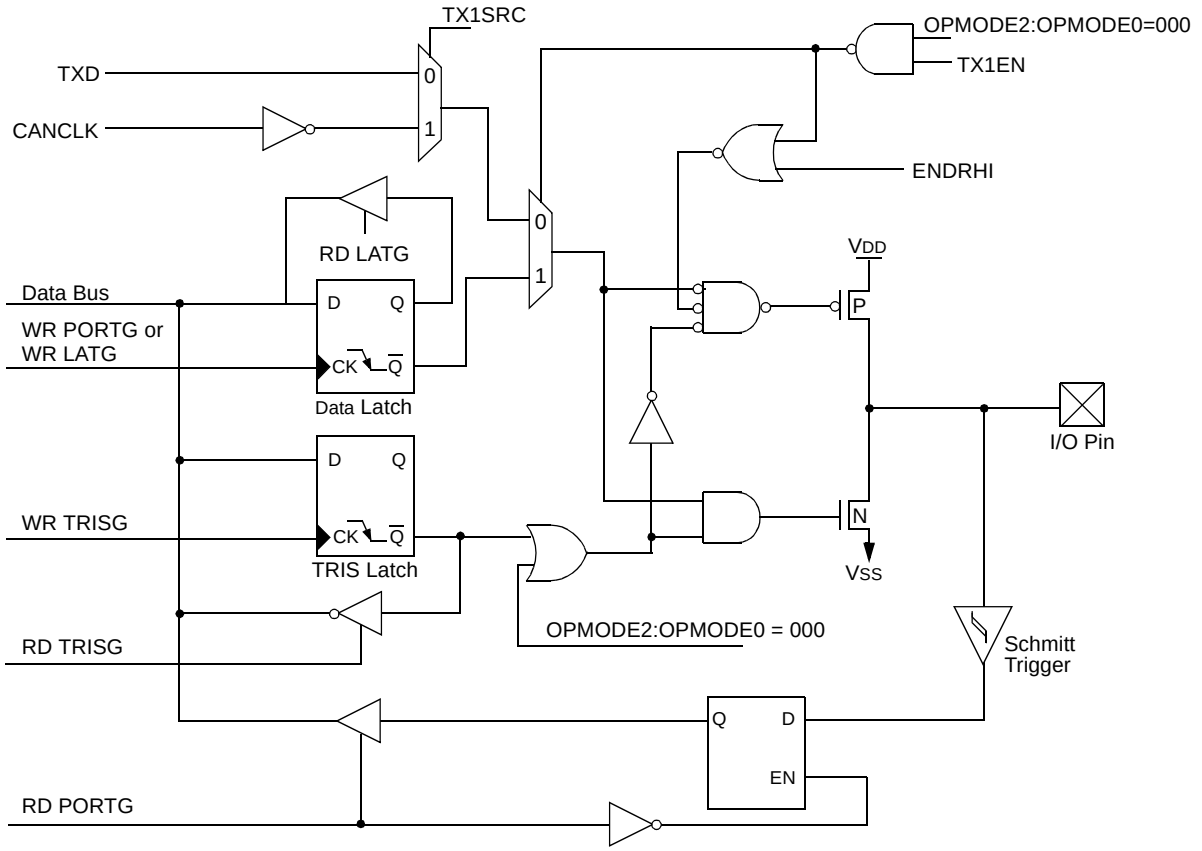
```
CLRF    PORTG     ; Initialize PORTG by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATG      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0x04      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISG     ; Set RG1:RG0 as outputs
                  ; RG2 as input
                  ; RG4:RG3 as outputs
```

FIGURE 8-12: RG0/CANTX0 PIN BLOCK DIAGRAM



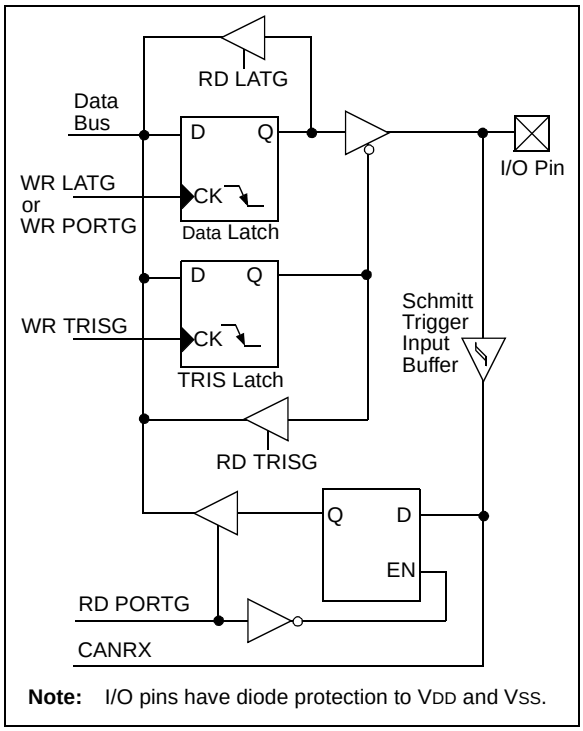
Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 8-13: RG1/CANTX1 PIN BLOCK DIAGRAM



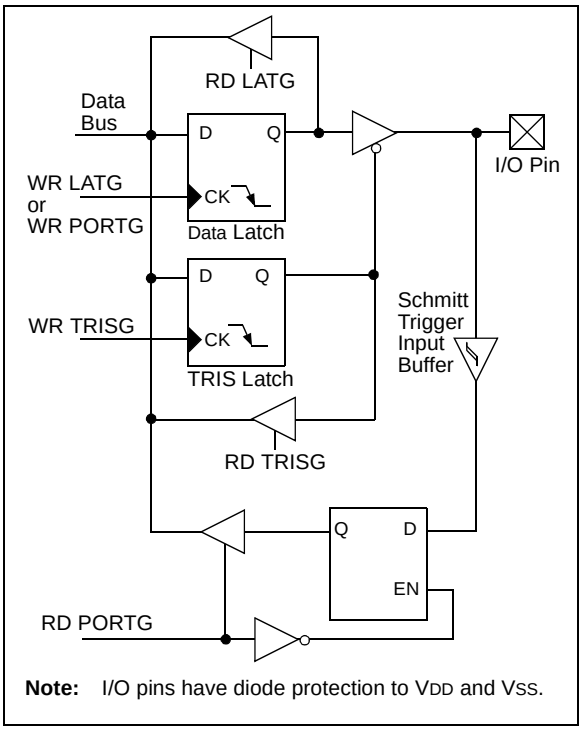
Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 8-14: RG2/CANRX PIN BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 8-15: RG4:RG3 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 8-13: PORTG FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RG0/CANTX0	bit0	ST	Input/output port pin or CAN bus transmit output.
RG1/CANTX1	bit1	ST	Input/output port pin or CAN bus complimentary transmit output or CAN bus bit time clock.
RG2/CANRX	bit2	ST	Input/output port pin or CAN bus receive input.
RG3	bit3	ST	Input/output port pin.
RG4	bit4	ST	Input/output port pin.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

Note: Refer to "CAN Module", Section 17.0 for usage of CAN pin functions.

TABLE 8-14: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTG

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TRISG	PORTG Data Direction Control Register								---1 1111	---1 1111
PORTG	Read PORTG pin / Write PORTG Data Latch								---x xxxx	---u uuuu
LATG	Read PORTG Data Latch/Write PORTG Data Latch								---x xxxx	---u uuuu
CIOCON	TX1SRC	TX1EN	ENDRHI	CANCAP	—	—	—	—	0000 ----	0000 ----

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

8.8 PORTH, LATH, and TRISH Registers

Note: This port is available on PIC18C858.

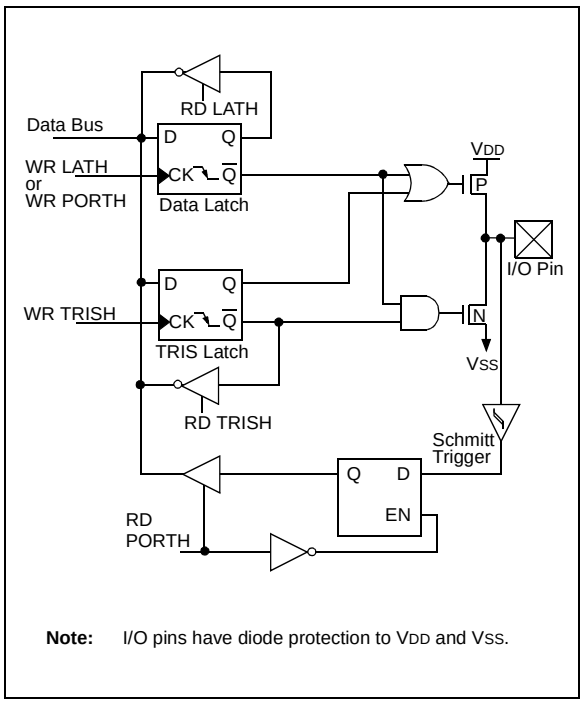
PORTH is a 5-bit wide, bi-directional port available only on the PIC18C858 devices. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISH. Setting a TRISH bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTH pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISH bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTH pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

Read-modify-write operations on the LATH register read and write the latched output value for PORTH.

Pins RH0-RH3 on the PIC18C858 are bi-directional I/O pins with ST input buffers. Pins RH4-RH7 on all devices are multiplexed with A/D converter inputs.

Note: On a Power-on Reset, the RH7:RH4 pins are configured as inputs and read as '0'.

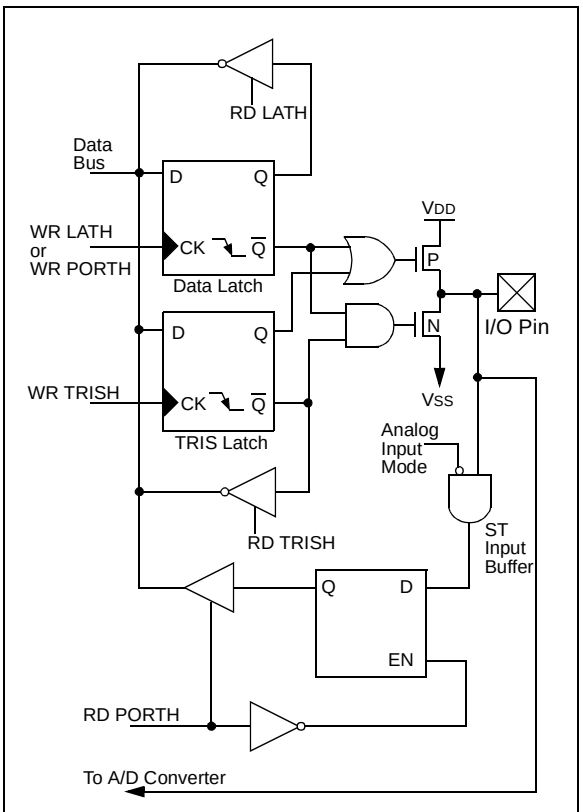
FIGURE 8-16: RH3:RH0 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



EXAMPLE 8-8: INITIALIZING PORTH

```
CLRF    PORTH     ; Initialize PORTH by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATH      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0x0F      ;
MOVWF   ADCON1    ;
MOVLW   0xCF      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISH     ; Set RH3:RH0 as inputs
                  ; RH5:RH4 as outputs
                  ; RH7:RH6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 8-17: RH7:RH4 PINS BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 8-15: PORTH FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RH0	bit0	ST	Input/output port pin.
RH1	bit1	ST	Input/output port pin.
RH2	bit2	ST	Input/output port pin.
RH3	bit3	ST	Input/output port pin.
RH4/AN12	bit4	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 12.
RH5/AN13	bit5	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 13.
RH6/AN14	bit6	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 14.
RH7/AN15	bit7	ST	Input/output port pin or analog input channel 15.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 8-16: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTH

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TRISH	PORTH Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTH	Read PORTH pin/Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATH	Read PORTH Data Latch/Write PORTH Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	--00 0000	--00 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented

8.9 PORTJ, LATJ, and TRISJ Registers

Note: This port is available on PIC18C858.

PORTJ is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port available only on the PIC18C858 devices. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISJ. Setting a TRISJ bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTJ pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISJ bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTJ pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

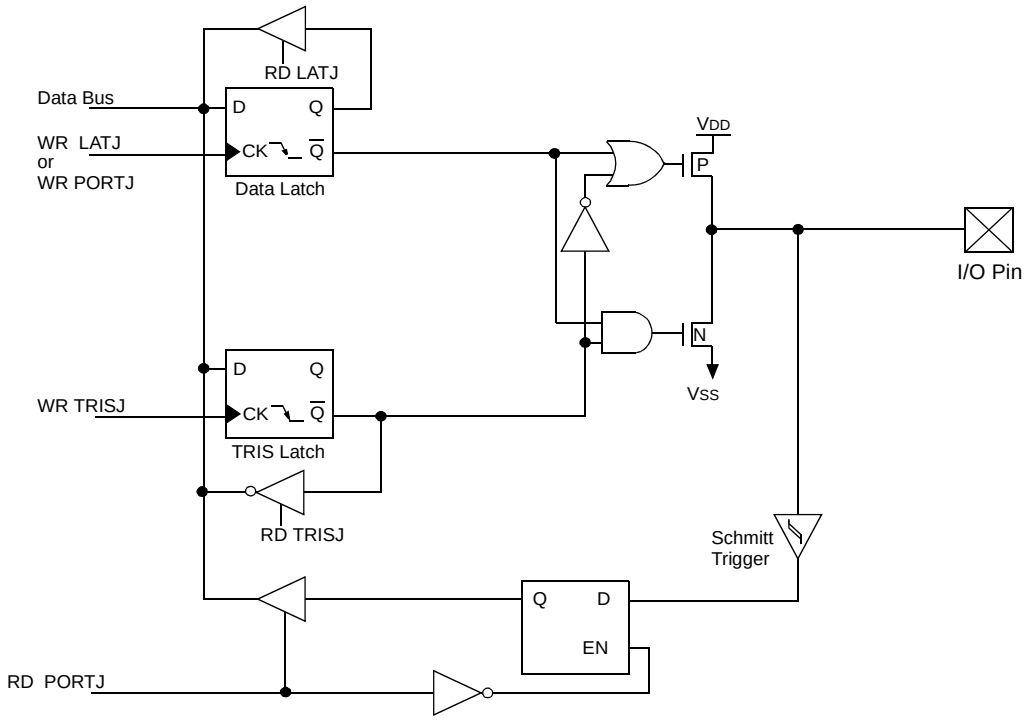
Read-modify-write operations on the LATJ register read and write the latched output value for PORTJ.

PORTJ on the PIC18C858 is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configurable as an input or output.

EXAMPLE 8-9: INITIALIZING PORTJ

```
CLRF    PORTJ     ; Initialize PORTJ by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATJ      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISJ     ; Set RJ3:RJ0 as inputs
                  ; RJ5:RJ4 as outputs
                  ; RJ7:RJ6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 8-18: PORTJ BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 8-17: PORTJ FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RJ0	bit0	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.
RJ1	bit1	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.
RJ2	bit2	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.
RJ3	bit3	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.
RJ4	bit4	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.
RJ5	bit5	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.
RJ6	bit6	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.
RJ7	bit7	ST/TTL	Input/output port pin.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input, TTL = TTL input

TABLE 8-18: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTJ

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TRISJ	PORTJ Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTJ	Read PORTJ pin/Write PORTJ Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATJ	Read PORTJ Data Latch/Write PORTJ Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

8.10 PORTK, LATK, and TRISK Registers

Note: This port is available on PIC18C858.

PORTK is an 8-bit wide, bi-directional port available only on the PIC18C858 devices. The corresponding Data Direction register is TRISK. Setting a TRISK bit (=1) will make the corresponding PORTK pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a hi-impedance mode). Clearing a TRISK bit (=0) will make the corresponding PORTK pin an output (i.e., put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin).

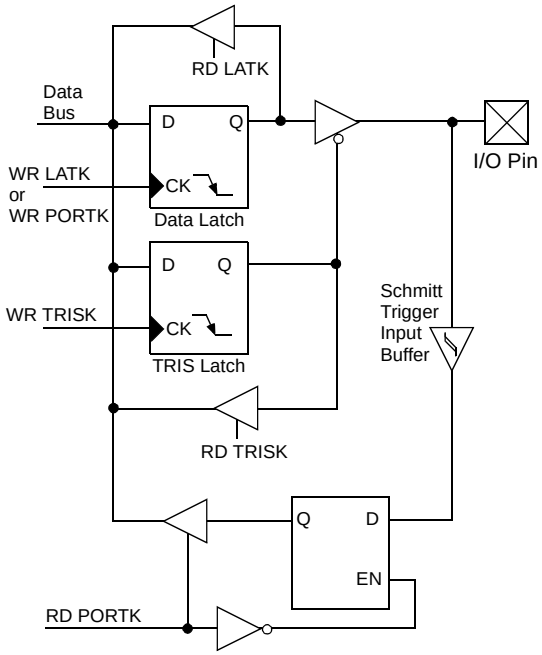
Read-modify-write operations on the LATK register read and write the latched output value for PORTK.

PORTK is an 8-bit port with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Each pin is individually configurable as an input or output.

EXAMPLE 8-10: INITIALIZING PORTK

```
CLRF    PORTK     ; Initialize PORTK by
                  ; clearing output
                  ; data latches
CLRF    LATK      ; Alternate method
                  ; to clear output
                  ; data latches
MOVLW   0xCF      ; Value used to
                  ; initialize data
                  ; direction
MOVWF   TRISK     ; Set RK3:RK0 as inputs
                  ; RK5:RK4 as outputs
                  ; RK7:RK6 as inputs
```

FIGURE 8-19: PORTK BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

TABLE 8-19: PORTK FUNCTIONS

Name	Bit#	Buffer Type	Function
RK0	bit0	ST	Input/output port pin.
RK1	bit1	ST	Input/output port pin.
RK2	bit2	ST	Input/output port pin.
RK3	bit3	ST	Input/output port pin.
RK4	bit4	ST	Input/output port pin.
RK5	bit5	ST	Input/output port pin.
RK6	bit6	ST	Input/output port pin.
RK7	bit7	ST	Input/output port pin.

Legend: ST = Schmitt Trigger input

TABLE 8-20: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTK

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on: POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TRISK	PORTK Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTK	Read PORTK pin / Write PORTK Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATK	Read PORTK Data Latch/Write PORTK Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

9.0 PARALLEL SLAVE PORT

The Parallel Slave Port is an 8-bit parallel interface for transferring data between the PIC18CXX8 device and an external device.

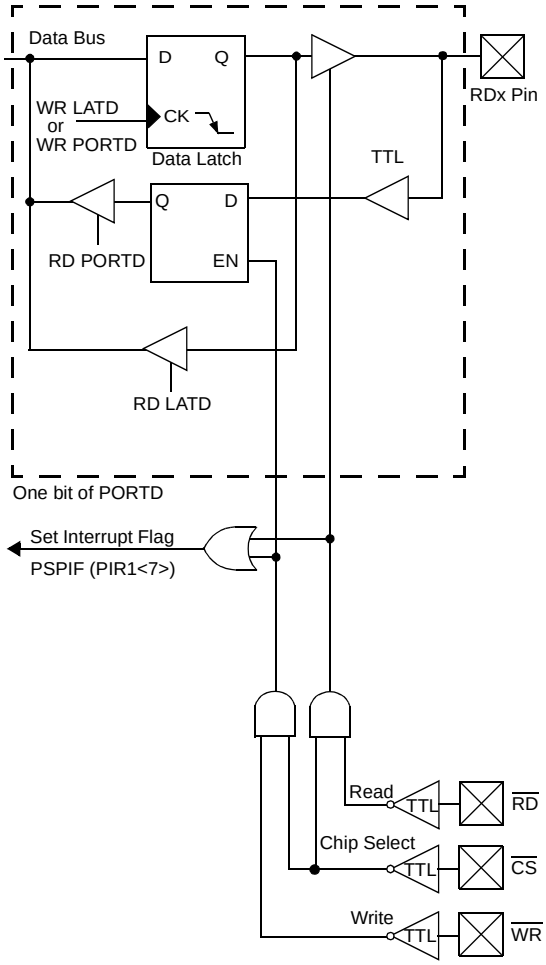
PORTD operates as an 8-bit wide Parallel Slave Port, or microprocessor port when control bit PSPMODE (PSPCON register) is set. In Slave mode, it is asynchronously readable and writable by the external world through $\overline{RD}$ control input pin RE0/$\overline{RD}$ and $\overline{WR}$ control input pin RE1/$\overline{WR}$.

It can directly interface to an 8-bit microprocessor data bus. The external microprocessor can read or write the PORTD latch as an 8-bit latch. Setting bit PSPMODE enables port pin RE0/$\overline{RD}$ to be the $\overline{RD}$ input, RE1/$\overline{WR}$ to be the $\overline{WR}$ input and RE2/$\overline{CS}$ to be the $\overline{CS}$ (chip select) input. For this functionality, the corresponding data direction bits of the TRISE register (TRISE<2:0>) must be configured as inputs (set).

A write to the PSP occurs when both the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{WR}$ lines are first detected low. A read from the PSP occurs when both the $\overline{CS}$ and $\overline{RD}$ lines are first detected low.

The PORTE I/O pins become control inputs for the microprocessor port when bit PSPMODE (PSPCON Register) is set. In this mode, the user must make sure that the TRISE<2:0> bits are set (pins are configured as digital inputs). In this mode, the input buffers are TTL.

FIGURE 9-1: PORTD AND PORTE BLOCK DIAGRAM (PARALLEL SLAVE PORT)



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

REGISTER 9-1: PSPCON REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
IBF	OBF	IBOV	PSPMODE	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IBF:** Input Buffer Full Status bit
1 = A word has been received and waiting to be read by the CPU
0 = No word has been received

bit 6 **OBF**: Output Buffer Full Status bit
1 = The output buffer still holds a previously written word
0 = The output buffer has been read

bit 5 **IBOV**: Input Buffer Overflow Detect bit (in Microprocessor mode)
1 = A write occurred when a previously input word has not been read (must be cleared in software)
0 = No overflow occurred

bit 4 **PSPMODE**: Parallel Slave Port Mode Select bit
1 = Parallel Slave Port mode
0 = General purpose I/O mode

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented**: Read as ’0’

Legend			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 9-2: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT WRITE WAVEFORMS

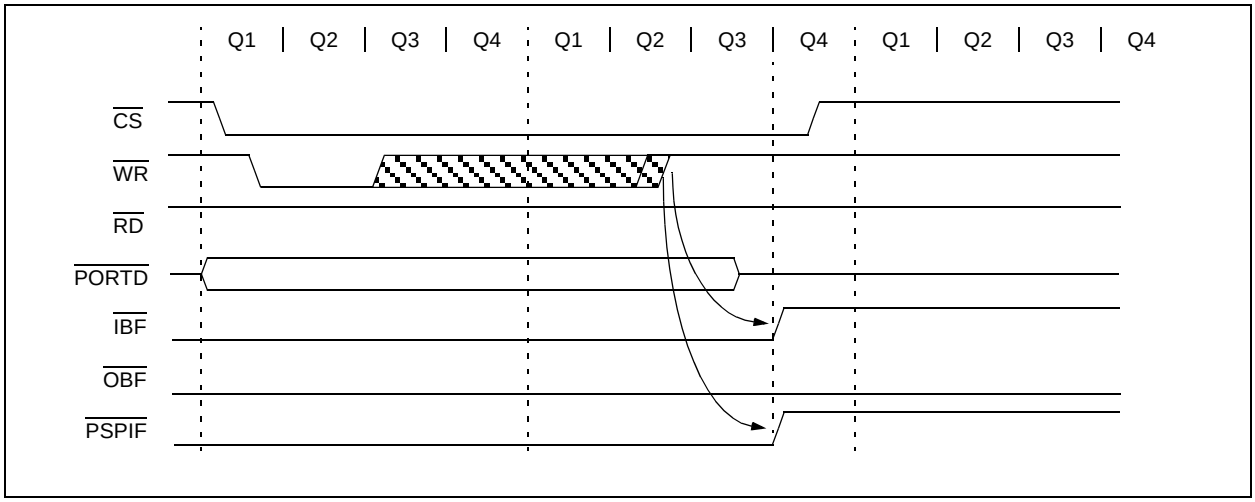


FIGURE 9-3: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT READ WAVEFORMS

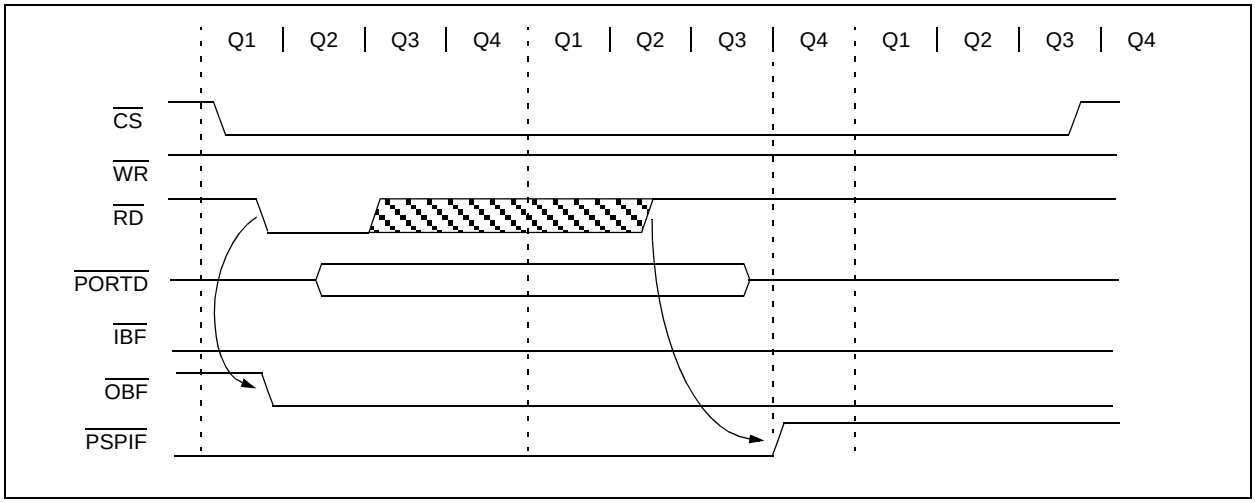


TABLE 9-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PARALLEL SLAVE PORT

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
PORTD	Port data latch when written; port pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
LATD	LATD Data Output Bits								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISD	PORTD Data Direction Bits								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTE	RE7	RE6	RE5	RE4	RE3	RE2	RE1	RE0	0000 0000	0000 0000
LATE	LATE Data Output Bits								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISE	PORTE Data Direction Bits								1111 1111	1111 1111
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used by the Parallel Slave Port.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

10.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module has the following features:

- Software selectable as an 8-bit or 16-bit timer/counter
- Readable and writable
- Dedicated 8-bit software programmable prescaler
- Clock source selectable to be external or internal
- Interrupt on overflow from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode and FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode
- Edge select for external clock

Register 10-1 shows the Timer0 Control register (T0CON).

Figure 10-1 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 8-bit mode and Figure 10-1 shows a simplified block diagram of the Timer0 module in 16-bit mode.

The T0CON register is a readable and writable register that controls all the aspects of Timer0, including the prescale selection.

Note:	Timer0 is enabled on POR.

REGISTER 10-1: T0CON REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **TMR0ON:** Timer0 On/Off Control bit
`1` = Enables Timer0
`0` = Stops Timer0

bit 6 **T08BIT**: Timer0 8-bit/16-bit Control bit
`1` = Timer0 is configured as an 8-bit timer/counter
`0` = Timer0 is configured as a 16-bit timer/counter

bit 5 **T0CS**: Timer0 Clock Source Select bit
`1` = Transition on T0CKI pin
`0` = Internal instruction cycle clock (CLKOUT)

bit 4 **T0SE**: Timer0 Source Edge Select bit
`1` = Increment on high-to-low transition on T0CKI pin
`0` = Increment on low-to-high transition on T0CKI pin

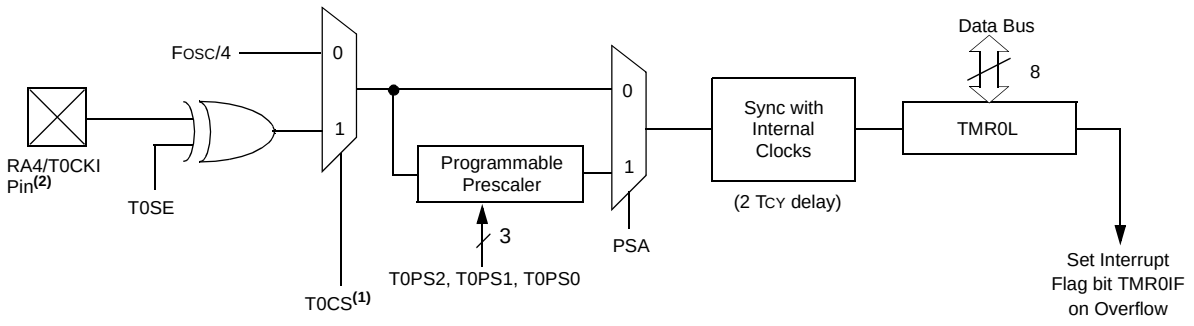
bit 3 **PSA**: Timer0 Prescaler Assignment bit
`1` = TImer0 prescaler is NOT assigned. Timer0 clock input bypasses prescaler.
`0` = Timer0 prescaler is assigned. Timer0 clock input comes from prescaler output.

bit 2-0 **T0PS2:T0PS0**: Timer0 Prescaler Select bits

`111` = 1:256 prescale value
`110` = 1:128 prescale value
`101` = 1:64 prescale value
`100` = 1:32 prescale value
`011` = 1:16 prescale value
`010` = 1:8 prescale value
`001` = 1:4 prescale value
`000` = 1:2 prescale value

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

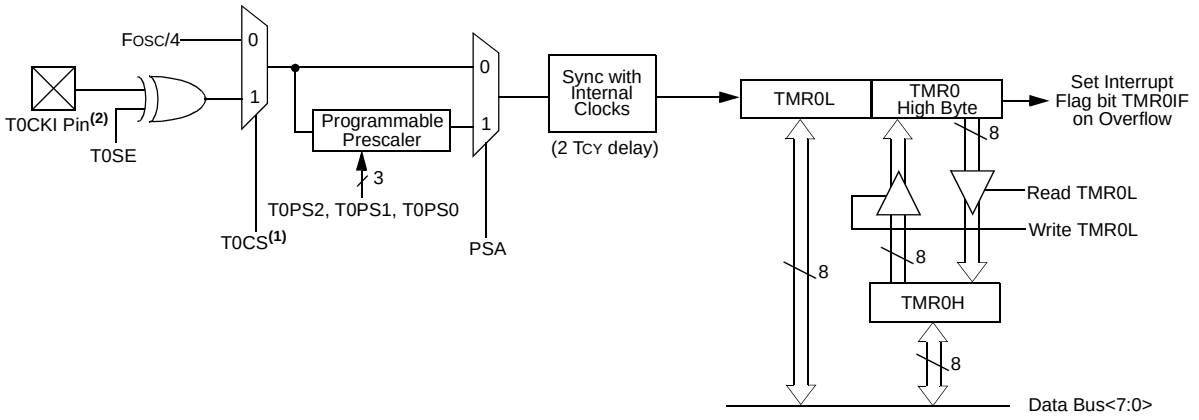
FIGURE 10-1: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 8-BIT MODE



Note 1: Upon RESET, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI max. prescale.

2: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 10-2: TIMER0 BLOCK DIAGRAM IN 16-BIT MODE



Note 1: Upon RESET, Timer0 is enabled in 8-bit mode with clock input from T0CKI max. prescale.

2: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

10.1 Timer0 Operation

Timer0 can operate as a timer or as a counter.

Timer mode is selected by clearing the T0CS bit. In Timer mode, the Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle (without prescaler). If the TMR0L register is written, the increment is inhibited for the following two instruction cycles. The user can work around this by writing an adjusted value to the TMR0L register.

Counter mode is selected by setting the T0CS bit. In Counter mode, Timer0 will increment either on every rising or falling edge of pin RA4/T0CKI. The incrementing edge is determined by the Timer0 Source Edge Select bit (T0SE). Clearing the T0SE bit selects the rising edge. Restrictions on the external clock input are discussed below.

When an external clock input is used for Timer0, it must meet certain requirements. The requirements ensure the external clock can be synchronized with the internal phase clock (TOSC). Also, there is a delay in the actual incrementing of Timer0 after synchronization.

10.2 Prescaler

An 8-bit counter is available as a prescaler for the Timer0 module. The prescaler is not readable or writable.

The PSA and T0PS2:T0PS0 bits determine the prescaler assignment and prescale ratio.

Clearing bit PSA will assign the prescaler to the Timer0 module. When the prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module, prescale values of 1:2, 1:4, ..., 1:256 are selectable.

When assigned to the Timer0 module, all instructions writing to the TMR0 register (e.g. `CLRF TMR0`, `MOVWF TMR0`, `BSF TMR0, x`.... etc.) will clear the prescaler count.

Note:	Writing to TMR0 when the prescaler is assigned to Timer0, will clear the prescaler count but will not change the prescaler assignment.

10.2.1 SWITCHING PRESCALER ASSIGNMENT

The prescaler assignment is fully under software control (i.e., it can be changed “on-the-fly” during program execution).

10.3 Timer0 Interrupt

The TMR0 interrupt is generated when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h in 8-bit mode or FFFFh to 0000h in 16-bit mode. This overflow sets the TMR0IF bit. The interrupt can be masked by clearing the TMR0IE bit. The TMR0IF bit must be cleared in software by the Timer0 module interrupt service routine before re-enabling this interrupt. The TMR0 interrupt cannot awaken the processor from SLEEP, since the timer is shut off during SLEEP.

10.4 16-Bit Mode Timer Reads and Writes

Timer0 can be set in 16-bit mode by clearing T0CON T08BIT. Registers TMR0H and TMR0L are used to access 16-bit timer value.

TMR0H is not the high byte of the timer/counter in 16-bit mode, but is actually a buffered version of the high byte of Timer0 (refer to Figure 10-1). The high byte of the Timer0 counter/timer is not directly readable nor writable. TMR0H is updated with the contents of the high byte of Timer0 during a read of TMR0L. This provides the ability to read all 16-bits of Timer0 without having to verify that the read of the high and low byte were valid due to a rollover between successive reads of the high and low byte.

A write to the high byte of Timer0 must also take place through the TMR0H buffer register. Timer0 high byte is updated with the contents of buffered value of TMR0H, when a write occurs to TMR0L. This allows all 16 bits of Timer0 to be updated at once.

TABLE 10-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TMR0L	Timer0 Module's Low Byte Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR0H	Timer0 Module's High Byte Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
T0CON	TMR0ON	T08BIT	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	T0PS2	T0PS1	T0PS0	1111 1111	1111 1111
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register(1)							--11 1111	--11 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Timer0.

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read as '0'.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

11.0 TIMER1 MODULE

The Timer1 module timer/counter has the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter
  (Two 8-bit registers: TMR1H and TMR1L)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt on overflow from FFFFh to 0000h
- RESET from CCP module special event trigger

Register 11-1 shows the Timer1 control register. This register controls the operating mode of the Timer1 module as well as contains the Timer1 oscillator enable bit (T1OSCEN). Timer1 can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing control bit TMR1ON (T1CON register).

Figure 11-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer1 module.

Note:	Timer1 is disabled on POR.

REGISTER 11-1: T1CON REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RD16:** 16-bit Read/Write Mode Enable bit

1 = Enables register Read/Write of TImer1 in one 16-bit operation
0 = Enables register Read/Write of Timer1 in two 8-bit operations

bit 6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **T1CKPS1:T1CKPS0**: Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits

11 = 1:8 Prescale value
10 = 1:4 Prescale value
01 = 1:2 Prescale value
00 = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 3 **T1OSCEN:** Timer1 Oscillator Enable bit

1 = Timer1 Oscillator is enabled
0 = Timer1 Oscillator is shut off
The oscillator inverter and feedback resistor are turned off to eliminate power drain.

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Select bit

When TMR1CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input

When TMR1CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock when TMR1CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR1CS:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bit

1 = External clock from pin RC0/T1OSO/T13CKI (on the rising edge)
0 = Internal clock (FOSC/4)

bit 0 **TMR1ON:** Timer1 On bit

1 = Enables Timer1
0 = Stops Timer1

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

11.1 Timer1 Operation

Timer1 can operate in one of these modes:

- As a timer
- As a synchronous counter
- As an asynchronous counter

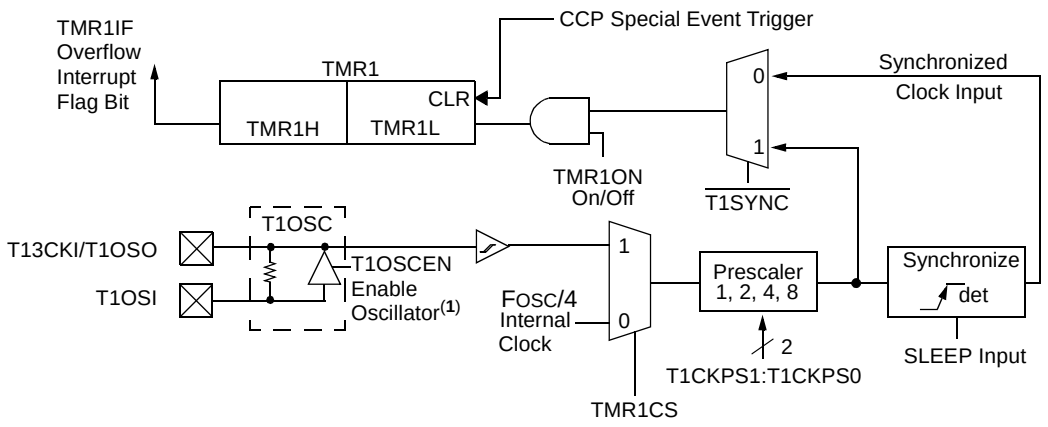
The operating mode is determined by the clock select bit, TMR1CS (T1CON register).

When TMR1CS is clear, Timer1 increments every instruction cycle. When TMR1CS is set, Timer1 increments on every rising edge of the external clock input or the Timer1 oscillator, if enabled.

When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the RC1/T1OSI and RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI pins become inputs. That is, the TRISC<1:0> value is ignored.

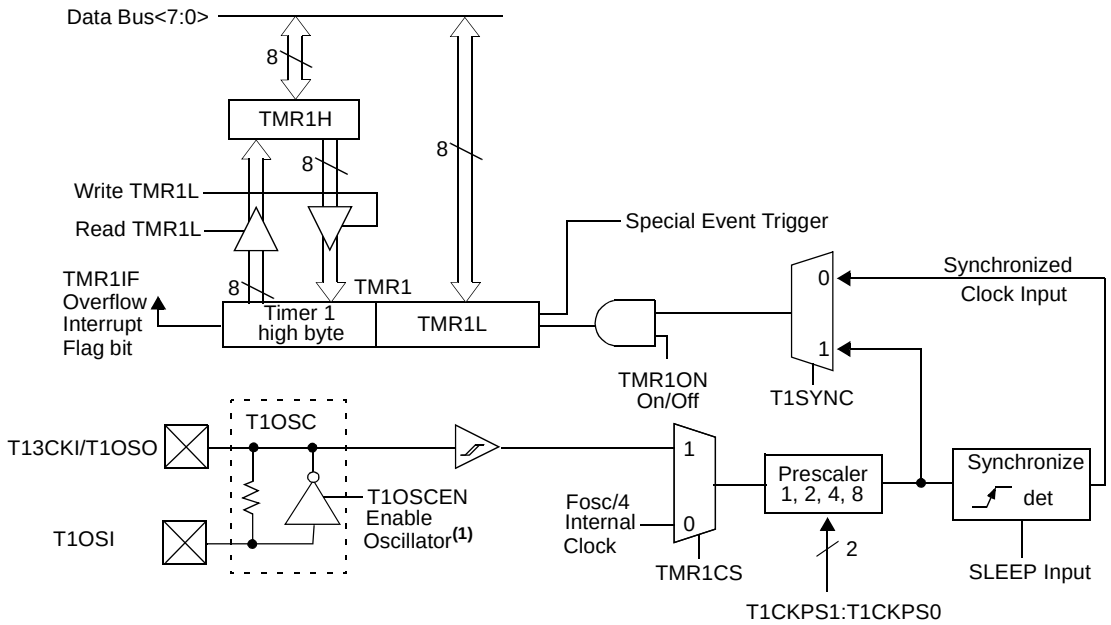
Timer1 also has an internal “RESET input”. This RESET can be generated by the CCP module (Section 14.0).

FIGURE 11-1: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This reduces power drain.

FIGURE 11-2: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM: 16-BIT READ/WRITE MODE



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This reduces power drain.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

11.2 Timer1 Oscillator

A crystal oscillator circuit is built-in between pins T1OSI (input) and T1OSO (amplifier output). It is enabled by setting control bit T1OSCEN (T1CON register). The oscillator is a low power oscillator rated up to 200 kHz. It will continue to run during SLEEP. It is primarily intended for a 32 kHz crystal. Table 11-1 shows the capacitor selection for the Timer1 oscillator.

The user must provide a software time delay to ensure proper start-up of the Timer1 oscillator.

TABLE 11-1: CAPACITOR SELECTION FOR THE ALTERNATE OSCILLATOR

Osc Type	Freq	C1	C2
LP	32 kHz	TBD(1)	TBD(1)

Crystal to be Tested:		
32.768 kHz	Epson C-001R32.768K-A	± 20 PPM

Note 1: Microchip suggests 33 pF as a starting point in validating the oscillator circuit.
2: Higher capacitance increases the stability of the oscillator, but also increases the start-up time.
3: Since each resonator/crystal has its own characteristics, the user should consult the resonator/crystal manufacturer for appropriate values of external components.
4: Capacitor values are for design guidance only.

PRELIMINARY

11.3 Timer1 Interrupt

The TMR1 Register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The TMR1 Interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow, which is latched in interrupt flag bit TMR1IF (PIR registers). This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing TMR1 interrupt enable bit TMR1IE (PIE registers).

11.4 Resetting Timer1 using a CCP Trigger Output

If the CCP module is configured in Compare mode to generate a “special event trigger" (CCP1M3:CCP1M0 = `1011`), this signal will reset Timer1 and start an A/D conversion (if the A/D module is enabled).

Note: The special event triggers from the CCP1 module will not set interrupt flag bit TMR1IF (PIR registers).

Timer1 must be configured for either timer or Synchronized Counter mode to take advantage of this feature. If Timer1 is running in Asynchronous Counter mode, this RESET operation may not work.

In the event that a write to Timer1 coincides with a special event trigger from CCP1, the write will take precedence.

In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L registers pair, effectively becomes the period register for Timer1.

11.5 Timer1 16-Bit Read/Write Mode

Timer1 can be configured for 16-bit reads and writes (see Figure 11-2). When the RD16 control bit (T1CON register) is set, the address for TMR1H is mapped to a buffer register for the high byte of Timer1. A read from TMR1L will load the contents of the high byte of Timer1 into the Timer1 high byte buffer. This provides the user with the ability to accurately read all 16 bits of Timer1, without having to determine whether a read of the high byte followed by a read of the low byte is valid, due to a rollover between reads.

A write to the high byte of Timer1 must also take place through the TMR1H buffer register. Timer1 high byte is updated with the contents of TMR1H when a write occurs to TMR1L. This allows a user to write all 16 bits to both the high and low bytes of Timer1 at once.

The high byte of Timer1 is not directly readable or writable in this mode. All reads and writes must take place through the Timer1 high byte buffer register. Writes to TMR1H do not clear the Timer1 prescaler. The prescaler is only cleared on writes to TMR1L.

TABLE 11-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TMR1L	Holding register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	Holding register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

12.0 TIMER2 MODULE

The Timer2 module timer has the following features:

- 8-bit timer (TMR2 register)
- 8-bit period register (PR2)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Software programmable prescaler (1:1, 1:4, 1:16)
- Software programmable postscaler (1:1 to 1:16)
- Interrupt on TMR2 match of PR2
- SSP module optional use of TMR2 output to generate clock shift

Register 12-1 shows the Timer2 Control register. Timer2 can be shut off by clearing control bit TMR2ON (T2CON register) to minimize power consumption. Figure 12-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer2 module. The prescaler and postscaler selection of Timer2 are controlled by this register.

12.1 Timer2 Operation

Timer2 can be used as the PWM time-base for the PWM mode of the CCP module. The TMR2 register is readable and writable, and is cleared on any device RESET. The input clock (FOSC/4) has a prescale option of 1:1, 1:4 or 1:16, selected by control bits T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0 (T2CON Register). The match output of TMR2 goes through a 4-bit postscaler (which gives a 1:1 to 1:16 scaling inclusive) to generate a TMR2 interrupt (latched in flag bit TMR2IF, PIR registers).

The prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared when any of the following occurs:

- A write to the TMR2 register
- A write to the T2CON register
- Any device RESET (Power-on Reset, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset, Watchdog Timer Reset, or Brown-out Reset)

TMR2 is not cleared when T2CON is written.

Note:	Timer2 is disabled on POR.

REGISTER 12-1: T2CON REGISTER

U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6-3 **TOUTPS3:TOUTPS0**: Timer2 Output Postscale Select bits

`0000` = 1:1 Postscale
`0001` = 1:2 Postscale
•
•
•
`1111` = 1:16 Postscale

bit 2 **TMR2ON**: Timer2 On bit

`1` = Timer2 is on
`0` = Timer2 is off

bit 1-0 **T2CKPS1:T2CKPS0**: Timer2 Clock Prescale Select bits

`00` = Prescaler is 1
`01` = Prescaler is 4
`1x` = Prescaler is 16

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

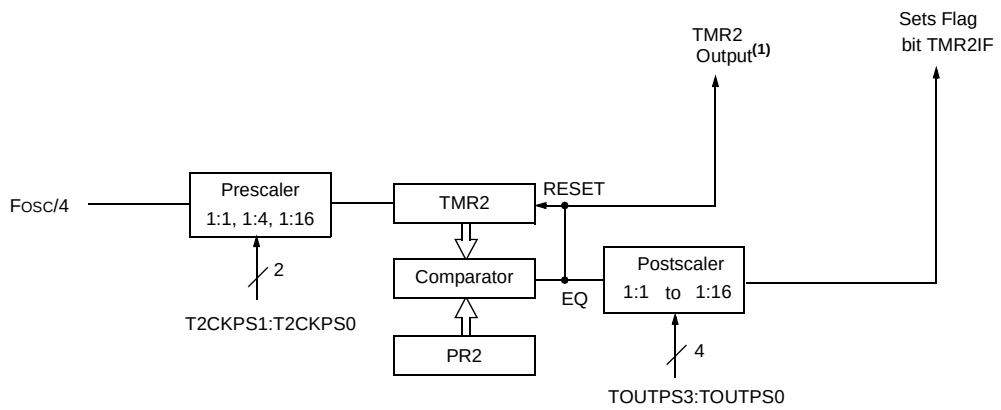
12.2 Timer2 Interrupt

The Timer2 module has an 8-bit period register PR2. Timer2 increments from 00h until it matches PR2 and then resets to 00h on the next increment cycle. PR2 is a readable and writable register. The PR2 register is initialized to FFh upon RESET.

12.3 Output of TMR2

The output of TMR2 (before the postscaler) is a clock input to the Synchronous Serial Port module, which optionally uses it to generate the shift clock.

FIGURE 12-1: TIMER2 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: TMR2 register output can be software selected by the SSP Module as a baud clock.

TABLE 12-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER2 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TMR2	Timer2 module's register								0000 0000	0000 0000
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
PR2	Timer2 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer2 module.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.0 TIMER3 MODULE

The Timer3 module timer/counter has the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter
  (Two 8-bit registers: TMR3H and TMR3L)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Internal or external clock select
- Interrupt on overflow from FFFFh to 0000h
- RESET from CCP module trigger

Figure 13-1 is a simplified block diagram of the Timer3 module.

Register 13-1 shows the Timer3 Control Register. This register controls the operating mode of the Timer3 module and sets the CCP clock source.

Register 11-1 shows the Timer1 Control register. This register controls the operating mode of the Timer1 module, as well as contains the Timer1 oscillator enable bit (T1OSCEN), which can be a clock source for Timer3.

Note:	Timer3 is disabled on POR.

REGISTER 13-1: T3CON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RD16:** 16-bit Read/Write Mode Enable
1 = Enables register Read/Write of Timer3 in one 16-bit operation
0 = Enables register Read/Write of Timer3 in two 8-bit operations

bit 6,3 **T3CCP2:T3CCP1:** Timer3 and Timer1 to CCPx Enable bits
1x = Timer3 is the clock source for compare/capture CCP modules
01 = Timer3 is the clock source for compare/capture of CCP2,
Timer1 is the clock source for compare/capture of CCP1
00 = Timer1 is the clock source for compare/capture CCP modules

bit 5-4 **T3CKPS1:T3CKPS0**: Timer3 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
11 = 1:8 Prescale value
10 = 1:4 Prescale value
01 = 1:2 Prescale value
00 = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$:** Timer3 External Clock Input Synchronization Control bit
(Not usable if the system clock comes from Timer1/Timer3)

When TMR3CS = 1:
1 = Do not synchronize external clock input
0 = Synchronize external clock input

When TMR3CS = 0:
This bit is ignored. Timer3 uses the internal clock when TMR3CS = 0.

bit 1 **TMR3CS:** Timer3 Clock Source Select bit
1 = External clock input from Timer1 oscillator or T1CKI (on the rising edge after the first falling edge)
0 = Internal clock (Fosc/4)

bit 0 **TMR3ON:** Timer3 On bit
1 = Enables Timer3
0 = Stops Timer3

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

13.1 Timer3 Operation

Timer3 can operate in one of these modes:

- As a timer
- As a synchronous counter
- As an asynchronous counter

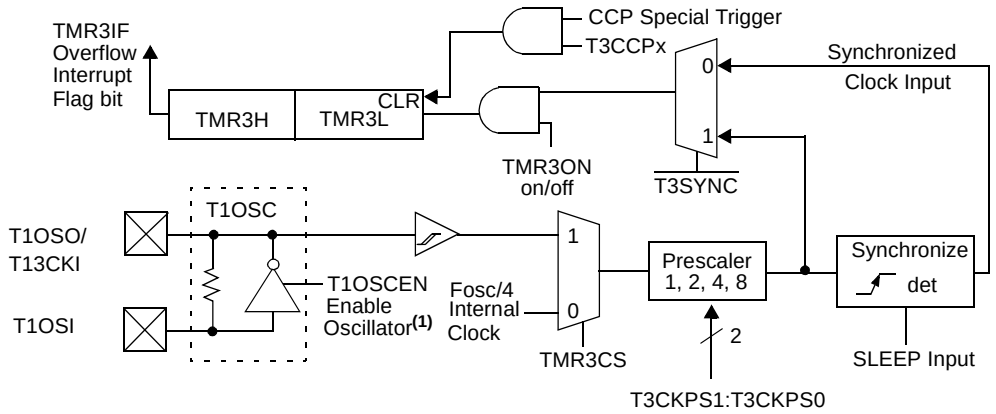
The operating mode is determined by the clock select bit, TMR3CS (T3CON register).

When TMR3CS = 0, Timer3 increments every instruction cycle. When TMR3CS = 1, Timer3 increments on every rising edge of the Timer1 external clock input or the Timer1 oscillator, if enabled.

When the Timer1 oscillator is enabled (T1OSCEN is set), the RC1/T1OSI and RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI pins become inputs. That is, the TRISC<1:0> value is ignored.

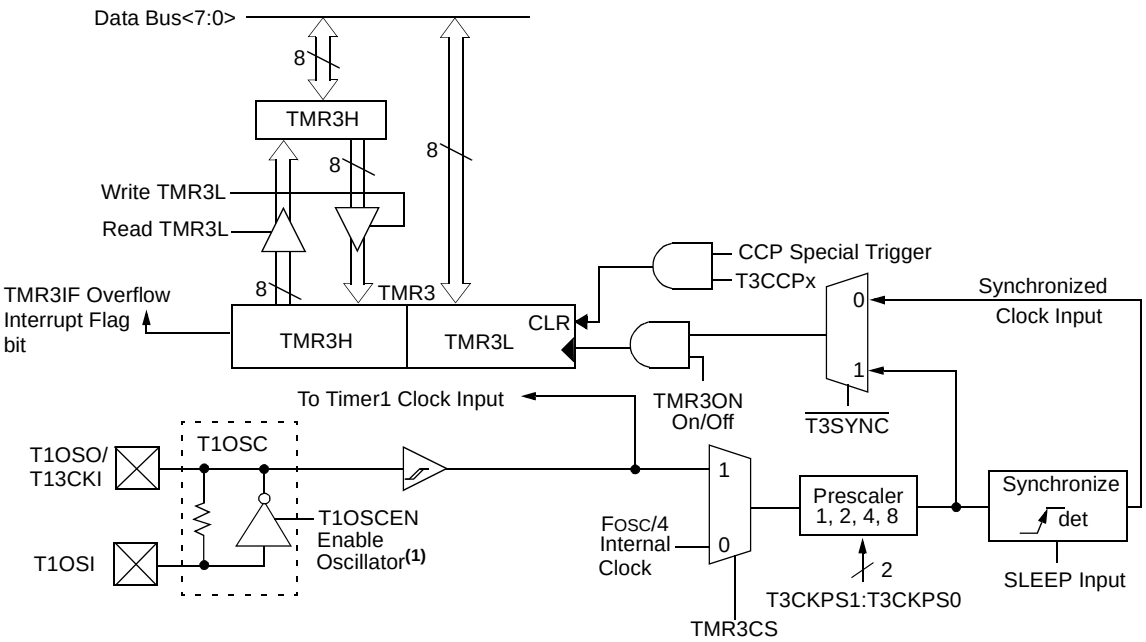
Timer3 also has an internal “RESET input”. This RESET can be generated by the CCP module (Section 13.0).

FIGURE 13-1: TIMER3 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: When enable bit T1OSCEN is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

FIGURE 13-2: TIMER3 BLOCK DIAGRAM CONFIGURED IN 16-BIT READ/WRITE MODE



Note 1: When the T1OSCEN bit is cleared, the inverter and feedback resistor are turned off. This eliminates power drain.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

13.2 Timer1 Oscillator

The Timer1 oscillator may be used as the clock source for Timer3. The Timer1 oscillator is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN bit (T1CON Register). The oscillator is a low power oscillator rated up to 200 kHz. Refer to “Timer1 Module”, Section 11.0 for Timer1 oscillator details.

13.3 Timer3 Interrupt

The TMR3 Register pair (TMR3H:TMR3L) increments from 0000h to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. The TMR3 Interrupt, if enabled, is generated on overflow which is latched in interrupt flag bit TMR3IF (PIR Registers). This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing TMR3 interrupt enable bit TMR3IE (PIE Registers).

13.4 Resetting Timer3 Using a CCP Trigger Output

If the CCP module is configured in Compare mode to generate a “special event trigger" (CCP1M3:CCP1M0 = `1011`), this signal will reset Timer3.

Note:	The special event triggers from the CCP module will not set interrupt flag bit TMR3IF (PIR registers).

Timer3 must be configured for either timer or Synchronized Counter mode to take advantage of this feature. If Timer3 is running in Asynchronous Counter mode, this RESET operation may not work. In the event that a write to Timer3 coincides with a special event trigger from CCP1, the write will take precedence. In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L registers pair becomes the period register for Timer3. Refer to “Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) Modules”, Section 14.0 for CCP details.

TABLE 13-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER3 AS A TIMER/COUNTER

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	`0000 000x`	`0000 000u`
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	`-0-- 0000`	`-0-- 0000`
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	`-0-- 0000`	`-0-- 0000`
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	`-0-- 0000`	`-0-- 0000`
TMR3L	Holding register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 register								`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`
TMR3H	Holding register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 register								`xxxx xxxx`	`uuuu uuuu`
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	`0-00 0000`	`u-uu uuuu`
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	`0000 0000`	`uuuu uuuu`

Legend: `x` = unknown, `u` = unchanged, `-` = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.0 CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM (CCP) MODULES

Each CCP (Capture/Compare/PWM) module contains a 16-bit register that can operate as a 16-bit capture register, as a 16-bit compare register, or as a PWM Duty Cycle register. Table 14-1 shows the timer resources of the CCP module modes.

The operation of CCP1 is identical to that of CCP2, with the exception of the special event trigger and the CAN message timestamp received. (Refer to “CAN Module”, Section 17.0 for CAN operation.) Therefore, operation of a CCP module in the following sections is described with respect to CCP1.

Table 14-2 shows the interaction of the CCP modules.

Register 14-1 shows the CCPx Control registers (CCPxCON). For the CCP1 module, the register is called CCP1CON and for the CCP2 module, the register is called CCP2CON.

REGISTER 14-1: CCP1CON REGISTER
CCP2CON REGISTER

	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0
	bit 7							bit 0
	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0
	bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **DCxB1:DCxB0**: PWM Duty Cycle bit1 and bit0

Capture Mode:
Unused

Compare Mode:
Unused

PWM Mode:
These bits are the two LSbs (bit1 and bit0) of the 10-bit PWM duty cycle. The upper eight bits (DCx9:DCx2) of the duty cycle are found in CCPRxL.

bit 3-0 **CCPxM3:CCPxM0**: CCPx Mode Select bits

`0000` = Capture/Compare/PWM off (resets CCPx module)
`0001` = Reserved
`0010` = Compare mode, toggle output on match (CCPxIF bit is set)
`0011` = Capture mode, CAN message received (CCP1 only)
`0100` = Capture mode, every falling edge
`0101` = Capture mode, every rising edge
`0110` = Capture mode, every 4th rising edge
`0111` = Capture mode, every 16th rising edge
`1000` = Compare mode,
Initialize CCP pin Low, on compare match force CCP pin High (CCPIF bit is set)
`1001` = Compare mode,
Initialize CCP pin High, on compare match force CCP pin Low (CCPIF bit is set)
`1010` = Compare mode,
Generate software interrupt on compare match
(CCPIF bit is set, CCP pin is unaffected)
`1011` = Compare mode,
Trigger special event (CCPIF bit is set, reset TMR1 or TMR3)
`11xx` = PWM mode

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

14.1 CCP1 Module

Capture/Compare/PWM Register1 (CCPR1) is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPR1L (low byte) and CCPR1H (high byte). The CCP1CON register controls the operation of CCP1. All are readable and writable.

14.2 CCP2 Module

Capture/Compare/PWM Register2 (CCPR2) is comprised of two 8-bit registers: CCPR2L (low byte) and CCPR2H (high byte). The CCP2CON register controls the operation of CCP2. All are readable and writable.

TABLE 14-1: CCP MODE - TIMER RESOURCE

CCP Mode	Timer Resource
Capture	Timer1 or Timer3
Compare	Timer1 or Timer3
PWM	Timer2

14.3 Capture Mode

In Capture mode, CCPR1H:CCPR1L captures the 16-bit value of the TMR1 or TMR3 registers when an event occurs on pin RC2/CCP1. An event is defined as:

- every falling edge
- every rising edge
- every 4th rising edge
- every 16th rising edge

An event is selected by control bits CCP1M3:CCP1M0 (CCP1CON<3:0>). When a capture is made, the interrupt request flag bit CCP1IF (PIR registers) is set. It must be cleared in software. If another capture occurs before the value in register CCPR1 is read, the old captured value will be lost.

14.3.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

In Capture mode, the RC2/CCP1 pin should be configured as an input by setting the TRISC<2> bit.

Note: If the RC2/CCP1 is configured as an output, a write to the port can cause a capture condition.

14.3.2 TIMER1/TIMER3 MODE SELECTION

The timers used with the capture feature (either Timer1 and/or Timer3) must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the capture operation may not work. The timer used with each CCP module is selected in the T3CON register.

TABLE 14-2: INTERACTION OF TWO CCP MODULES

CCPx Mode	CCPy Mode	Interaction
Capture	Capture	TMR1 or TMR3 time-base. Time-base can be different for each CCP.
Capture	Compare	The compare could be configured for the special event trigger, which clears either TMR1 or TMR3, depending upon which time-base is used.
Compare	Compare	The compare(s) could be configured for the special event trigger, which clears TMR1 or TMR3 depending upon which time-base is used.
PWM	PWM	The PWMs will have the same frequency and update rate (TMR2 interrupt).
PWM	Capture	None
PWM	Compare	None

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.3.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT

When the Capture mode is changed, a false capture interrupt may be generated. The user should keep bit CCP1IE (PIE registers) clear to avoid false interrupts and should clear the flag bit CCP1IF, following any such change in operating mode.

14.3.4 CCP PRESCALER

There are four prescaler settings, specified by bits CCP1M3:CCP1M0. Whenever the CCP module is turned off, or the CCP module is not in Capture mode, the prescaler counter is cleared. This means that any RESET will clear the prescaler counter.

Switching from one capture prescaler to another may generate an interrupt. Also, the prescaler counter will not be cleared; therefore, the first capture may be from a non-zero prescaler. Example 14-1 shows the recommended method for switching between capture prescalers. This example also clears the prescaler counter and will not generate the “false” interrupt.

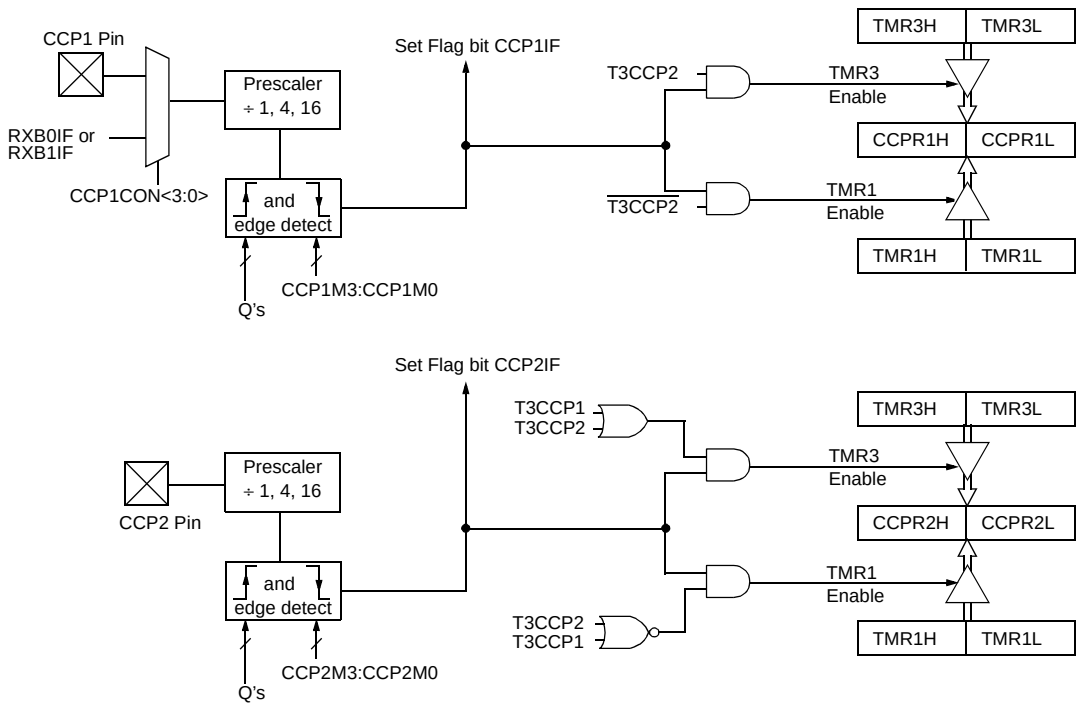
14.3.5 CAN MESSAGE RECEIVED

The CAN capture event occurs when a message is received in either receive buffer. The CAN module provides a rising edge to the CCP module to cause a capture event. This feature is provided to time-stamp the received CAN messages.

EXAMPLE 14-1: CHANGING BETWEEN CAPTURE PRESCALERS

```
CLRF   CCP1CON, F  ; Turn CCP module off
MOVLW  NEW_CAPT_PS ; Load WREG with the
                   ; new prescaler mode
                   ; value and CCP ON
MOVWF  CCP1CON     ; Load CCP1CON with
                   ; this value
```

FIGURE 14-1: CAPTURE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

14.4 Compare Mode

In Compare mode, the 16-bit CCPR1 (CCPR2) register value is constantly compared against either the TMR1 register pair value, or the TMR3 register pair value. When a match occurs, the RC2/CCP1 (RC1/CCP2) pin can have one of the following actions:

- Driven high
- Driven low
- Toggle output (high to low or low to high)
- Remains unchanged

The action on the pin is based on the value of control bits CCP1M3:CCP1M0 (CCP2M3:CCP2M0). At the same time, interrupt flag bit CCP1IF (CCP2IF) is set.

14.4.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

The user must configure the CCPx pin as an output by clearing the appropriate TRISC bit.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the RC2/CCP1 compare output latch to the default low level. This is not the data latch.

14.4.2 TIMER1/TIMER3 MODE SELECTION

Timer1 and/or Timer3 must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode, if the CCP module is using the compare feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the compare operation may not work.

14.4.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When Generate Software Interrupt is chosen, the CCP1 pin is not affected. Only a CCP Interrupt is generated (if enabled).

14.4.4 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

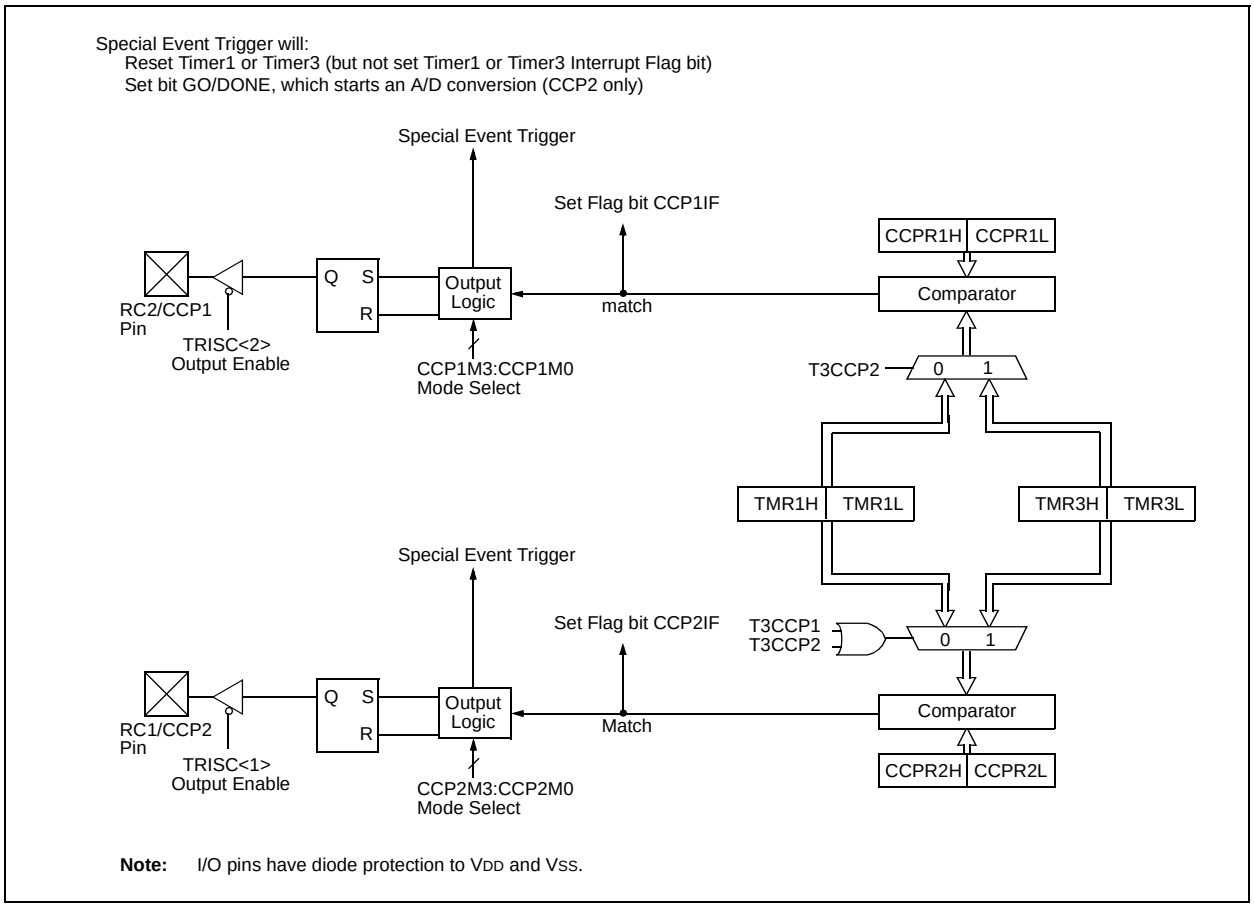
In this mode, an internal hardware trigger is generated, which may be used to initiate an action.

The special event trigger output of CCP1 resets the TMR1 register pair. This allows the CCPR1 register to effectively be a 16-bit programmable period register for Timer1.

The special trigger output of CCPx resets either the TMR1 or TMR3 register pair. Additionally, the CCP2 Special Event Trigger will start an A/D conversion if the A/D module is enabled.

Note:	The special event trigger from the CCP2 module will not set the Timer1 or Timer3 interrupt flag bits.

FIGURE 14-2: COMPARE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 14-3: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPTURE, COMPARE, TIMER1 AND TIMER3

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
TMR1L	Holding register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR1H	Holding register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T1CON	RD16	—	T1CKPS1	T1CKPS0	T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	TMR1CS	TMR1ON	0-00 0000	u-uu uuuu
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM register1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM register1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM register2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM register2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
TMR3L	Holding register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TMR3H	Holding register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR3 register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
T3CON	RD16	T3CCP2	T3CKPS1	T3CKPS0	T3CCP1	$\overline{\text{T3SYNC}}$	TMR3CS	TMR3ON	0000 0000	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Capture and Timer1.

14.5 PWM Mode

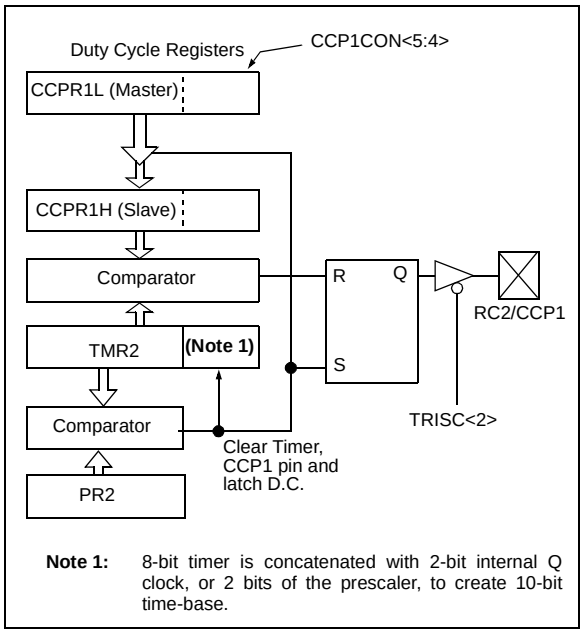
In Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) mode, the CCP1 pin produces up to a 10-bit resolution PWM output. Since the CCP1 pin is multiplexed with the PORTC data latch, the TRISC<2> bit must be cleared to make the CCP1 pin an output.

Note:	Clearing the CCP1CON register will force the CCP1 PWM output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORTC I/O data latch.

Figure 14-3 shows a simplified block diagram of the CCP module in PWM mode.

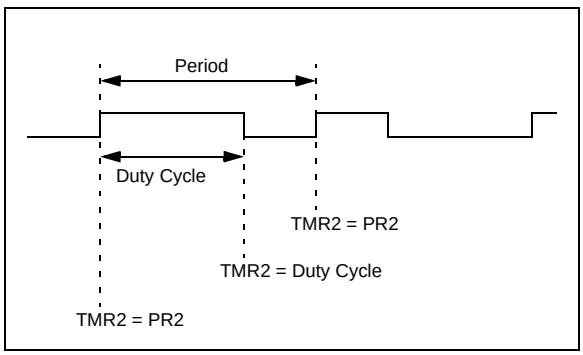
For a step-by-step procedure on how to set up the CCP module for PWM operation, see Section 14.5.3.

FIGURE 14-3: SIMPLIFIED PWM BLOCK DIAGRAM



A PWM output (Figure 14-4) has a time-base (period) and a time that the output stays high (duty cycle). The frequency of the PWM is the inverse of the period (1/period).

FIGURE 14-4: PWM OUTPUT



14.5.1 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by writing to the PR2 register. The PWM period can be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{PWM period} = [(PR2) + 1] \cdot 4 \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 prescale value})$$

PWM frequency is defined as 1 / [PWM period].

When TMR2 is equal to PR2, the following three events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMR2 is cleared
- The CCP1 pin is set (exception: if PWM duty cycle = 0%, the CCP1 pin will not be set)
- The PWM duty cycle is latched from CCPR1L into CCPR1H

Note:	The Timer2 postscaler (see Section 12.0) is not used in the determination of the PWM frequency. The postscaler could be used to have a servo update rate at a different frequency than the PWM output.

14.5.2 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing to the CCPR1L register and to the CCP1CON<5:4> bits. Up to 10-bit resolution is available. The CCPR1L contains the eight MSbs and the CCP1CON<5:4> contains the two LSbs. This 10-bit value is represented by CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>. The following equation is used to calculate the PWM duty cycle in time:

$$\text{PWM duty cycle} = (\text{CCPR1L:CCP1CON<5:4>}) \cdot T_{OSC} \cdot (\text{TMR2 prescale value})$$

CCPR1L and CCP1CON<5:4> can be written to at any time, but the duty cycle value is not latched into CCPR1H until after a match between PR2 and TMR2 occurs (i.e., the period is complete). In PWM mode, CCPR1H is a read-only register.

The CCPR1H register and a 2-bit internal latch are used to double buffer the PWM duty cycle. This double buffering is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

When the CCPR1H and 2-bit latch match TMR2, concatenated with an internal 2-bit Q clock or 2 bits of the TMR2 prescaler, the CCP1 pin is cleared.

Maximum PWM resolution (bits) for a given PWM frequency:

$$= \frac{\log\left(\frac{F_{OSC}}{F_{PWM}}\right)}{\log(2)} \text{bits}$$

Note:	If the PWM duty cycle value is longer than the PWM period, the CCP1 pin will not be cleared.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

14.5.3 SETUP FOR PWM OPERATION

The following steps should be taken when configuring the CCP module for PWM operation:

1. Set the PWM period by writing to the PR2 register.
2. Set the PWM duty cycle by writing to the CCPR1L register and CCP1CON<5:4> bits.
3. Make the CCP1 pin an output by clearing the TRISC<2> bit.
4. Set the TMR2 prescale value and enable Timer2 by writing to T2CON.
5. Configure the CCP1 module for PWM operation.

TABLE 14-4: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS AT 40 MHz

PWM Frequency	2.44 kHz	9.76 kHz	39.06 kHz	156.3 kHz	312.5 kHz	416.6 kHz
Timer Prescaler (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PR2 Value	0xFF	0xFF	0xFF	0x3F	0x1F	0x17
Maximum Resolution (bits)	10	10	10	8	7	5.5

TABLE 14-5: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PWM AND TIMER2

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
TMR2	Timer2 module's register								0000 0000	0000 0000
PR2	Timer2 module's period register								1111 1111	1111 1111
T2CON	—	TOUTPS3	TOUTPS2	TOUTPS1	TOUTPS0	TMR2ON	T2CKPS1	T2CKPS0	-000 0000	-000 0000
CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM register1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM register1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP1CON	—	—	DC1B1	DC1B0	CCP1M3	CCP1M2	CCP1M1	CCP1M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM register2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM register2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
CCP2CON	—	—	DC2B1	DC2B0	CCP2M3	CCP2M2	CCP2M1	CCP2M0	--00 0000	--00 0000
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PWM and Timer2.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.0 MASTER SYNCHRONOUS SERIAL PORT (MSSP) MODULE

15.1 Master SSP (MSSP) Module Overview

The Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP) module is a serial interface useful for communicating with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be Serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D converters, etc. The MSSP module can operate in one of two modes:

- Serial Peripheral Interface™ (SPI)
- Inter-Integrated Circuit (I^2C)
  - Full Master mode
  - Slave mode (with general address call)

The I^2C interface supports the following modes in hardware:

- Master mode
- Multi-master mode
- Slave mode

15.2 Control Registers

The MSSP module has three associated registers. These include a status register and two control registers.

Register 15-1 shows the MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT), Register 15-2 shows the MSSP Control Register 1 (SSPCON1), and Register 15-3 shows the MSSP Control Register 2 (SSPCON2).

REGISTER 15-1: SSPSTAT REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SMP:** Sample bit

SPI Master mode

1 = Input data sampled at end of data output time
0 = Input data sampled at middle of data output time

SPI Slave mode

SMP must be cleared when SPI is used in Slave mode

In I^2C Master or Slave mode:

1= Slew rate control disabled for standard speed mode (100 kHz and 1 MHz)
0= Slew rate control enabled for high speed mode (400 kHz)

bit 6 **CKE:** SPI Clock Edge Select

CKP = 0

1 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK
0 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK

CKP = 1

1 = Data transmitted on falling edge of SCK
0 = Data transmitted on rising edge of SCK

bit 5 **D/$\overline{A}$:** Data/$\overline{\text{Address}}$ bit (I^2C mode only)

1 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was data
0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was address

bit 4 **P:** STOP bit
(I^2C mode only. This bit is cleared when the MSSP module is disabled, SSPEN is cleared.)

1 = Indicates that a STOP bit has been detected last (this bit is ’0’ on RESET)
0 = STOP bit was not detected last

bit 3 **S:** START bit
(I^2C mode only. This bit is cleared when the MSSP module is disabled, SSPEN is cleared.)

1 = Indicates that a START bit has been detected last (this bit is ’0’ on RESET)
0 = START bit was not detected last

bit 2 **R/$\overline{W}$:** Read/Write bit information (I^2C mode only)

This bit holds the R/W bit information following the last address match. This bit is only valid from the address match to the next START bit, STOP bit, or not $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit.

In I^2C Slave mode:

1 = Read
0 = Write

In I^2C Master mode:

1 = Transmit is in progress
0 = Transmit is not in progress

OR-ing this bit with SEN, RSEN, PEN, RCEN, or ACKEN will indicate if the MSSP is in IDLE mode.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address (10-bit I^2C mode only)

1 = Indicates that the user needs to update the address in the SSPADD register
0 = Address does not need to be updated

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit

Receive (SPI and I^2C modes)
1 = Receive complete, SSPBUF is full
0 = Receive not complete, SSPBUF is empty

Transmit (I^2C mode only)
1 = Data Transmit in progress (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and STOP bits), SSPBUF is full
0 = Data Transmit complete (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and STOP bits), SSPBUF is empty

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 15-2: SSPCON1 REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit

Master mode:
1 = A write to the SSPBUF register was attempted while the I^2C conditions were not valid for a transmission to be started
0 = No collision

Slave mode:
1 = The SSPBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software)
0 = No collision

bit 6 **SSPOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit

In SPI mode:

1 = A new byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous data. In case of overflow, the data in SSPSR is lost. Overflow can only occur in Slave mode. In Slave mode, the user must read the SSPBUF, even if only transmitting data, to avoid setting overflow. In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPBUF register. (Must be cleared in software.)
0 = No overflow

In I^2C mode:

1 = A byte is received while the SSPBUF register is still holding the previous byte. SSPOV is a "don't care" in Transmit mode. (Must be cleared in software.)
0 = No overflow

bit 5 **SSPEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit
In both modes, when enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output.

In SPI mode:
1 = Enables serial port and configures SCK, SDO, SDI, and $\overline{SS}$ as the source of the serial port pins
0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

In I^2C mode:
1 = Enables the serial port and configures the SDA and SCL pins as the source of the serial port pins
0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

bit 4 **CKP:** Clock Polarity Select bit

In SPI mode:
1 = Idle state for clock is a high level
0 = Idle state for clock is a low level

In I^2C Slave mode:
SCK release control
1 = Enable clock
0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch). (Used to ensure data setup time.)

In I^2C Master mode
Unused in this mode

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

bit 3 - 0 **SSPM3:SSPM0:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits

0000 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/4
0001 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/16
0010 = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/64
0011 = SPI Master mode, clock = TMR2 output/2
0100 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled.
0101 = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCK pin. $\overline{SS}$ pin control disabled. $\overline{SS}$ can be used as I/O pin.
0110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address
0111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address
1000 = I^2C Master mode, clock = FOSC / (4 * (SSPADD+1))
1001 = Reserved
1010 = Reserved
1011 = I^2C firmware controlled Master mode (Slave idle)
1100 = Reserved
1101 = Reserved
1110 = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled
1111 = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 15-3: SSPCON2 REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **GCEN:** General Call Enable bit (In I^2C Slave mode only)
1 = Enable interrupt when a general call address (0000h) is received in the SSPSR
0 = General call address disabled

bit 6 **ACKSTAT:** Acknowledge Status bit (In I^2C Master mode only)
In Master Transmit mode:
1 = Acknowledge was not received from slave
0 = Acknowledge was received from slave

bit 5 **ACKDT:** Acknowledge Data bit (In I^2C Master mode only)
In Master Receive mode:
Value transmitted when the user initiates an Acknowledge sequence at the end of a receive
1 = Not Acknowledge
0 = Acknowledge

bit 4 **ACKEN:** Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit (In I^2C Master mode only)
In Master Receive mode:
1 = Initiate Acknowledge sequence on SDA and SCL pins, and transmit ACKDT data bit. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Acknowledge sequence idle

bit 3 **RCEN:** Receive Enable bit (In I^2C Master mode only)
1 = Enables Receive mode for I^2C
0 = Receive idle

bit 2 **PEN:** STOP Condition Enable bit (In I^2C Master mode only)
SCK release control
1 = Initiate STOP condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = STOP condition idle

bit 1 **RSEN:** Repeated START Condition Enabled bit (In I^2C Master mode only)
1 = Initiate Repeated START condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Repeated START condition idle

bit 0 **SEN:** START Condition Enabled bit (In I^2C Master mode only)
1 = Initiate START condition on SDA and SCL pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = START condition idle

Note: For bits ACKEN, RCEN, PEN, RSEN, SEN: If the I^2C module is not in the IDLE mode, this bit may not be set (no spooling) and the SSPBUF may not be written (or writes to the SSPBUF are disabled).

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.3 SPI Mode

The SPI mode allows 8 bits of data to be synchronously transmitted and received, simultaneously. All four modes of SPI are supported. To accomplish communication, typically three pins are used:

- Serial Data Out (SDO) - RC5/SDO
- Serial Data In (SDI) - RC4/SDI/SDA
- Serial Clock (SCK) - RC3/SCK/SCL/LVOIN

Additionally, a fourth pin may be used when in any Slave mode of operation:

- Slave Select ($\overline{SS}$) - RA5/$\overline{SS}$/AN4

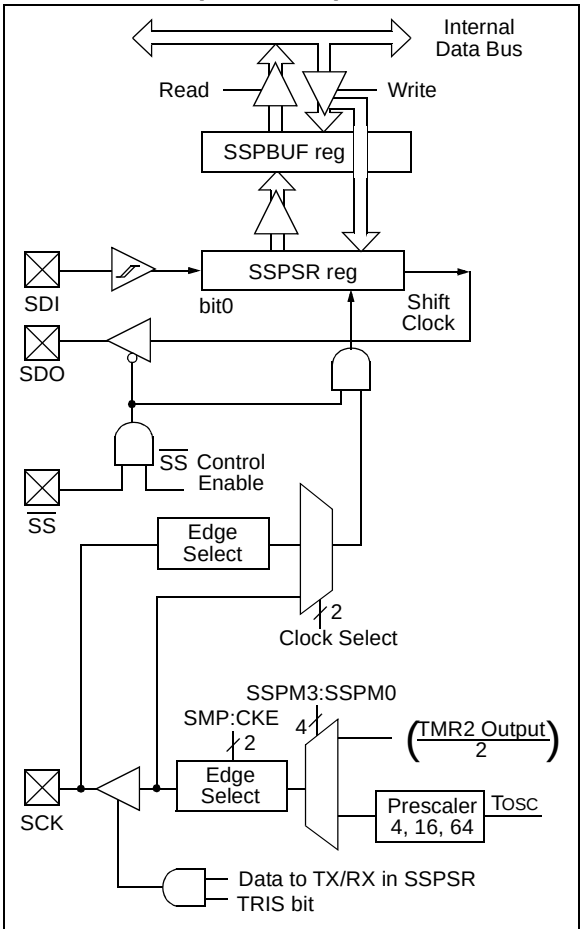
15.3.1 OPERATION

When initializing the SPI, several options need to be specified. This is done by programming the appropriate control bits SSPCON1<5:0> and SSPSTAT<7:6>. These control bits allow the following to be specified:

- Master mode (SCK is the clock output)
- Slave mode (SCK is the clock input)
- Clock polarity (Idle state of SCK)
- Data input sample phase (middle or end of data output time)
- Clock edge (output data on rising/falling edge of SCK)
- Clock rate (Master mode only)
- Slave Select mode (Slave mode only)

Figure 15-1 shows the block diagram of the MSSP module, when in SPI mode.

FIGURE 15-1: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (SPI MODE)



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

The MSSP consists of a transmit/receive Shift Register (SSPSR) and a buffer register (SSPBUF). The SSPSR shifts the data in and out of the device, MSb first. The SSPBUF holds the data that was written to the SSPSR, until the received data is ready. Once the 8 bits of data have been received, that byte is moved to the SSPBUF register. Then the buffer full detect bit, BF (SSPSTAT register), and the interrupt flag bit, SSPIF (PIR registers), are set. This double buffering of the received data (SSPBUF) allows the next byte to start reception before reading the data that was just received. Any write to the SSPBUF register during transmission/reception of data will be ignored, and the write collision detect bit, WCOL (SSPCON1 register), will be set. User software must clear the WCOL bit so that it can be determined if the following write(s) to the SSPBUF register completed successfully.

When the application software is expecting to receive valid data, the SSPBUF should be read before the next byte of data to transfer is written to the SSPBUF. The buffer full (BF) bit (SSPSTAT register) indicates when SSPBUF has been loaded with the received data (transmission is complete). When the SSPBUF is read, the BF bit is cleared. This data may be irrelevant if the SPI is only a transmitter. Generally, the MSSP Interrupt is used to determine when the transmission/reception has completed. The SSPBUF must be read and/or written. If the interrupt method is not going to be used, then software polling can be done to ensure that a write collision does not occur. Example 15-1 shows the loading of the SSPBUF (SSPSR) for data transmission.

The SSPSR is not directly readable or writable, and can only be accessed by addressing the SSPBUF register. Additionally, the MSSP status register (SSPSTAT register) indicates the various status conditions.

15.3.2 ENABLING SPI I/O

To enable the serial port, SSP Enable bit, SSPEN (SSPCON1 register), must be set. To reset or reconfigure SPI mode, clear the SSPEN bit, re-initialize the SSPCON registers, and then set the SSPEN bit. This configures the SDI, SDO, SCK, and $\overline{SS}$ pins as serial port pins. For the pins to behave as the serial port function, some must have their data direction bits (in the TRIS register) appropriately programmed. That is:

- SDI is automatically controlled by the SPI module
- SDO must have TRISC<5> bit cleared
- SCK (Master mode) must have TRISC<3> bit cleared
- SCK (Slave mode) must have TRISC<3> bit set
- $\overline{SS}$ must have TRISC<4> bit set

Any serial port function that is not desired may be overridden by programming the corresponding data direction (TRIS) register to the opposite value.

EXAMPLE 15-1: LOADING THE SSPBUF (SSPSR) REGISTER

```
LOOP BTFSS SSPSTAT, BF     ;Has data been received (transmit complete)?
     GOTO  LOOP            ;No
     MOVF  SSPBUF, W       ;WREG reg = contents of SSPBUF
     MOVWF RXDATA          ;Save in user RAM, if data is meaningful
     MOVF  TXDATA, W       ;W reg = contents of TXDATA
     MOVWF SSPBUF          ;New data to xmit
```

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.3.3 MASTER MODE

The master can initiate the data transfer at any time because it controls the SCK. The master determines when the slave is to broadcast data by the software protocol.

In Master mode, the data is transmitted/received as soon as the SSPBUF register is written to. If the SPI is only going to receive, the SDO output could be disabled (programmed as an input). The SSPSR register will continue to shift in the signal present on the SDI pin at the programmed clock rate. As each byte is received, it will be loaded into the SSPBUF register as a normal received byte (interrupts and status bits appropriately set). This could be useful in receiver applications as a “line activity monitor” mode.

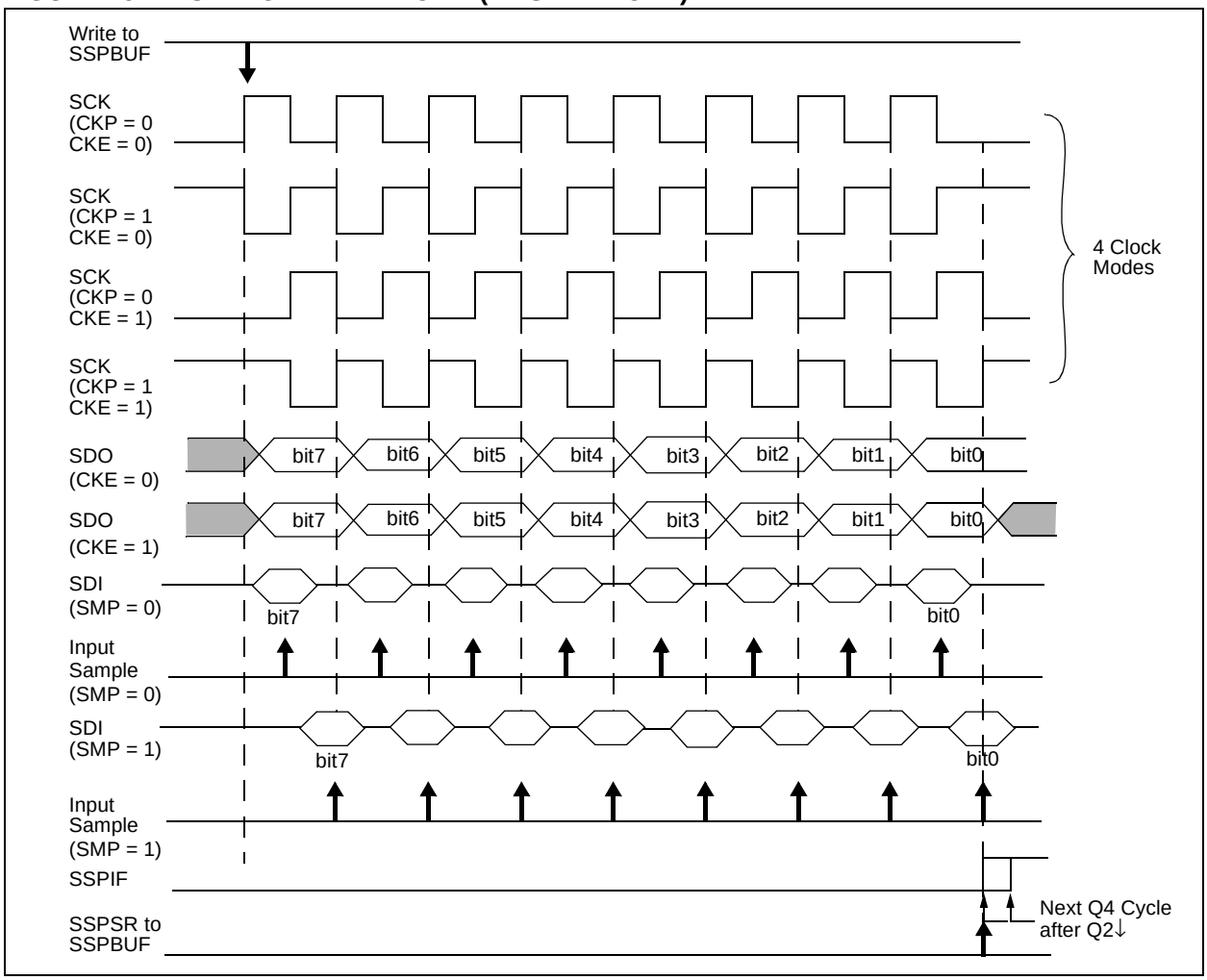
The clock polarity is selected by appropriately programming the CKP bit (SSPCON1 register). This, then, would give waveforms for SPI communication as shown in Figure 15-2, Figure 15-4, and Figure 15-5, where the MSb is transmitted first. In Master mode, the SPI clock rate (bit rate) is user programmable to be one of the following:

- FOSC/4 (or TCY)
- FOSC/16 (or 4 • TCY)
- FOSC/64 (or 16 • TCY)
- Timer2 output/2

This allows a maximum data rate (at 40 MHz) of 10.00 Mbps.

Figure 15-2 shows the waveforms for Master mode. When the CKE bit is set, the SDO data is valid before there is a clock edge on SCK. The change of the input sample is shown based on the state of the SMP bit. The time when the SSPBUF is loaded with the received data is shown.

FIGURE 15-2: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (MASTER MODE)



15.3.4 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the data is transmitted and received as the external clock pulses appear on SCK. When the last bit is latched, the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

While in Slave mode, the external clock is supplied by the external clock source on the SCK pin. This external clock must meet the minimum high and low times, as specified in the electrical specifications.

While in SLEEP mode, the slave can transmit/receive data. When a byte is received, the device will wake-up from SLEEP.

15.3.5 SLAVE SELECT SYNCHRONIZATION

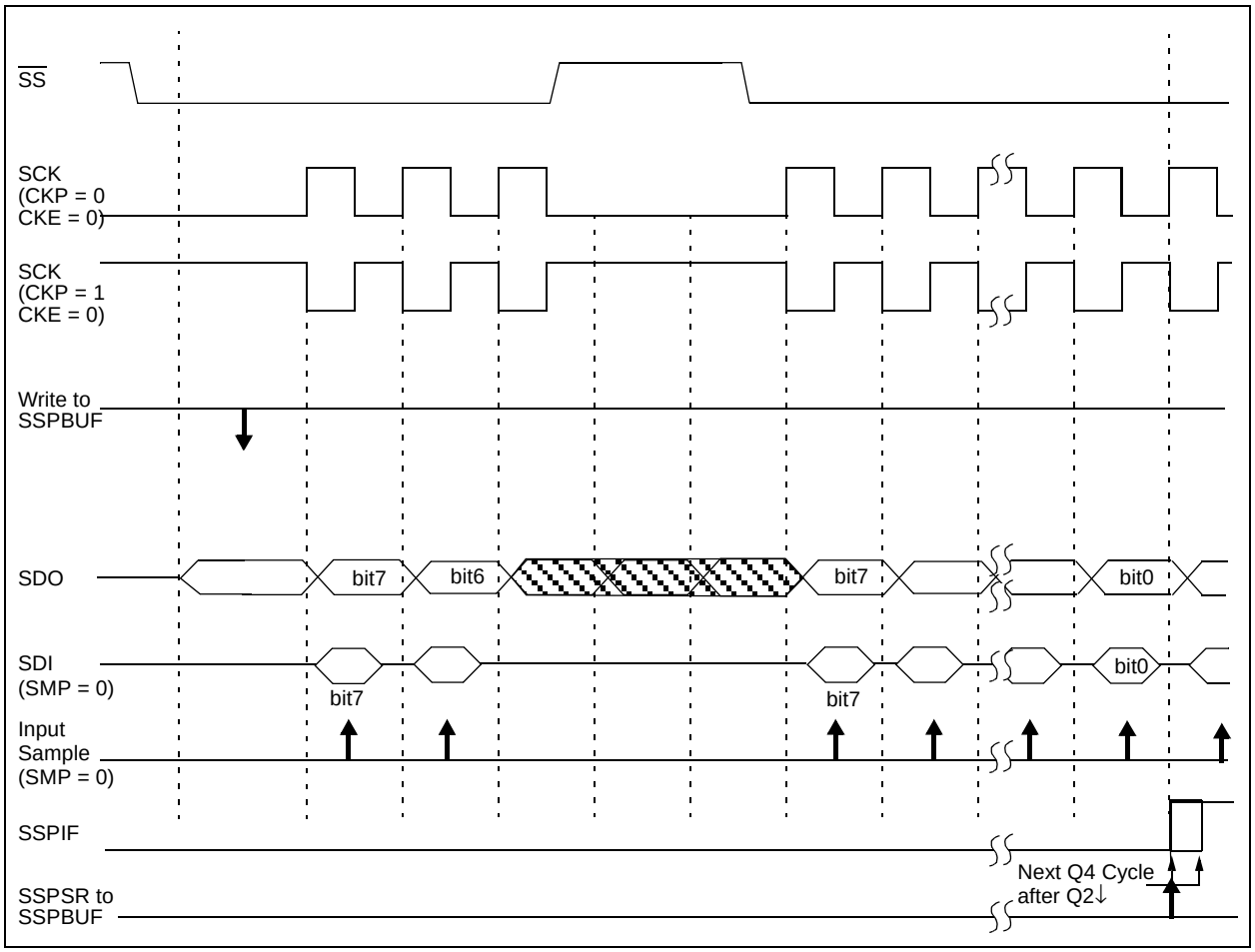
The $\overline{SS}$ pin allows a Synchronous Slave mode. The SPI must be in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled (SSPCON1<3:0> = 04h). The pin must not be driven low for the $\overline{SS}$ pin to function as an input. The Data Latch must be high. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin is low, transmission and reception are enabled and the SDO pin is driven. When the $\overline{SS}$ pin goes high, the SDO pin is no longer driven, even if in the middle of a transmitted byte, and becomes a floating output. External pull-up/pull-down resistors may be desirable, depending on the application.

> **Note 1:** When the SPI is in Slave mode with $\overline{SS}$ pin control enabled, (SSPCON<3:0> = `0100`) the SPI module will reset if the $\overline{SS}$ pin is set to VDD.
>
> **2:** If the SPI is used in Slave mode with CKE set, then the $\overline{SS}$ pin control must be enabled.

When the SPI module resets, the bit counter is forced to 0. This can be done by either forcing the $\overline{SS}$ pin to a high level, or clearing the SSPEN bit.

To emulate two-wire communication, the SDO pin can be connected to the SDI pin. When the SPI needs to operate as a receiver, the SDO pin can be configured as an input. This disables transmissions from the SDO. The SDI can always be left as an input (SDI function), since it cannot create a bus conflict.

FIGURE 15-3: SLAVE SYNCHRONIZATION WAVEFORM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-4: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 0)

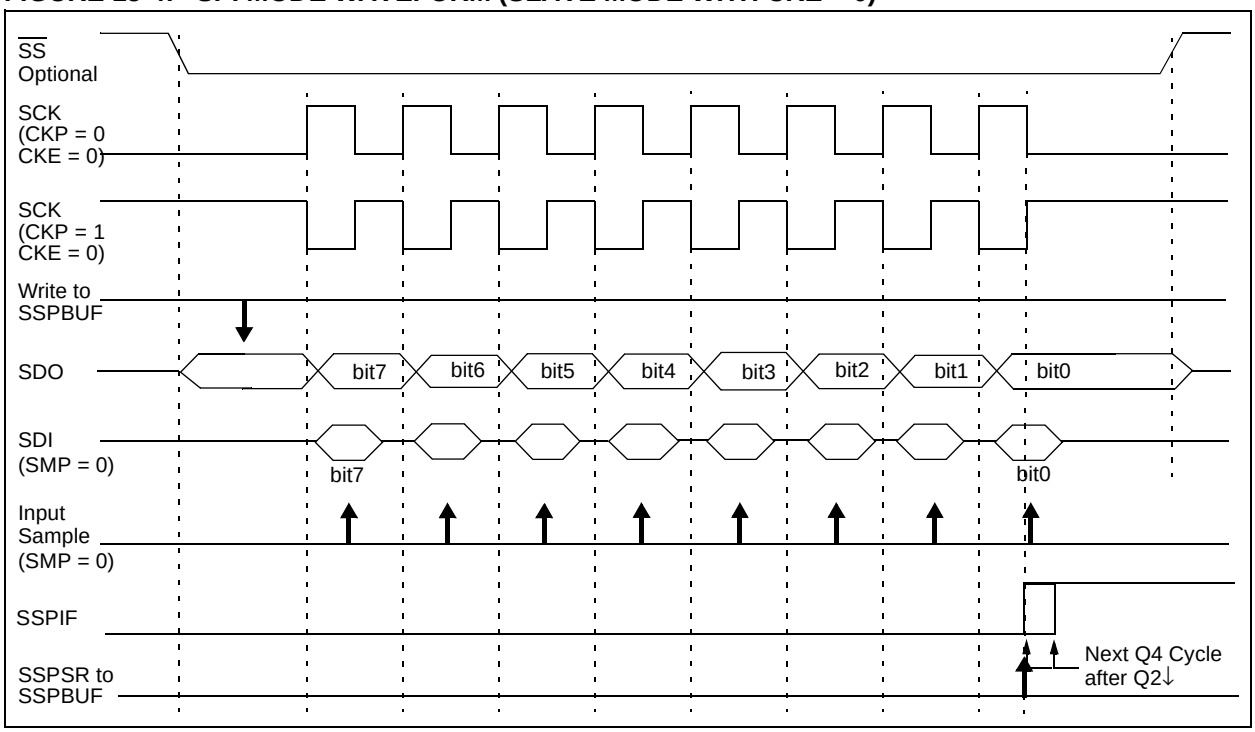
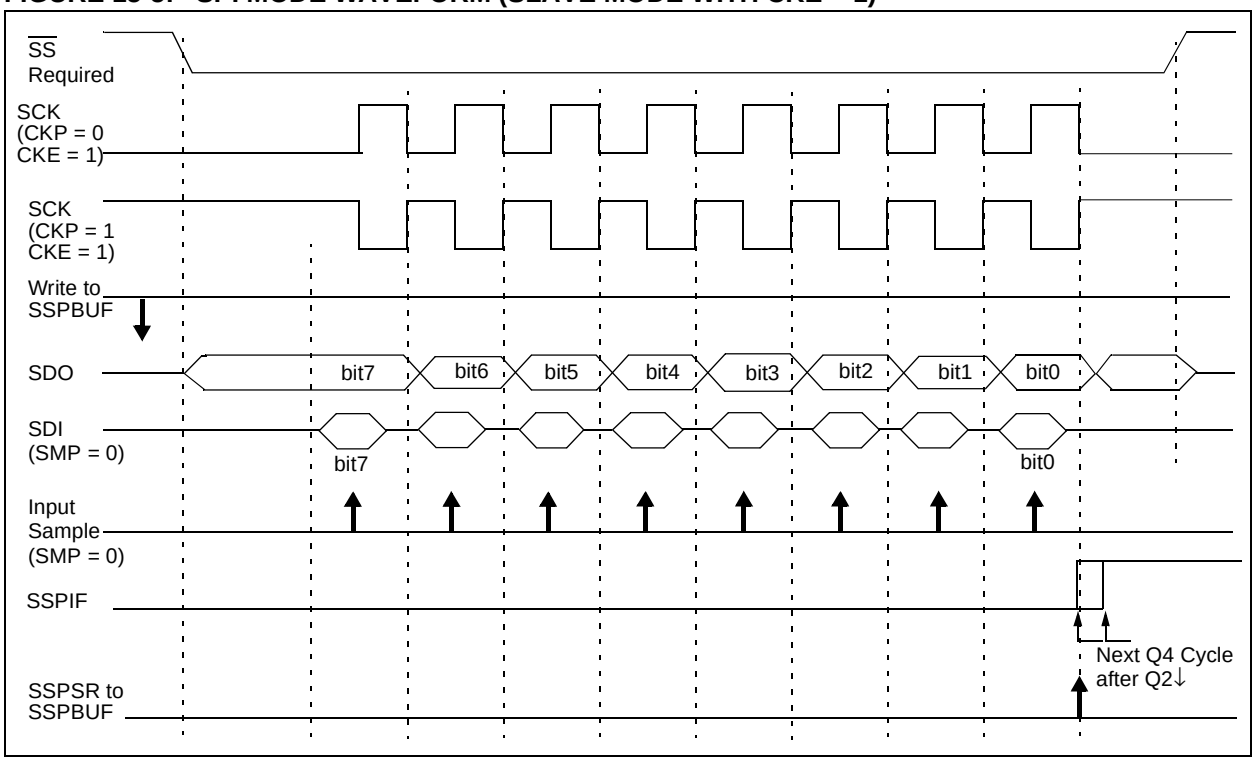


FIGURE 15-5: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 1)



15.3.6 SLEEP OPERATION

In Master mode, all module clocks are halted, and the transmission/reception will remain in that state until the device wakes from SLEEP. After the device returns to normal mode, the module will continue to transmit/receive data.

In Slave mode, the SPI transmit/receive shift register operates asynchronously to the device. This allows the device to be placed in SLEEP mode, and data to be shifted into the SPI transmit/receive shift register. When all eight bits have been received, the MSSP interrupt flag bit will be set and, if enabled, will wake the device from SLEEP.

15.3.7 EFFECTS OF A RESET

A RESET disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

15.3.8 BUS MODE COMPATIBILITY

Table 15-1 shows the compatibility between the standard SPI modes and the states of the CKP and CKE control bits.

TABLE 15-1: SPI BUS MODES

Standard SPI Mode Terminology	Control Bits State	
	CKP	CKE
0, 0	0	1
0, 1	0	0
1, 0	1	1
1, 1	1	0

There is also a SMP bit that controls when the data will be sampled.

TABLE 15-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SPI OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
SSPBUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
SSPCON	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM3	SSPM2	SSPM1	SSPM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register(1)							--11 1111	--11 1111
SSPSTAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used by the MSSP in SPI mode.

Note 1: Bit 6 of PORTA, LATA and TRISA are enabled in ECIO and RCIO oscillator modes only. In all other oscillator modes, they are disabled and read ‘0’.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

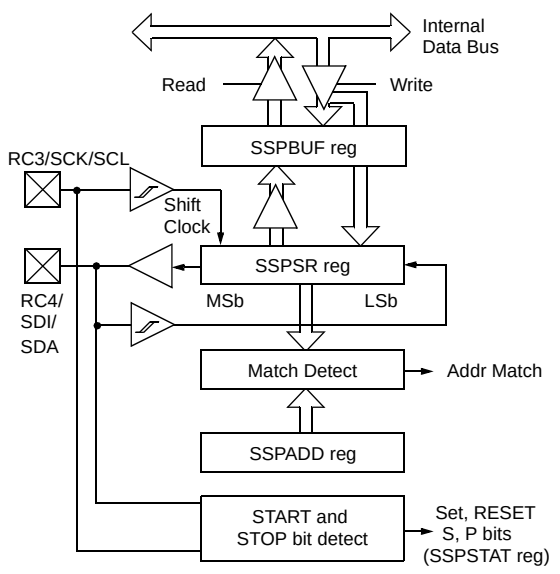
15.4 MSSP I²C Operation

The MSSP module in I²C mode, fully implements all master and slave functions (including general call support) and provides interrupts on START and STOP bits in hardware to determine a free bus (Multi-master mode). The MSSP module implements the standard mode specifications, as well as 7-bit and 10-bit addressing.

Two pins are used for data transfer. These are the RC3/SCK/SCL pin, which is the clock (SCL), and the RC4/SDI/SDA pin, which is the data (SDA). The user must configure these pins as inputs or outputs through the TRISC<4:3> bits.

The MSSP module functions are enabled by setting MSSP Enable bit SSPEN (SSPCON1 register).

FIGURE 15-6: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I²C MODE)



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

The MSSP module has these six registers for I²C operation:

- MSSP Control Register1 (SSPCON1)
- MSSP Control Register2 (SSPCON2)
- MSSP Status Register (SSPSTAT)
- Serial Receive/Transmit Buffer (SSPBUF)
- MSSP Shift Register (SSPSR) - Not directly accessible
- MSSP Address Register (SSPADD)

The SSPCON1 register allows control of the I²C operation. The SSPM3:SSPM0 mode selection bits (SSPCON1 register) allow one of the following I²C modes to be selected:

- I²C Master mode, clock = OSC/4 (SSPADD +1)
- I²C Slave mode (7-bit address)
- I²C Slave mode (10-bit address)
- I²C Slave mode (7-bit address), with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled
- I²C Slave mode (10-bit address), with START and STOP bit interrupts enabled
- I²C Firmware controlled master operation, slave is idle

Selection of any I²C mode with the SSPEN bit set, forces the SCL and SDA pins to be open drain, provided these pins are programmed to inputs by setting the appropriate TRISC bits.

15.4.1 SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the SCL and SDA pins must be configured as inputs (TRISC<4:3> set). The MSSP module will override the input state with the output data when required (slave-transmitter).

When an address is matched, or the data transfer after an address match is received, the hardware automatically will generate the acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse and load the SSPBUF register with the received value currently in the SSPSR register.

If either or both of the following conditions are true, the MSSP module will not give this $\overline{ACK}$ pulse:

a) The buffer full bit BF (SSPCON1 register) was set before the transfer was received.

b) The overflow bit SSPOV (SSPCON1 register) was set before the transfer was received.

In this event, the SSPSR register value is not loaded into the SSPBUF, but bit SSPIF (PIR registers) is set. The BF bit is cleared by reading the SSPBUF register, while bit SSPOV is cleared through software.

The SCL clock input must have a minimum high and low for proper operation. The high and low times of the I²C specification, as well as the requirement of the MSSP module, is shown in timing parameter #100 and parameter #101.

15.4.1.1 Addressing

Once the MSSP module has been enabled, it waits for a START condition to occur. Following the START condition, the eight bits are shifted into the SSPSR register. All incoming bits are sampled with the rising edge of the clock (SCL) line. The value of register SSPSR<7:1> is compared to the value of the SSPADD register. The address is compared on the falling edge of the eighth clock (SCL) pulse. If the addresses match, and the BF and SSPOV bits are clear, the following events occur:

a) The SSPSR register value is loaded into the SSPBUF register.
b) The buffer full bit BF is set.
c) An $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ pulse is generated.
d) MSSP interrupt flag bit SSPIF (PIR registers) is set on the falling edge of the ninth SCL pulse (interrupt is generated, if enabled).

In 10-bit address mode, two address bytes need to be received by the slave. The five Most Significant bits (MSb) of the first address byte specify if this is a 10-bit address. The R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit (SSPSTAT register) must specify a write so the slave device will receive the second address byte. For a 10-bit address, the first byte would equal `'1111 0 A9 A8 0'`, where `A9` and `A8` are the two MSb's of the address.

The sequence of events for 10-bit addressing is as follows, with steps 7- 9 for slave-transmitter:

1. Receive first (high) byte of address (the SSPIF, BF and UA bits (SSPSTAT register) are set).
2. Update the SSPADD register with second (low) byte of address (clears bit UA and releases the SCL line).
3. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
4. Receive second (low) byte of address (bits SSPIF, BF, and UA are set).
5. Update the SSPADD register with the first (high) byte of address. If match releases SCL line, this will clear bit UA.
6. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.
7. Receive repeated START condition.
8. Receive first (high) byte of address (bits SSPIF and BF are set).
9. Read the SSPBUF register (clears bit BF) and clear flag bit SSPIF.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.1.2 Reception

When the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the address byte is clear and an address match occurs, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is cleared. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register.

When the address byte overflow condition exists, then no acknowledge ($\overline{ACK}$) pulse is given. An overflow condition is defined as either bit BF (SSPSTAT register) is set or bit SSPOV (SSPCON1 register) is set.

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. Flag bit SSPIF (PIR registers) must be cleared in software. The SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte.

15.4.1.3 Transmission

When the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the incoming address byte is set and an address match occurs, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPSTAT register is set. The received address is loaded into the SSPBUF register. The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse will be sent on the ninth bit and pin RC3/SCK/SCL is held low. The transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Then pin RC3/SCK/SCL should be enabled by setting bit CKP (SSPCON1 register). The master must monitor the SCL pin prior to asserting another clock pulse. The slave devices may be holding off the master by stretching the clock. The eight data bits are shifted out on the falling edge of the SCL input. This ensures that the SDA signal is valid during the SCL high time (Figure 15-8).

An MSSP interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. The SSPIF bit must be cleared in software and the SSPSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte. The SSPIF bit is set on the falling edge of the ninth clock pulse.

As a slave-transmitter, the $\overline{ACK}$ pulse from the master-receiver is latched on the rising edge of the ninth SCL input pulse. If the SDA line is high (not $\overline{ACK}$), then the data transfer is complete. When the $\overline{ACK}$ is latched by the slave, the slave logic is reset (resets SSPSTAT register) and the slave monitors for another occurrence of the START bit. If the SDA line was low ($\overline{ACK}$), the transmit data must be loaded into the SSPBUF register, which also loads the SSPSR register. Pin RC3/SCK/SCL should be enabled by setting bit CKP.

FIGURE 15-7: I²C SLAVE MODE WAVEFORMS FOR RECEPTION (7-BIT ADDRESS)

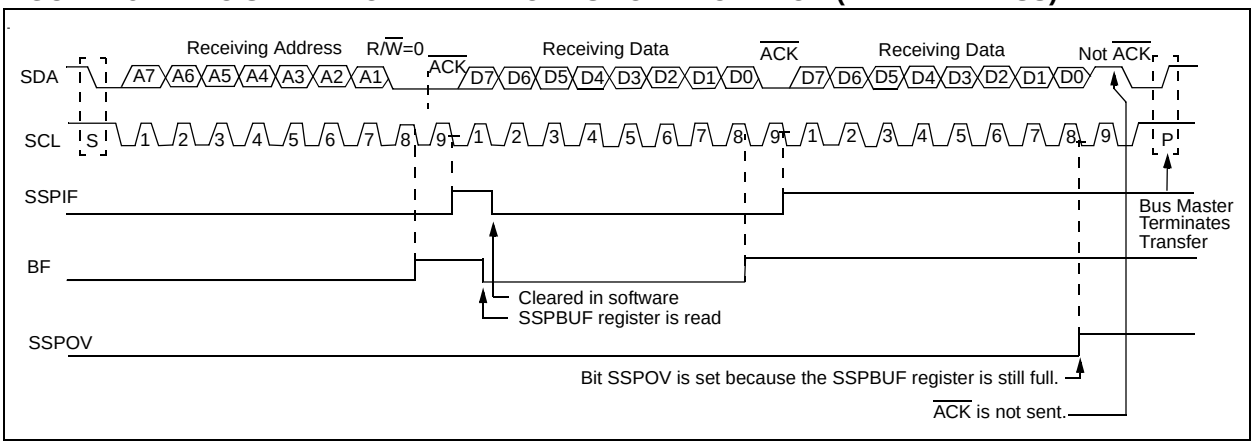
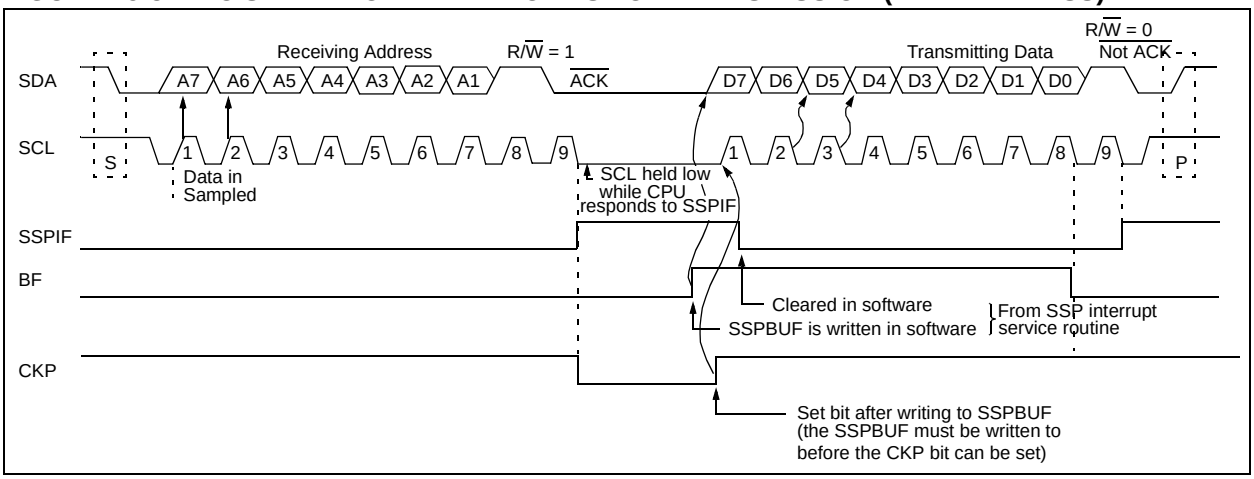


FIGURE 15-8: I²C SLAVE MODE WAVEFORMS FOR TRANSMISSION (7-BIT ADDRESS)



15.4.2 GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SUPPORT

The addressing procedure for the I^{2}C bus is such that the first byte after the START condition usually determines which device will be the slave addressed by the master. The exception is the general call address, which can address all devices. When this address is used, all devices should, in theory, respond with an acknowledge.

The general call address is one of eight addresses reserved for specific purposes by the I^{2}C protocol. It consists of all 0's with R/$\overline{W}$ = 0.

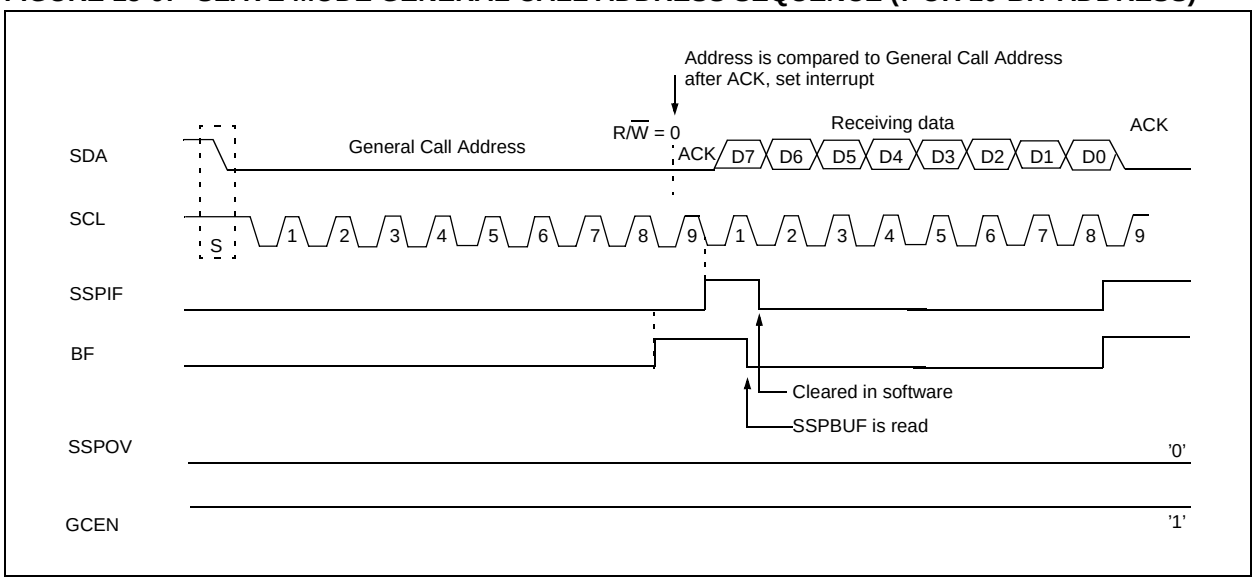
The general call address is recognized (enabled) when the General Call Enable (GCEN) bit is set (SSPCON2 register). Following a START bit detect, eight bits are shifted into the SSPSR and the address is compared against the SSPADD. It is also compared to the general call address and fixed in hardware.

If the general call address matches, the SSPSR is transferred to the SSPBUF, the BF bit is set (eighth bit), and on the falling edge of the ninth bit ($\overline{ACK}$ bit), the SSPIF interrupt flag bit is set.

When the interrupt is serviced, the source for the interrupt can be checked by reading the contents of the SSPBUF. The value can be used to determine if the address was device specific or a general call address.

In 10-bit mode, the SSPADD is required to be updated for the second half of the address to match, and the UA bit is set (SSPSTAT register). If the general call address is sampled when the GCEN bit is set, and while the slave is configured in 10-bit address mode; then, the second half of the address is not necessary. The UA bit will not be set, and the slave will begin receiving data after the Acknowledge (Figure 15-9).

FIGURE 15-9: SLAVE MODE GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SEQUENCE (7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS)



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.3 MASTER MODE

Master mode of operation is supported by interrupt generation on the detection of the START and STOP conditions. The STOP (P) and START (S) bits are cleared from a RESET, or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I^{2}C bus may be taken when the P bit is set, or the bus is idle, with both the S and P bits clear.

In Master mode, the SCL and SDA lines are manipulated by the MSSP hardware.

The following events will cause SSP Interrupt Flag bit, SSPIF, to be set (SSP Interrupt if enabled):

- START condition
- STOP condition
- Data transfer byte transmitted/received
- Acknowledge Transmit
- Repeated START condition

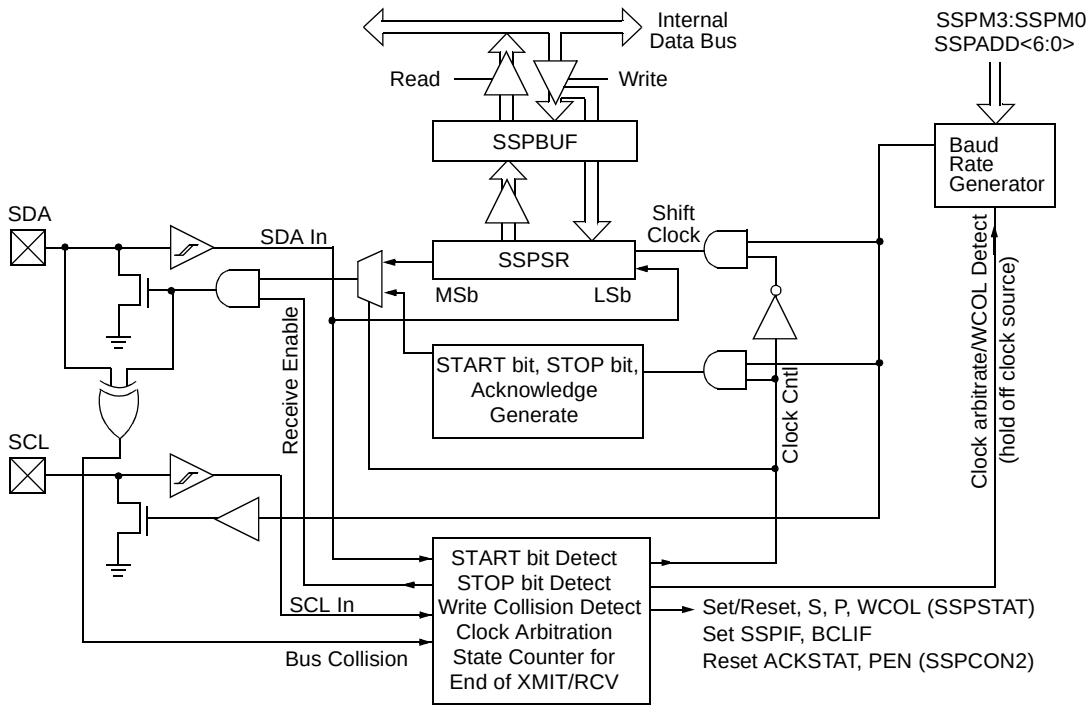
15.4.4 I^{2}C MASTER MODE SUPPORT

Master mode is enabled by setting and clearing the appropriate SSPM bits in SSPCON1 and by setting the SSPEN bit. Once Master mode is enabled, the user has the following six options:

1. Assert a START condition on SDA and SCL.
2. Assert a Repeated START condition on SDA and SCL.
3. Write to the SSPBUF register initiating transmission of data/address.
4. Generate a STOP condition on SDA and SCL.
5. Configure the I^{2}C port to receive data.
6. Generate an Acknowledge condition at the end of a received byte of data.

Note: The MSSP module, when configured in I^{2}C Master mode, does not allow queueing of events. For instance, the user is not allowed to initiate a START condition and immediately write the SSPBUF register to imitate transmission before the START condition is complete. In this case, the SSPBUF will not be written to and the WCOL bit will be set, indicating that a write to the SSPBUF did not occur.

FIGURE 15-10: MSSP BLOCK DIAGRAM (I^{2}C MASTER MODE)



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

15.4.4.1 I^2C Master Mode Operation

The master device generates all of the serial clock pulses and the START and STOP conditions. A transfer is ended with a STOP condition or with a Repeated START condition. Since the Repeated START condition is also the beginning of the next serial transfer, the I^2C bus will not be released.

In Master Transmitter mode, serial data is output through SDA, while SCL outputs the serial clock. The first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the receiving device (7 bits) and the Read/Write (R/$\overline{W}$) bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '0'. Serial data is transmitted eight bits at a time. After each byte is transmitted, an Acknowledge bit is received. START and STOP conditions are output to indicate the beginning and the end of a serial transfer.

In Master Receive mode, the first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the transmitting device (7 bits) and the R/$\overline{W}$ bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit will be logic '1'. Thus, the first byte transmitted is a 7-bit slave address followed by a '1' to indicate receive bit. Serial data is received via SDA, while SCL outputs the serial clock. Serial data is received eight bits at a time. After each byte is received, an Acknowledge bit is transmitted. START and STOP conditions indicate the beginning and end of transmission.

The baud rate generator used for the SPI mode operation is now used to set the SCL clock frequency for either 100 kHz, 400 kHz, or 1 MHz I^2C operation. The baud rate generator reload value is contained in the lower 7 bits of the SSPADD register. The baud rate generator will automatically begin counting on a write to the SSPBUF. Once the given operation is complete (i.e., transmission of the last data bit is followed by ACK), the internal clock will automatically stop counting and the SCL pin will remain in its last state.

A typical transmit sequence would go as follows:

a) The user generates a START condition by setting the START Enable (SEN) bit (SSPCON2 register).
b) SSPIF is set. The MSSP module will wait the required start time before any other operation takes place.
c) The user loads the SSPBUF with the address to transmit.
d) Address is shifted out the SDA pin until all eight bits are transmitted.
e) The MSSP module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the ACKSTAT bit (SSPCON2 register).
f) The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
g) The user loads the SSPBUF with eight bits of data.
h) Data is shifted out the SDA pin until all eight bits are transmitted.
i) The MSSP module shifts in the ACK bit from the slave device and writes its value into the ACKSTAT bit (SSPCON2 register).
j) The MSSP module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPIF bit.
k) The user generates a STOP condition by setting the STOP Enable bit PEN (SSPCON2 register).
l) Interrupt is generated once the STOP condition is complete.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.5 BAUD RATE GENERATOR

In I^{2}C Master mode, the reload value for the BRG is located in the lower 7 bits of the SSPADD register (Figure 15-11). When the BRG is loaded with this value, the BRG counts down to 0 and stops until another reload has taken place. The BRG count is decremented twice per instruction cycle (TCY) on the Q2 and Q4 clocks. In I^{2}C Master mode, the BRG is reloaded automatically. If Clock Arbitration is taking place, for instance, the BRG will be reloaded when the SCL pin is sampled high (Figure 15-12).

FIGURE 15-11: BAUD RATE GENERATOR BLOCK DIAGRAM

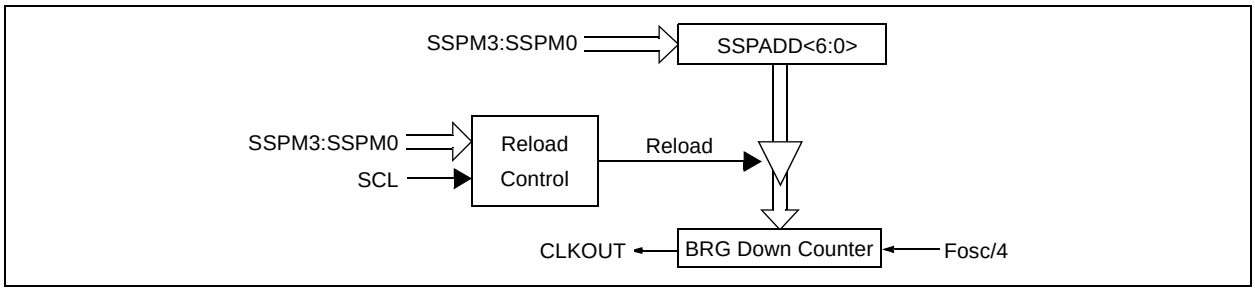
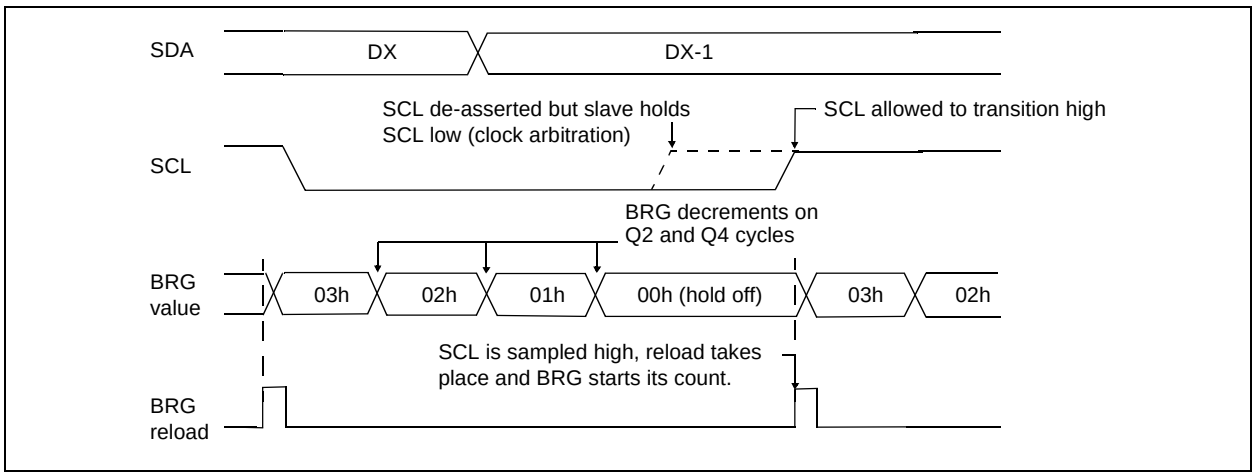


FIGURE 15-12: BAUD RATE GENERATOR TIMING WITH CLOCK ARBITRATION



15.4.6 I^{2}C MASTER MODE START CONDITION TIMING

To initiate a START condition, the user sets the START Condition Enable (SEN) bit (SSPCON2 register). If the SDA and SCL pins are sampled high, the baud rate generator is re-loaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and starts its count. If SCL and SDA are both sampled high when the baud rate generator times out (TBRG), the SDA pin is driven low. The action of the SDA being driven low, while SCL is high, is the START condition, and causes the S bit (SSPSTAT register) to be set. Following this, the baud rate generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and resumes its count. When the baud rate generator times out (TBRG), the SEN bit (SSPCON2 register) will be automatically cleared by hardware, the baud rate generator is suspended leaving the SDA line held low and the START condition is complete.

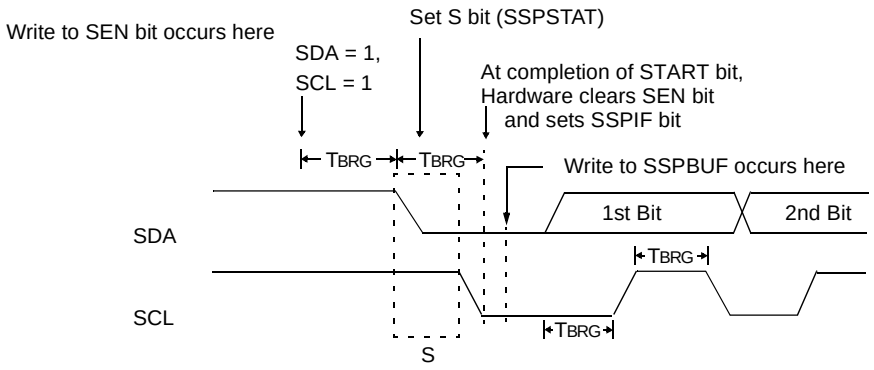
Note:	If at the beginning of the START condition, the SDA and SCL pins are already sampled low, or if during the START condition the SCL line is sampled low before the SDA line is driven low, a bus collision occurs, the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag BCLIF is set, the START condition is aborted, and the I^{2}C module is reset into its IDLE state.

15.4.6.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a START sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

Note:	Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing to the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the START condition is complete.

FIGURE 15-13: FIRST START BIT TIMING



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.7 I^{2}C MASTER MODE REPEATED START CONDITION TIMING

A Repeated START condition occurs when the RSEN bit (SSPCON2 register) is programmed high and the I^{2}C logic module is in the IDLE state. When the RSEN bit is set, the SCL pin is asserted low. When the SCL pin is sampled low, the baud rate generator is loaded with the contents of SSPADD<5:0> and begins counting. The SDA pin is released (brought high) for one baud rate generator count (TBRG). When the baud rate generator times out, if SDA is sampled high, the SCL pin will be de-asserted (brought high). When SCL is sampled high, the baud rate generator is re-loaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. SDA and SCL must be sampled high for one TBRG. This action is then followed by assertion of the SDA pin (SDA = 0) for one TBRG while SCL is high. Following this, the RSEN bit (SSPCON2 register) will be automatically cleared and the baud rate generator will not be reloaded, leaving the SDA pin held low. As soon as a START condition is detected on the SDA and SCL pins, the S bit (SSPSTAT register) will be set. The SSPIF bit will not be set until the baud rate generator has timed-out.

Note 1: If RSEN is programmed while any other event is in progress, it will not take effect.

2: A bus collision during the Repeated START condition occurs if:

- SDA is sampled low when SCL goes from low to high.
- SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low. This may indicate that another master is attempting to transmit a data "1".

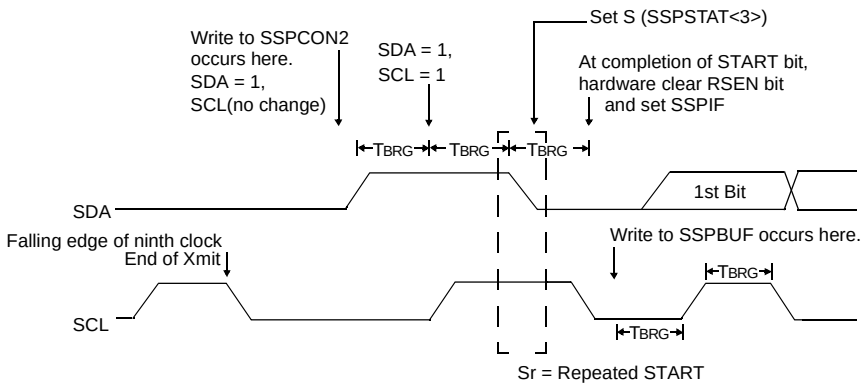
Immediately following the SSPIF bit getting set, the user may write the SSPBUF with the 7-bit address in 7-bit mode, or the default first address in 10-bit mode. After the first eight bits are transmitted and an ACK is received, the user may then transmit an additional eight bits of address (10-bit mode) or eight bits of data (7-bit mode).

15.4.7.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a Repeated START sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

Note: Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing of the lower 5 bits of SSPCON2 is disabled until the Repeated START condition is complete.

FIGURE 15-14: REPEAT START CONDITION WAVEFORM



15.4.8 I^{2}C MASTER MODE TRANSMISSION

Transmission of a data byte, a 7-bit address, or the other half of a 10-bit address, is accomplished by simply writing a value to the SSPBUF register. This action will set the Buffer Full bit, BF, and allow the baud rate generator to begin counting and start the next transmission. Each bit of address/data will be shifted out onto the SDA pin after the falling edge of SCL is asserted (see data hold time specification parameter 106). SCL is held low for one baud rate generator roll over count (TBRG). Data should be valid before SCL is released high (see data setup time specification parameter 107). When the SCL pin is released high, it is held that way for TBRG. The data on the SDA pin must remain stable for that duration and some hold time after the next falling edge of SCL. After the eighth bit is shifted out (the falling edge of the eighth clock), the BF bit is cleared and the master releases SDA, allowing the slave device being addressed to respond with an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit during the ninth bit time if an address match occurs, or if data was received properly. The status of $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ is written into the ACKDT bit on the falling edge of the ninth clock. If the master receives an acknowledge, the Acknowledge Status bit, ACKSTAT, is cleared. If not, the bit is set. After the ninth clock, the SSPIF bit is set and the master clock (baud rate generator) is suspended until the next data byte is loaded into the SSPBUF, leaving SCL low and SDA unchanged (Figure 15-15).

After the write to the SSPBUF, each bit of address will be shifted out on the falling edge of SCL, until all seven address bits and the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit, are completed. On the falling edge of the eighth clock, the master will de-assert the SDA pin, allowing the slave to respond with an acknowledge. On the falling edge of the ninth clock, the master will sample the SDA pin to see if the address was recognized by a slave. The status of the ACK bit is loaded into the ACKSTAT status bit (SSPCON2 register). Following the falling edge of the ninth clock transmission of the address, the SSPIF is set, the BF bit is cleared and the baud rate generator is turned off, until another write to the SSPBUF takes place, holding SCL low and allowing SDA to float.

15.4.8.1 BF Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the BF bit (SSPSTAT register) is set when the CPU writes to SSPBUF, and is cleared when all eight bits are shifted out.

15.4.8.2 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a transmit is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting out a data byte), the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

WCOL must be cleared in software.

15.4.8.3 ACKSTAT Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the ACKSTAT bit (SSPCON2 register) is cleared when the slave has sent an acknowledge ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$ = 0), and is set when the slave does not acknowledge ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$ = 1). A slave sends an acknowledge when it has recognized its address (including a general call), or when the slave has properly received its data.

15.4.9 I^{2}C MASTER MODE RECEPTION

Master mode reception is enabled by programming the Receive Enable bit, RCEN (SSPCON2 register).

Note:	The MSSP module must be in an IDLE state before the RCEN bit is set, or the RCEN bit will be disregarded.

The baud rate generator begins counting, and on each rollover, the state of the SCL pin changes (high to low/low to high) and data is shifted into the SSPSR. After the falling edge of the eighth clock, the RCEN bit is automatically cleared, the contents of the SSPSR are loaded into the SSPBUF, the BF bit is set, the SSPIF flag bit is set and the baud rate generator is suspended from counting, holding SCL low. The MSSP is now in IDLE state, awaiting the next command. When the buffer is read by the CPU, the BF bit is automatically cleared. The user can then send an Acknowledge bit at the end of reception, by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit ACKEN (SSPCON2 register).

15.4.9.1 BF Status Flag

In receive operation, the BF bit is set when an address or data byte is loaded into SSPBUF from SSPSR. It is cleared when the SSPBUF register is read.

15.4.9.2 SSPOV Status Flag

In receive operation, the SSPOV bit is set when eight bits are received into the SSPSR and the BF bit is already set from a previous reception.

15.4.9.3 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when a receive is already in progress (i.e., SSPSR is still shifting in a data byte), the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 15-15: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (TRANSMISSION, 7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS)

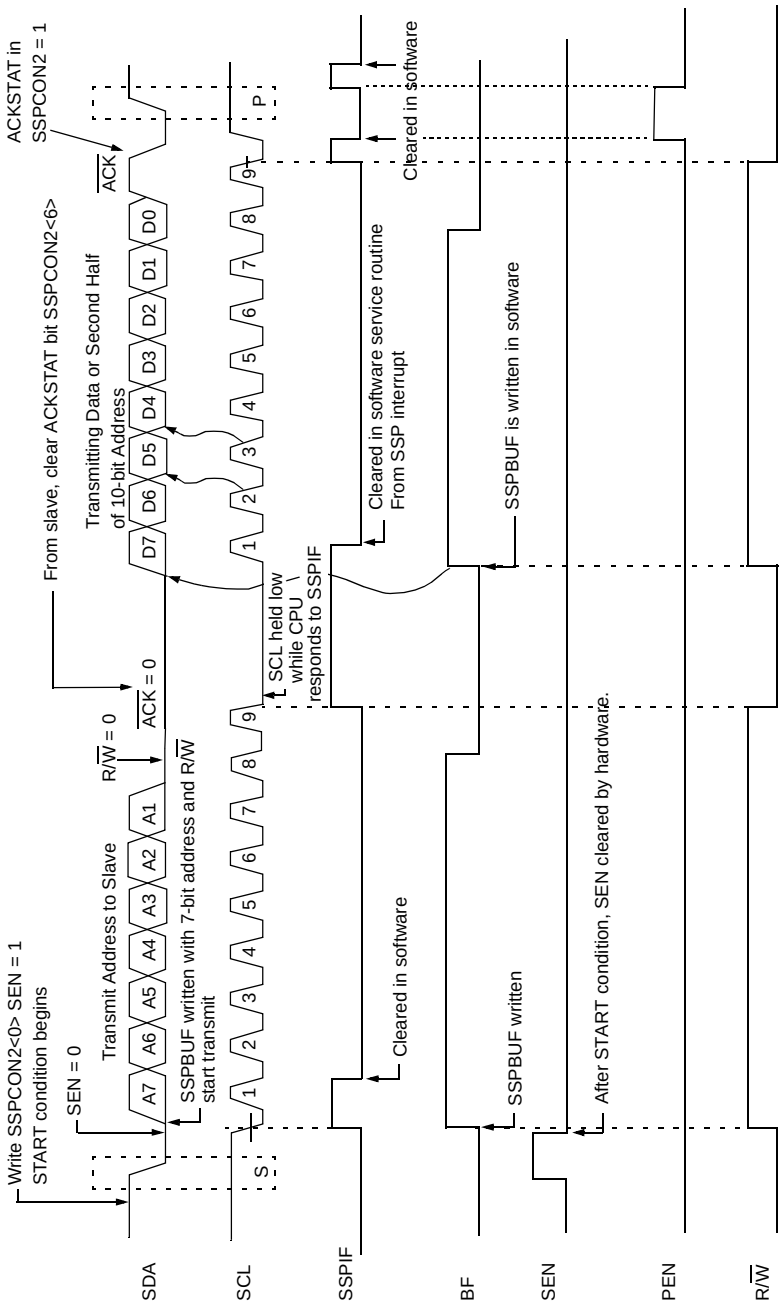
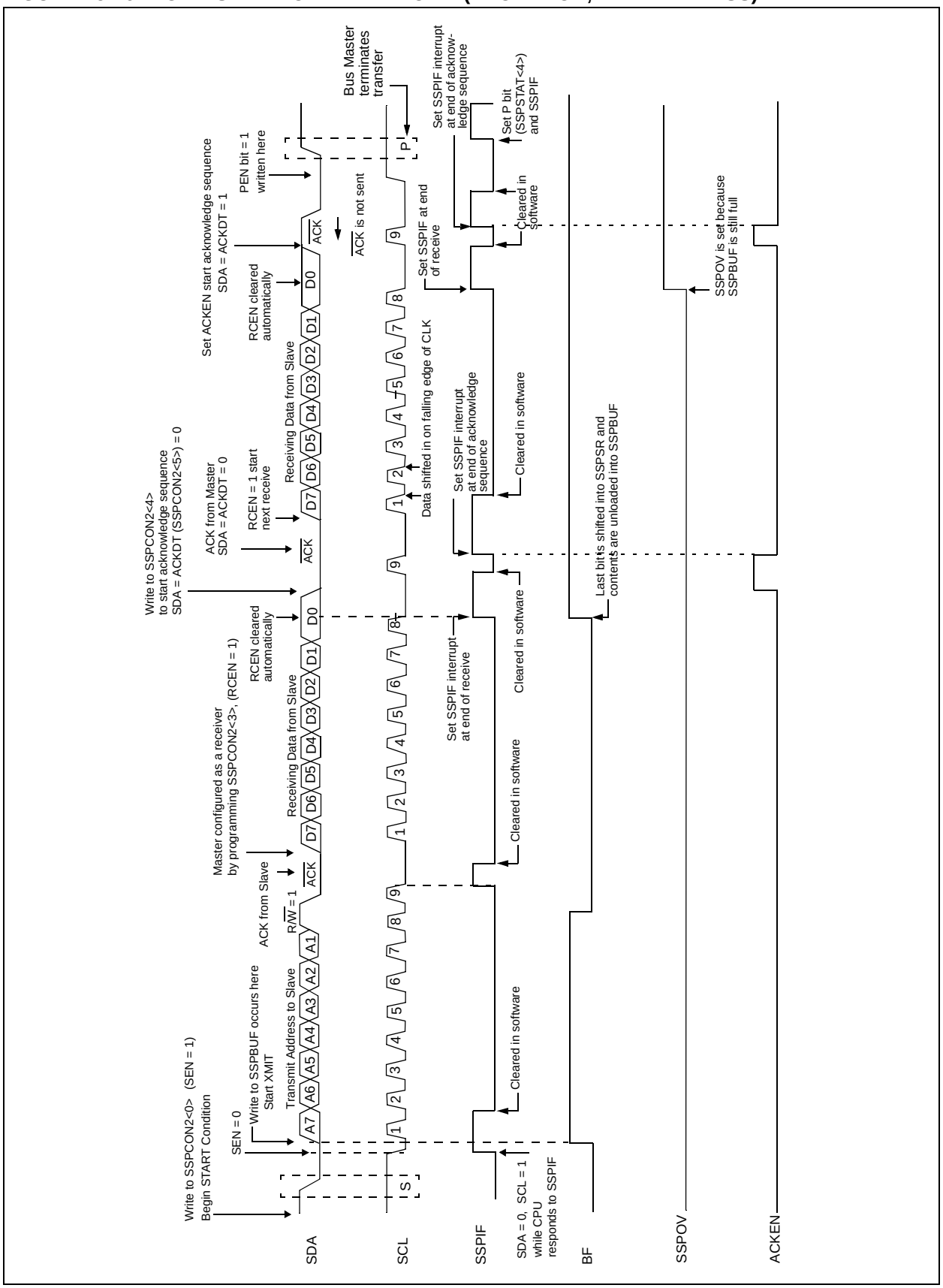


FIGURE 15-16: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.10 ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE TIMING

An acknowledge sequence is enabled by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit ACKEN (SSPCON2 register). When this bit is set, the SCL pin is pulled low and the contents of the Acknowledge Data bit (ACKDT) is presented on the SDA pin. If the user wishes to generate an acknowledge, then the ACKDT bit should be cleared. If not, the user should set the ACKDT bit before starting an acknowledge sequence. The baud rate generator then counts for one rollover period (TBRG) and the SCL pin is de-asserted (pulled high). When the SCL pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the baud rate generator counts for TBRG. The SCL pin is then pulled low. Following this, the ACKEN bit is automatically cleared, the baud rate generator is turned off and the MSSP module then goes into IDLE mode (Figure 15-17).

15.4.10.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPBUF when an acknowledge sequence is in progress, then WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

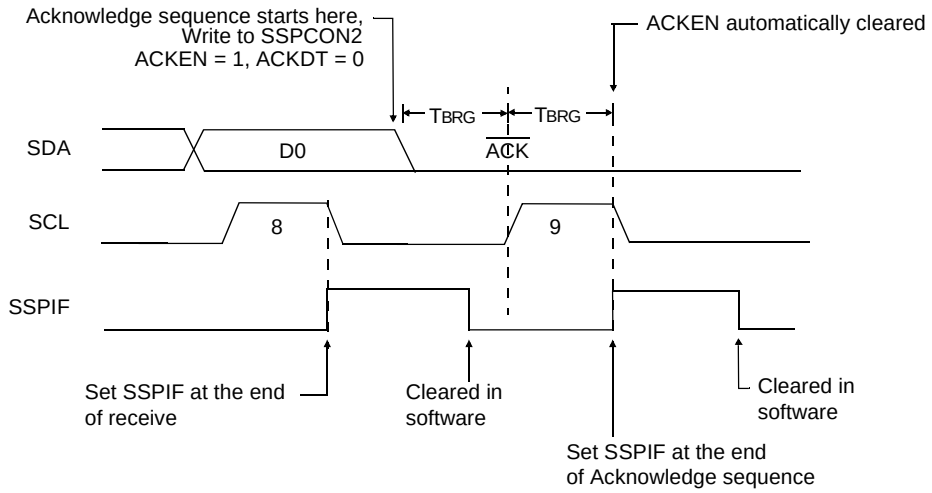
15.4.11 STOP CONDITION TIMING

A STOP bit is asserted on the SDA pin at the end of a receive/transmit by setting the Stop Sequence Enable bit, PEN (SSPCON2 register). At the end of a receive/transmit, the SCL line is held low after the falling edge of the ninth clock. When the PEN bit is set, the master will assert the SDA line low. When the SDA line is sampled low, the baud rate generator is reloaded and counts down to 0. When the baud rate generator times out, the SCL pin will be brought high, and one TBRG (baud rate generator rollover count) later, the SDA pin will be de-asserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high while SCL is high, the P bit (SSPSTAT register) is set. A TBRG later, the PEN bit is cleared and the SSPIF bit is set (Figure 15-18).

15.4.11.1 WCOL Status Flag

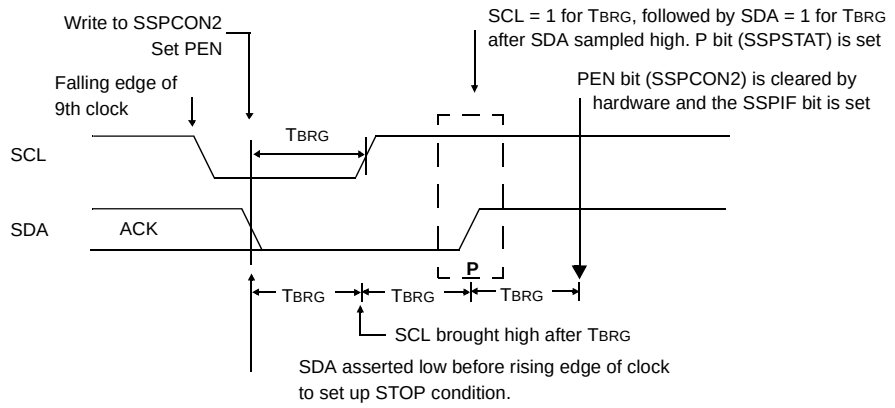
If the user writes the SSPBUF when a STOP sequence is in progress, then the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write doesn't occur).

FIGURE 15-17: ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE WAVEFORM



Note: TBRG = one baud rate generator period.

FIGURE 15-18: STOP CONDITION RECEIVE OR TRANSMIT MODE



Note: TBRG = one baud rate generator period.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.12 CLOCK ARBITRATION

Clock arbitration occurs when the master, during any receive, transmit or Repeated START/STOP condition, de-asserts the SCL pin (SCL allowed to float high). When the SCL pin is allowed to float high, the baud rate generator (BRG) is suspended from counting until the SCL pin is actually sampled high. When the SCL pin is sampled high, the baud rate generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPADD<6:0> and begins counting. This ensures that the SCL high time will always be at least one BRG rollover count, in the event that the clock is held low by an external device (Figure 15-19).

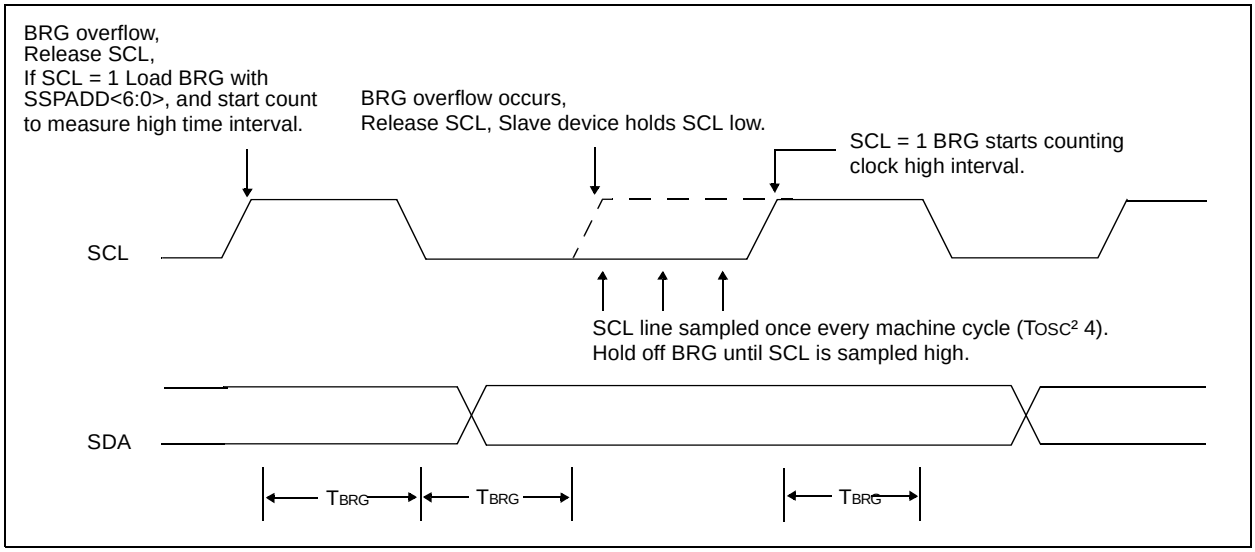
15.4.13 SLEEP OPERATION

While in SLEEP mode, the I^2C module can receive addresses or data, and when an address match or complete byte transfer occurs, wake the processor from SLEEP (if the MSSP interrupt is enabled).

15.4.14 EFFECT OF A RESET

A RESET disables the MSSP module and terminates the current transfer.

FIGURE 15-19: CLOCK ARBITRATION TIMING IN MASTER TRANSMIT MODE



15.4.15 MULTI-MASTER MODE

In Multi-master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of the START and STOP conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. The STOP (P) and START (S) bits are cleared from a RESET, or when the MSSP module is disabled. Control of the I^2C bus may be taken when the P bit (SSPSTAT register) is set, or the bus is idle with both the S and P bits clear. When the bus is busy, enabling the SSP Interrupt will generate the interrupt when the STOP condition occurs.

In Multi-master operation, the SDA line must be monitored for arbitration, to see if the signal level is the expected output level. This check is performed in hardware, with the result placed in the BCLIF bit.

Arbitration can be lost in the following states:

- Address transfer
- Data transfer
- A START condition
- A Repeated START condition
- An Acknowledge condition

15.4.16 MULTI -MASTER COMMUNICATION, BUS COLLISION, AND BUS ARBITRATION

Multi-master mode support is achieved by bus arbitration. When the master outputs address/data bits onto the SDA pin, arbitration takes place when the master outputs a '1' on SDA, by letting SDA float high and another master asserts a '0'. When the SCL pin floats high, data should be stable. If the expected data on SDA is a '1' and the data sampled on the SDA pin = '0', then a bus collision has taken place. The master will set the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag (BCLIF) and reset the I^2C port to its IDLE state. (Figure 15-20).

If a transmit was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the transmission is halted, the BF bit is cleared, the SDA and SCL lines are de-asserted, and the SSPBUF can be written to. When the user services the bus collision interrupt service routine, and if the I^2C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a START condition.

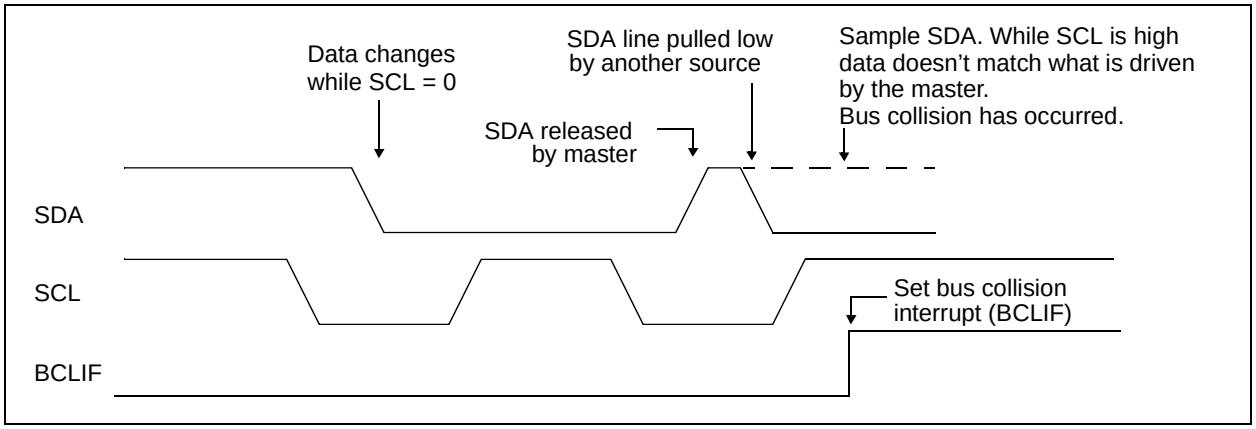
If a START, Repeated START, STOP, or Acknowledge condition was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the condition is aborted, the SDA and SCL lines are de-asserted, and the respective control bits in the SSPCON2 register are cleared. When the user services the bus collision interrupt service routine, and if the I^2C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a START condition.

The master will continue to monitor the SDA and SCL pins. If a STOP condition occurs, the SSPIF bit will be set.

A write to the SSPBUF will start the transmission of data at the first data bit, regardless of where the transmitter left off when the bus collision occurred.

In Multi-master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of START and STOP conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. Control of the I^2C bus can be taken when the P bit is set in the SSPSTAT register, or the bus is idle and the S and P bits are cleared.

FIGURE 15-20: BUS COLLISION TIMING FOR TRANSMIT AND ACKNOWLEDGE



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.16.1 Bus Collision During a START Condition

During a START condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) SDA or SCL are sampled low at the beginning of the START condition (Figure 15-21).

b) SCL is sampled low before SDA is asserted low (Figure 15-22).

During a START condition, both the SDA and the SCL pins are monitored.

If:

the SDA pin is already low
or the SCL pin is already low,

then:

the START condition is aborted,
and the BCLIF flag is set,
and the MSSP module is reset to its IDLE state (Figure 15-21).

The START condition begins with the SDA and SCL pins de-asserted. When the SDA pin is sampled high, the baud rate generator is loaded from SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. If the SCL pin is sampled low while SDA is high, a bus collision occurs, because it is assumed that another master is attempting to drive a data '1' during the START condition.

If the SDA pin is sampled low during this count, the BRG is reset and the SDA line is asserted early (Figure 15-23). If, however, a '1' is sampled on the SDA pin, the SDA pin is asserted low at the end of the BRG count. The baud rate generator is then reloaded and counts down to 0, and during this time, if the SCL pin is sampled as '0', a bus collision does not occur. At the end of the BRG count, the SCL pin is asserted low.

> **Note:** The reason that bus collision is not a factor during a START condition is that no two bus masters can assert a START condition at the exact same time. Therefore, one master will always assert SDA before the other. This condition does not cause a bus collision, because the two masters must be allowed to arbitrate the first address following the START condition. If the address is the same, arbitration must be allowed to continue into the data portion, Repeated START or STOP conditions.

FIGURE 15-21: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SDA ONLY)

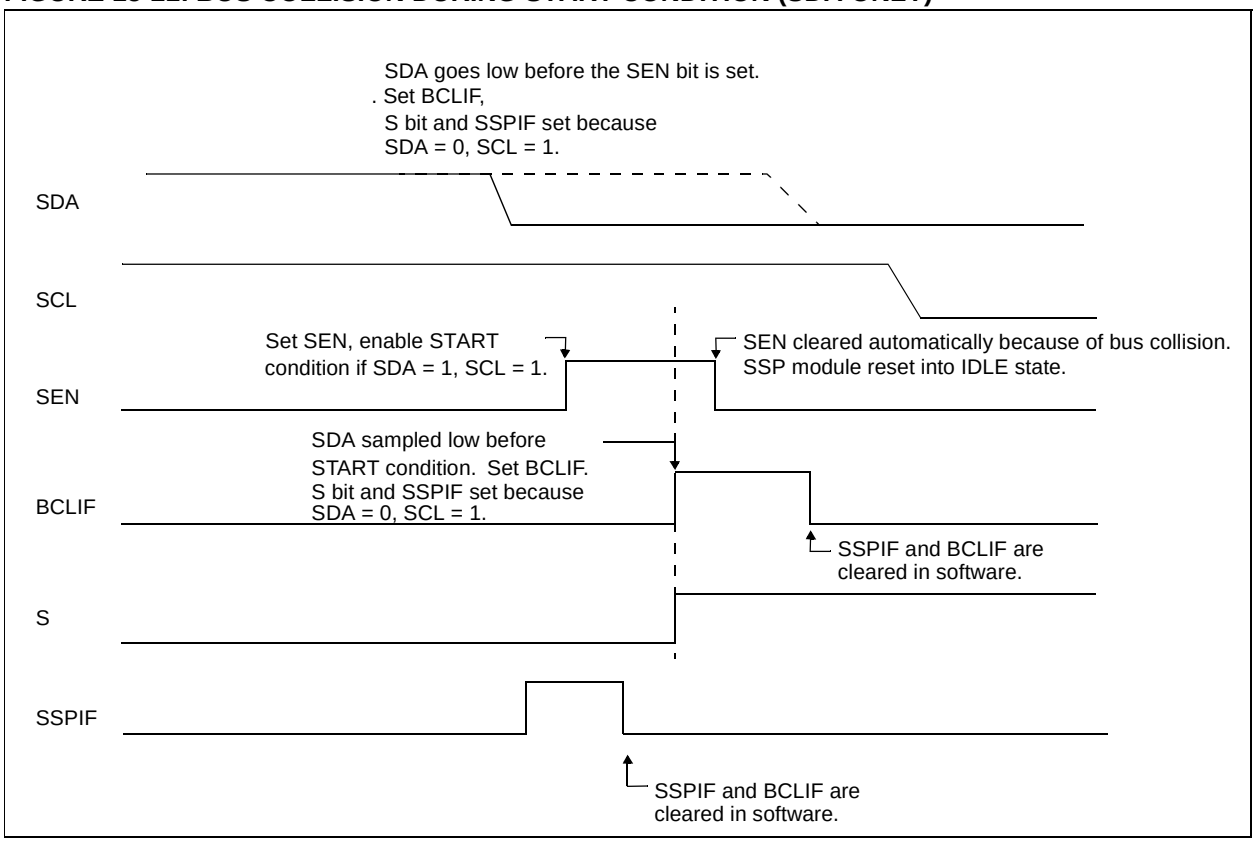


FIGURE 15-22: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SCL = 0)

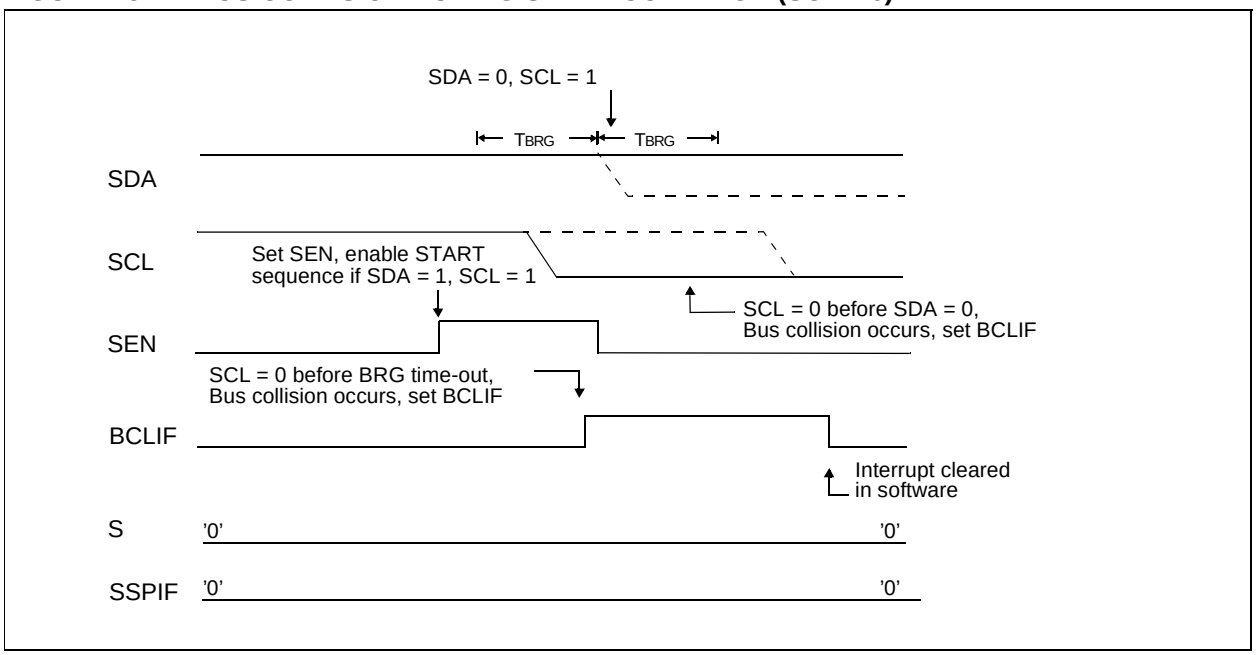
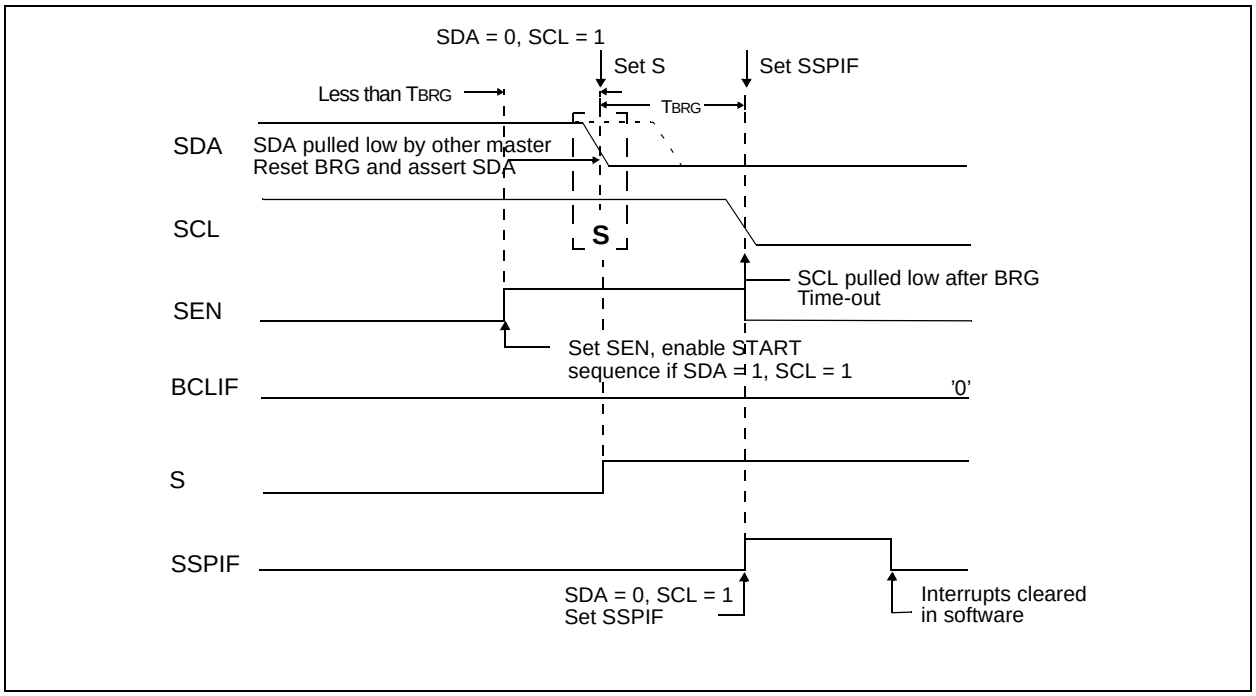


FIGURE 15-23: BRG RESET DUE TO SDA ARBITRATION DURING START CONDITION



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

15.4.16.2 Bus Collision During a Repeated START Condition

During a Repeated START condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) A low level is sampled on SDA when SCL goes from low level to high level.

b) SCL goes low before SDA is asserted low, indicating that another master is attempting to transmit a data '1'.

When the user de-asserts SDA and the pin is allowed to float high, the BRG is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. The SCL pin is then de-asserted, and when sampled high, the SDA pin is sampled.

If SDA is low, a bus collision has occurred (i.e, another master is attempting to transmit a data '0', see Figure 15-24). If SDA is sampled high, the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. If SDA goes from high to low before the BRG times out, no bus collision occurs because no two masters can assert SDA at exactly the same time.

If SCL goes from high to low before the BRG times out and SDA has not already been asserted, a bus collision occurs. In this case, another master is attempting to transmit a data '1' during the Repeated START condition (Figure 15-25).

If at the end of the BRG time-out both SCL and SDA are still high, the SDA pin is driven low and the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. At the end of the count, regardless of the status of the SCL pin, the SCL pin is driven low and the Repeated START condition is complete.

FIGURE 15-24: BUS COLLISION DURING A REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 1)

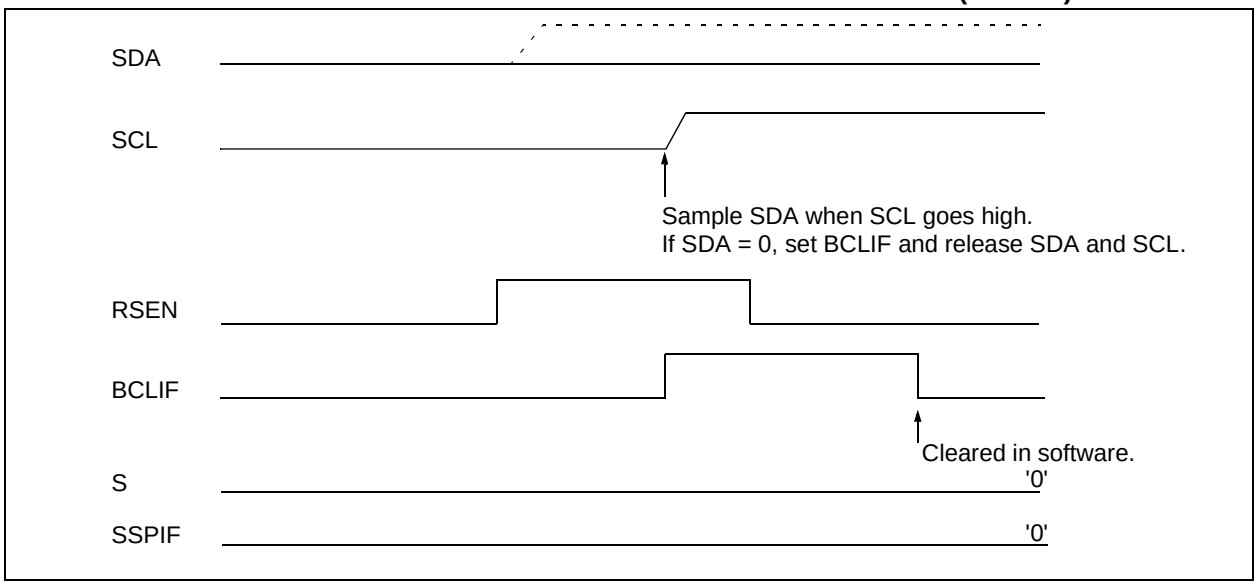
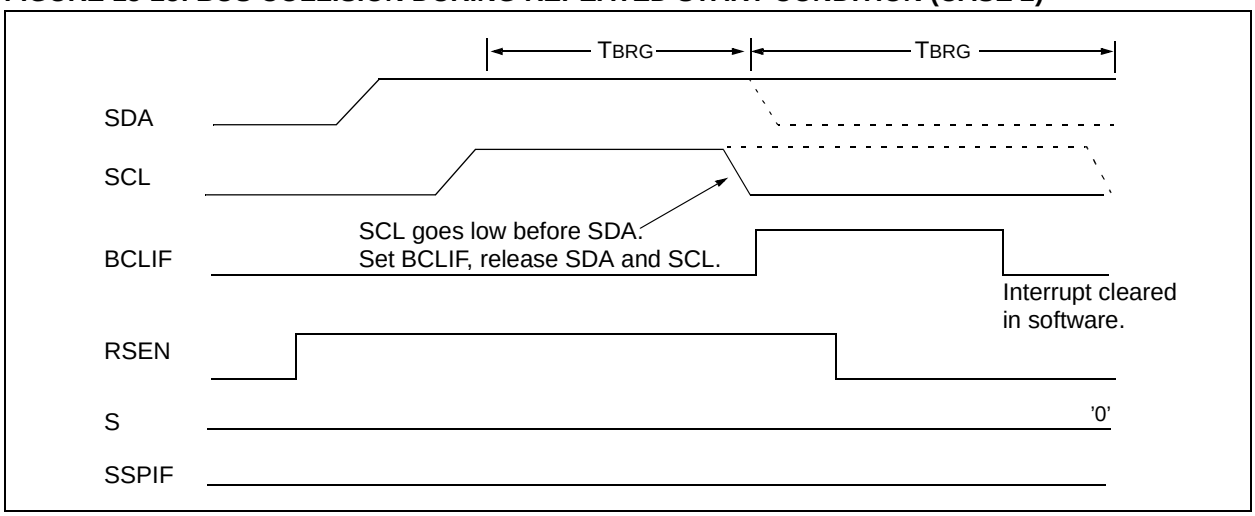


FIGURE 15-25: BUS COLLISION DURING REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 2)



15.4.16.3 Bus Collision During a STOP Condition

Bus collision occurs during a STOP condition if:

a) After the SDA pin has been de-asserted and allowed to float high, SDA is sampled low after the BRG has timed out.

b) After the SCL pin is de-asserted, SCL is sampled low before SDA goes high.

The STOP condition begins with SDA asserted low. When SDA is sampled low, the SCL pin is allowed to float. When the pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the baud rate generator is loaded with SSPADD<6:0> and counts down to 0. After the BRG times out, SDA is sampled. If SDA is sampled low, a bus collision has occurred. This is due to another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 15-26). If the SCL pin is sampled low before SDA is allowed to float high, a bus collision occurs. This is another case of another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 15-27).

FIGURE 15-26: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 1)

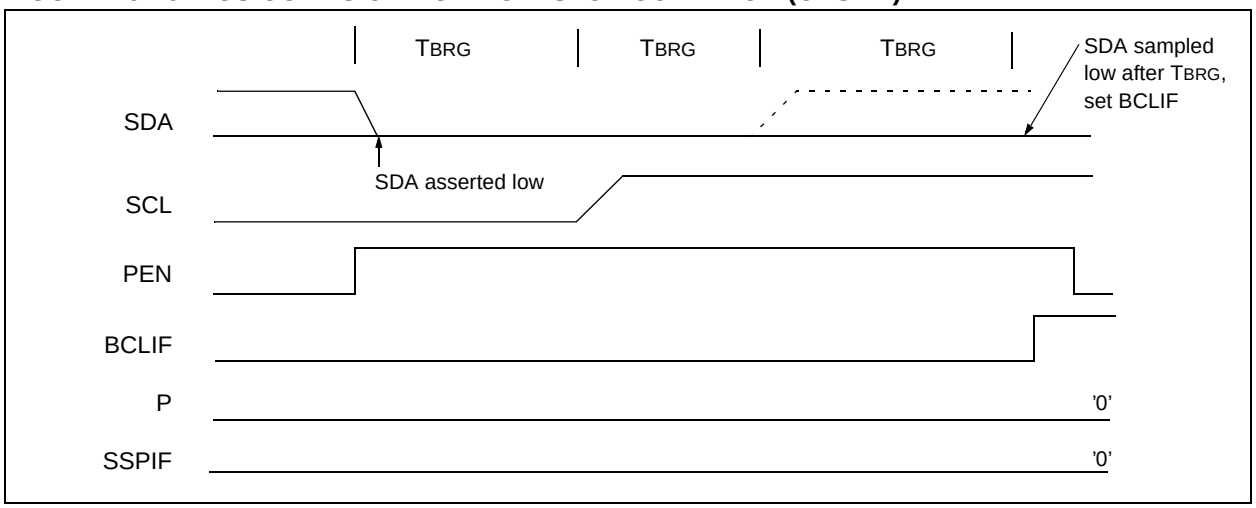
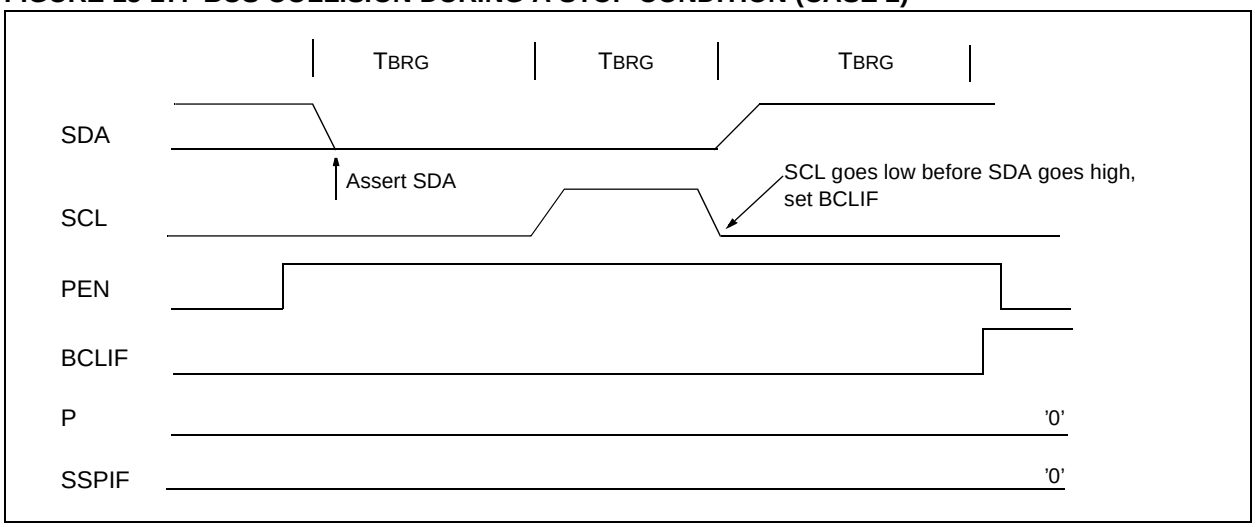


FIGURE 15-27: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 2)



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.0 ADDRESSABLE UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (USART)

The Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (USART) module is one of the two serial I/O modules. (USART is also known as a Serial Communications Interface or SCI). The USART can be configured as a full duplex asynchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as CRT terminals and personal computers, or it can be configured as a half duplex synchronous system that can communicate with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, Serial EEPROMs, etc.

The USART can be configured in the following modes:

- Asynchronous (full duplex)
- Synchronous - Master (half duplex)
- Synchronous - Slave (half duplex)

The SPEN (RCSTA register) and the TRISC<7> bits have to be set, and the TRISC<6> bit must be cleared, in order to configure pins RC6/TX/CK and RC7/RX/DT as the Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter.

Register 16-1 shows the Transmit Status and Control Register (TXSTA) and Register 16-2 shows the Receive Status and Control Register (TXSTA).

REGISTER 16-1: TXSTA REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R-1	R/W-0
CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **CSRC:** Clock Source Select bit
Asynchronous mode
Don’t care

Synchronous mode
1 = Master mode (Clock generated internally from BRG)
0 = Slave mode (Clock from external source)

bit 6 **TX9**: 9-bit Transmit Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit transmission
0 = Selects 8-bit transmission

bit 5 **TXEN**: Transmit Enable bit
1 = Transmit enabled
0 = Transmit disabled

Note: SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in SYNC mode.

bit 4 **SYNC**: USART Mode Select bit
1 = Synchronous mode
0 = Asynchronous mode

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **BRGH**: High Baud Rate Select bit
Asynchronous mode
1 = High speed
0 = Low speed

Synchronous mode
Unused in this mode

bit 1 **TRMT**: Transmit Shift Register Status bit
1 = TSR empty
0 = TSR full

bit 0 **TX9D:** 9th bit of transmit data. Can be Address/Data bit or a parity bit.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 16-2: RCSTA REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-x
SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SPEN:** Serial Port Enable bit
1 = Serial port enabled (Configures RX/DT and TX/CK pins as serial port pins)
0 = Serial port disabled

bit 6 **RX9**: 9-bit Receive Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit reception
0 = Selects 8-bit reception

bit 5 **SREN**: Single Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode
Don't care

Synchronous mode - Master
1 = Enables single receive
0 = Disables single receive
This bit is cleared after reception is complete.

Synchronous mode - Slave
Unused in this mode

bit 4 **CREN**: Continuous Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode
1 = Enables continuous receive
0 = Disables continuous receive

Synchronous mode
1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN)
0 = Disables continuous receive

bit 3 **ADDEN**: Address Detect Enable bit
Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1)
1 = Enables address detection, enable interrupt and load of the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set
0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received, and ninth bit can be used as parity bit

bit 2 **FERR**: Framing Error bit
1 = Framing error (Can be updated by reading RCREG register and receive next valid byte)
0 = No framing error

bit 1 **OERR**: Overrun Error bit
1 = Overrun error (Can be cleared by clearing bit CREN)
0 = No overrun error

bit 0 **RX9D:** 9th bit of received data, can be Address/Data bit or a parity bit

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
- n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.1 USART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The BRG supports both the Asynchronous and Synchronous modes of the USART. It is a dedicated 8-bit baud rate generator. The SPBRG register controls the period of a free running 8-bit timer. In Asynchronous mode, bit BRGH (TXSTA register) also controls the baud rate. In Synchronous mode, bit BRGH is ignored. Table 16-1 shows the formula for computation of the baud rate for different USART modes, which only apply in Master mode (internal clock).

Given the desired baud rate and FOSC, the nearest integer value for the SPBRG register can be calculated using the formula in Table 16-1. From this, the error in baud rate can be determined.

Example 16-1 shows the calculation of the baud rate error for the following conditions:

FOSC = 16 MHz
Desired Baud Rate = 9600
BRGH = 0
SYNC = 0

It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1), even for slower baud clocks. This is because the FOSC/(16(X + 1)) equation can reduce the baud rate error in some cases.

Writing a new value to the SPBRG register causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

16.1.1 SAMPLING

The data on the RC7/RX/DT pin is sampled three times by a majority detect circuit to determine if a high or a low level is present at the RX pin.

EXAMPLE 16-1: CALCULATING BAUD RATE ERROR

Desired Baud Rate = FOSC / (64 (X + 1))

Solving for X:

X = ((FOSC / Desired Baud Rate) / 64) - 1
X = ((16000000 / 9600) / 64) - 1
X = [25.042] = 25

Calculated Baud Rate = 16000000 / (64 (25 + 1))
= 9615

Error = (Calculated Baud Rate - Desired Baud Rate) / Desired Baud Rate
= (9615 - 9600) / 9600
= 0.16%

TABLE 16-1: BAUD RATE FORMULA

SYNC	BRGH = 0 (Low Speed)	BRGH = 1 (High Speed)
0	(Asynchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(64(X+1))	Baud Rate = FOSC/(16(X+1))
1	(Synchronous) Baud Rate = FOSC/(4(X+1))	NA

Legend: X = value in SPBRG (0 to 255)

TABLE 16-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BAUD RATE GENERATOR

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 -010	0000 -010
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the BRG.

TABLE 16-3: BAUD RATES FOR SYNCHRONOUS MODE

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 40 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	33 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	25 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	20 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
19.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
76.8	76.92	+0.16	129	77.10	+0.39	106	77.16	+0.47	80	76.92	+0.16	64
96	96.15	+0.16	103	95.93	-0.07	85	96.15	+0.16	64	96.15	+0.16	51
300	303.03	+1.01	32	294.64	-1.79	27	297.62	-0.79	20	294.12	-1.96	16
500	500	0	19	485.30	-2.94	16	480.77	-3.85	12	500	0	9
HIGH	10000	-	0	8250	-	0	6250	-	0	5000	-	0
LOW	39.06	-	255	32.23	-	255	24.41	-	255	19.53	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 16 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	10 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	7.15909 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	5.0688 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	9.62	+0.23	185	9.60	0	131
19.2	19.23	+0.16	207	19.23	+0.16	129	19.24	+0.23	92	19.20	0	65
76.8	76.92	+0.16	51	75.76	-1.36	32	77.82	+1.32	22	74.54	-2.94	16
96	95.24	-0.79	41	96.15	+0.16	25	94.20	-1.88	18	97.48	+1.54	12
300	307.70	+2.56	12	312.50	+4.17	7	298.35	-0.57	5	316.80	+5.60	3
500	500	0	7	500	0	4	447.44	-10.51	3	422.40	-15.52	2
HIGH	4000	-	0	2500	-	0	1789.80	-	0	1267.20	-	0
LOW	15.63	-	255	9.77	-	255	6.99	-	255	4.95	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 4 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	3.579545 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	1 MHz		SPBRG value (decimal)	32.768 kHz		SPBRG value (decimal)
	KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR		KBAUD	% ERROR	
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	0.30	+1.14	26
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	1.20	+0.16	207	1.17	-2.48	6
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	2.40	+0.16	103	2.73	+13.78	2
9.6	9.62	+0.16	103	9.62	+0.23	92	9.62	+0.16	25	8.20	-14.67	0
19.2	19.23	+0.16	51	19.04	-0.83	46	19.23	+0.16	12	NA	-	-
76.8	76.92	+0.16	12	74.57	-2.90	11	83.33	+8.51	2	NA	-	-
96	1000	+4.17	9	99.43	+3.57	8	83.33	-13.19	2	NA	-	-
300	333.33	+11.11	2	298.30	-0.57	2	250	-16.67	0	NA	-	-
500	500	0	1	447.44	-10.51	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	1000	-	0	894.89	-	0	250	-	0	8.20	-	0
LOW	3.91	-	255	3.50	-	255	0.98	-	255	0.03	-	255

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 16-4: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 0)

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 40 MHz			33 MHz			25 MHz			20 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	2.40	-0.07	214	2.40	-0.15	162	2.40	+0.16	129
9.6	9.62	+0.16	64	9.55	-0.54	53	9.53	-0.76	40	9.47	-1.36	32
19.2	18.94	-1.36	32	19.10	-0.54	26	19.53	+1.73	19	19.53	+1.73	15
76.8	78.13	+1.73	7	73.66	-4.09	6	78.13	+1.73	4	78.13	+1.73	3
96	89.29	-6.99	6	103.13	+7.42	4	97.66	+1.73	3	104.17	+8.51	2
300	312.50	+4.17	1	257.81	-14.06	1	NA	-	-	312.50	+4.17	0
500	625	+25.00	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	625	-	0	515.63	-	0	390.63	-	0	312.50	-	0
LOW	2.44	-	255	2.01	-	255	1.53	-	255	1.22	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 16 MHz			10 MHz			7.15909 MHz			5.0688 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	1.20	+0.16	207	1.20	+0.16	129	1.20	+0.23	92	1.20	0	65
2.4	2.40	+0.16	103	2.40	+0.16	64	2.38	-0.83	46	2.40	0	32
9.6	9.62	+0.16	25	9.77	+1.73	15	9.32	-2.90	11	9.90	+3.13	7
19.2	19.23	+0.16	12	19.53	+1.73	7	18.64	-2.90	5	19.80	+3.13	3
76.8	83.33	+8.51	2	78.13	+1.73	1	111.86	+45.65	0	79.20	+3.13	0
96	83.33	-13.19	2	78.13	-18.62	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	250	-16.67	0	156.25	-47.92	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	250	-	0	156.25	-	0	111.86	-	0	79.20	-	0
LOW	0.98	-	255	0.61	-	255	0.44	-	255	0.31	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	Fosc = 4 MHz			3.579545 MHz			1 MHz			32.768 kHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	0.30	-0.16	207	0.30	+0.23	185	0.30	+0.16	51	0.26	-14.67	1
1.2	1.20	+1.67	51	1.19	-0.83	46	1.20	+0.16	12	NA	-	-
2.4	2.40	+1.67	25	2.43	+1.32	22	2.23	-6.99	6	NA	-	-
9.6	8.93	-6.99	6	9.32	-2.90	5	7.81	-18.62	1	NA	-	-
19.2	20.83	+8.51	2	18.64	-2.90	2	15.63	-18.62	0	NA	-	-
76.8	62.50	-18.62	0	55.93	-27.17	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
96	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	62.50	-	0	55.93	-	0	15.63	-	0	0.51	-	0
LOW	0.24	-	255	0.22	-	255	0.06	-	255	0.002	-	255

TABLE 16-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODE (BRGH = 1)

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 40 MHz			33 MHz			25 MHz			20 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
9.6	NA	-	-	9.60	-0.07	214	9.59	-0.15	162	9.62	+0.16	129
19.2	19.23	+0.16	129	19.28	+0.39	106	19.30	+0.47	80	19.23	+0.16	64
76.8	75.76	-1.36	32	76.39	-0.54	26	78.13	+1.73	19	78.13	+1.73	15
96	96.15	+0.16	25	98.21	+2.31	20	97.66	+1.73	15	96.15	+0.16	12
300	312.50	+4.17	7	294.64	-1.79	6	312.50	+4.17	4	312.50	+4.17	3
500	500	0	4	515.63	+3.13	3	520.83	+4.17	2	416.67	-16.67	2
HIGH	2500	-	0	2062.50	-	0	1562.50	-	0	1250	-	0
LOW	9.77	-	255	8,06	-	255	6.10	-	255	4.88	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 16 MHz			10 MHz			7.15909 MHz			5.0688 MHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
1.2	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
2.4	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	2.41	+0.23	185	2.40	0	131
9.6	9.62	+0.16	103	9.62	+0.16	64	9.52	-0.83	46	9.60	0	32
19.2	19.23	+0.16	51	18.94	-1.36	32	19.45	+1.32	22	18.64	-2.94	16
76.8	76.92	+0.16	12	78.13	+1.73	7	74.57	-2.90	5	79.20	+3.13	3
96	100	+4.17	9	89.29	-6.99	6	89.49	-6.78	4	105.60	+10.00	2
300	333.33	+11.11	2	312.50	+4.17	1	447.44	+49.15	0	316.80	+5.60	0
500	500	0	1	625	+25.00	0	447.44	-10.51	0	NA	-	-
HIGH	1000	-	0	625	-	0	447.44	-	0	316.80	-	0
LOW	3.91	-	255	2.44	-	255	1.75	-	255	1.24	-	255

BAUD RATE (Kbps)	FOSC = 4 MHz			3.579545 MHz			1 MHz			32.768 kHz		
	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)	KBAUD	% ERROR	SPBRG value (decimal)
0.3	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	0.30	+0.16	207	0.29	-2.48	6
1.2	1.20	+0.16	207	1.20	+0.23	185	1.20	+0.16	51	1.02	-14.67	1
2.4	2.40	+0.16	103	2.41	+0.23	92	2.40	+0.16	25	2.05	-14.67	0
9.6	9.62	+0.16	25	9.73	+1.32	22	8.93	-6.99	6	NA	-	-
19.2	19.23	+0.16	12	18.64	-2.90	11	20.83	+8.51	2	NA	-	-
76.8	NA	-	-	74.57	-2.90	2	62.50	-18.62	0	NA	-	-
96	NA	-	-	111.86	+16.52	1	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
300	NA	-	-	223.72	-25.43	0	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
500	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-	NA	-	-
HIGH	250	-	0	55.93	-	0	62.50	-	0	2.05	-	0
LOW	0.98	-	255	0.22	-	255	0.24	-	255	0.008	-	255

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.2 USART Asynchronous Mode

In this mode, the USART uses standard non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format (one START bit, eight or nine data bits and one STOP bit). The most common data format is 8-bits. An on-chip dedicated 8-bit baud rate generator can be used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the oscillator. The USART transmits and receives the LSb first. The USART's transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, but use the same data format and baud rate. The baud rate generator produces a clock, either x16 or x64 of the bit shift rate, depending on the BRGH bit (TXSTA register). Parity is not supported by the hardware, but can be implemented in software (and stored as the ninth data bit). Asynchronous mode is stopped during SLEEP.

Asynchronous mode is selected by clearing the SYNC bit (TXSTA register).

The USART Asynchronous module consists of the following important elements:

- Baud Rate Generator
- Sampling Circuit
- Asynchronous Transmitter
- Asynchronous Receiver

16.2.1 USART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 16-1. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (serial) Shift Register (TSR). The TSR register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register (TXREG). The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the STOP bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the STOP bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG register (if available). Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCY), the TXREG register is empty and flag bit TXIF (PIR registers) is set. This interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit TXIE (PIE registers). Flag bit TXIF will be set, regardless of the state of enable bit TXIE and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREG register. While flag bit TXIF indicated the status of the TXREG register, another bit TRMT (TXSTA register) shows the status of the TSR register. Status bit TRMT is a read only bit, which is set when the TSR register is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty.

> **Note 1:** The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.
>
> **2:** Flag bit TXIF is set when enable bit TXEN is set.

Steps to follow when setting up an Asynchronous Transmission:

1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set transmit bit TX9. Can be used as address/data bit.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN, which will also set bit TXIF.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Load data to the TXREG register (starts transmission).

FIGURE 16-1: USART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM

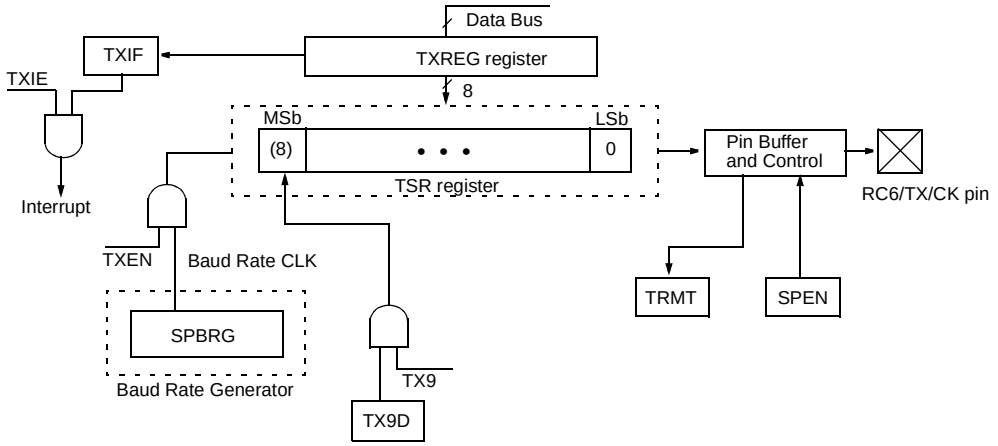


FIGURE 16-2: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

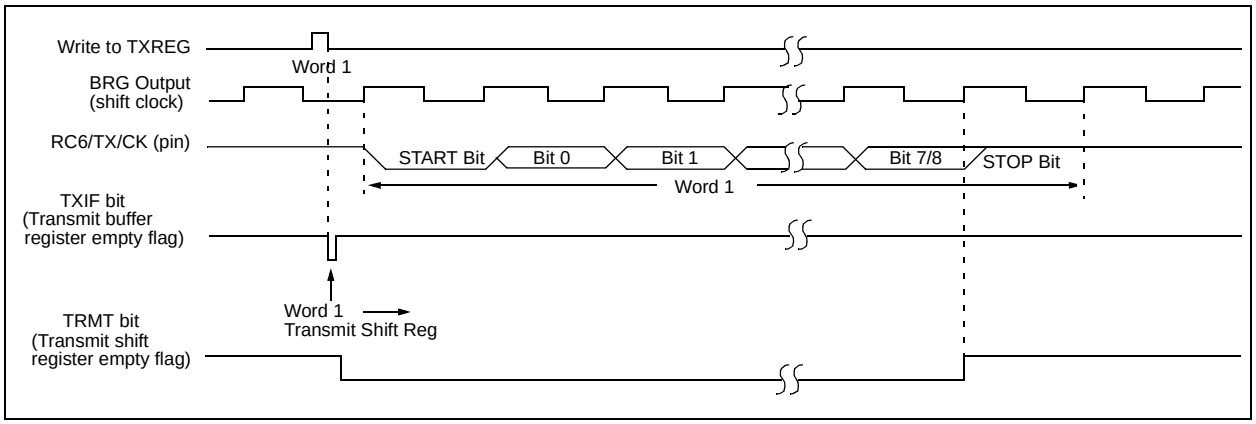
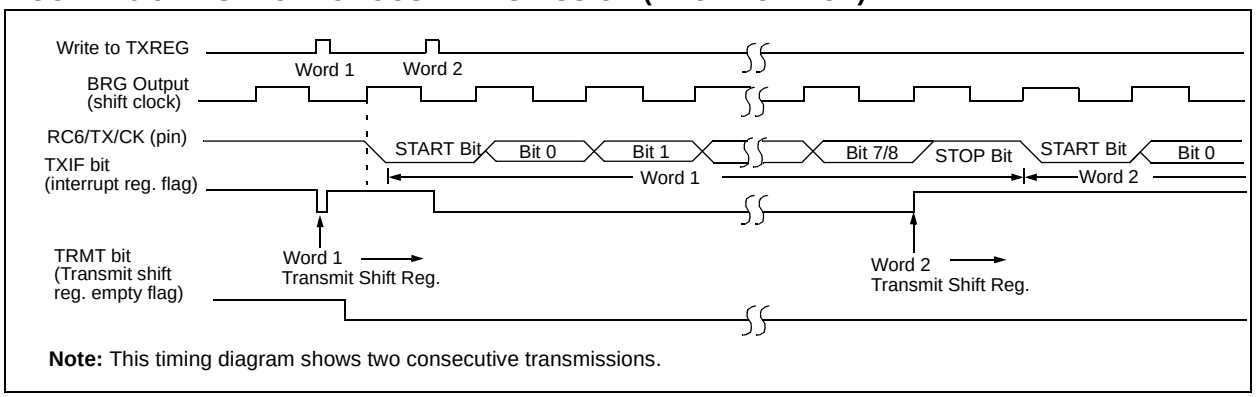


FIGURE 16-3: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (BACK TO BACK)



Note: This timing diagram shows two consecutive transmissions.

TABLE 16-6: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	ADDEN	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'.
Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Transmission.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.2.2 USART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 16-4. The data is received on the RC7/RX/DT pin and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high speed shifter, operating at x16 times the baud rate, whereas the main receive serial shifter operates at the bit rate or at FOSC. This mode would typically be used in RS-232 systems.

Steps to follow when setting up an Asynchronous Reception:

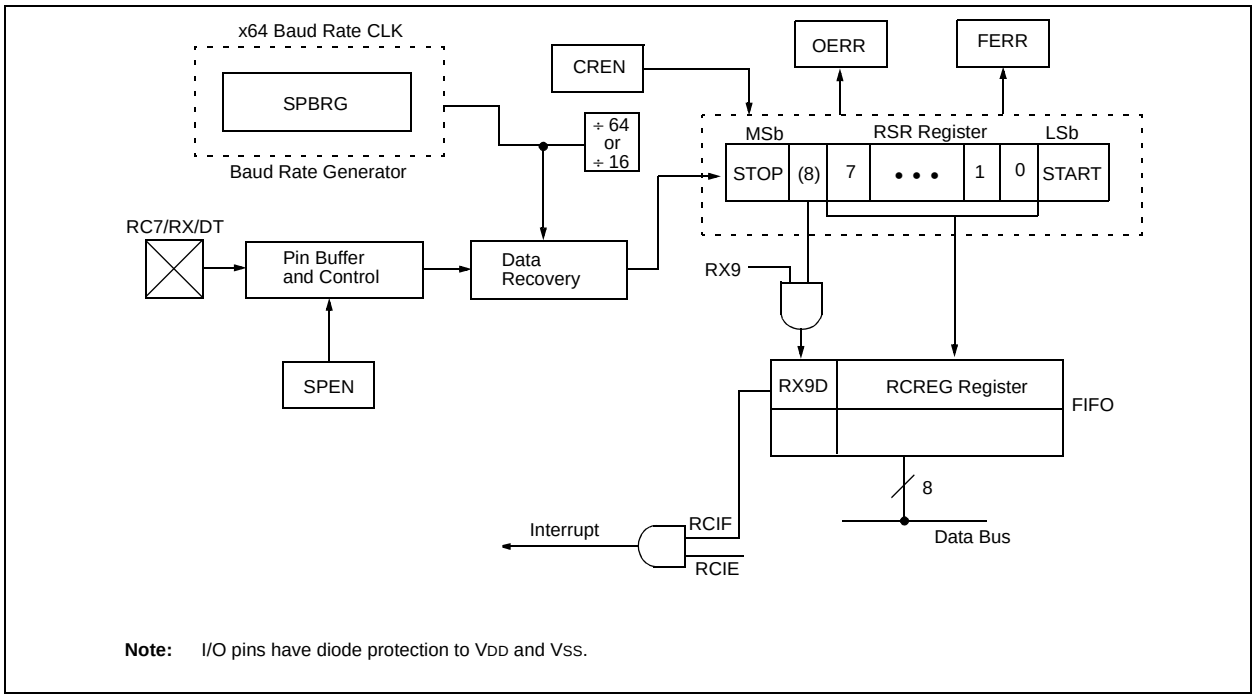
1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high speed baud rate is desired, set bit BRGH (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing bit SYNC and setting bit SPEN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
5. Enable the reception by setting bit CREN.
6. Flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE was set.
7. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
8. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
9. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing enable bit CREN.

16.2.3 SETTING UP 9-BIT MODE WITH ADDRESS DETECT

This mode would typically be used in RS-485 systems. Steps to follow when setting up an Asynchronous Reception with Address Detect Enable:

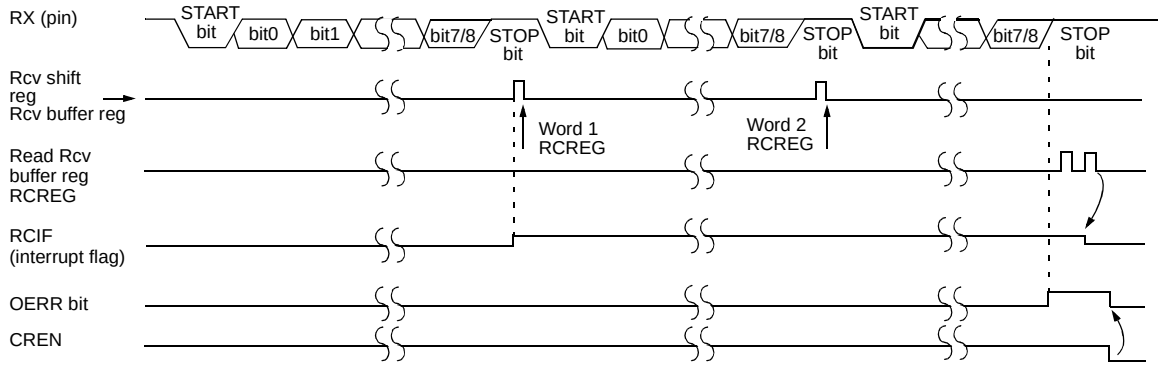
1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate. If a high speed baud rate is required, set the BRGH bit.
2. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing the SYNC bit and setting the SPEN bit.
3. If interrupts are required, set the RCEN bit and select the desired priority level with the RCIP bit.
4. Set the RX9 bit to enable 9-bit reception.
5. Set the ADDEN bit to enable address detect.
6. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
7. The RCIF bit will be set when reception is complete. The interrupt will be acknowledged if the RCIE and GIE bits are set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to determine if any error occurred during reception, as well as read bit 9 of data (if applicable).
9. Read RCREG to determine if the device is being addressed.
10. If any error occurred, clear the CREN bit.
11. If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow all received data into the receive buffer and interrupt the CPU.

FIGURE 16-4: USART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: I/O pins have diode protection to VDD and VSS.

FIGURE 16-5: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION



Note: This timing diagram shows three words appearing on the RX input. The RCREG (receive buffer) is read after the third word, causing the OERR (overrun) bit to be set.

TABLE 16-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	ADDEN	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Asynchronous Reception.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.3 USART Synchronous Master Mode

In Synchronous Master mode, the data is transmitted in a half-duplex manner (i.e., transmission and reception do not occur at the same time). When transmitting data, the reception is inhibited and vice versa. Synchronous mode is entered by setting bit SYNC (TXSTA register). In addition, enable bit SPEN (RCSTA register) is set, in order to configure the RC6/TX/CK and RC7/RX/DT I/O pins to CK (clock) and DT (data) lines, respectively. The Master mode indicates that the processor transmits the master clock on the CK line. The Master mode is entered by setting bit CSRC (TXSTA register).

16.3.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

The USART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 16-1. The heart of the transmitter is the Transmit (serial) Shift register (TSR). The shift register obtains its data from the Read/Write Transmit Buffer register (TXREG). The TXREG register is loaded with data in software. The TSR register is not loaded until the last bit has been transmitted from the previous load. As soon as the last bit is transmitted, the TSR is loaded with new data from the TXREG (if available). Once the TXREG register transfers the data to the TSR register (occurs in one TCY), the TXREG is empty and interrupt bit TXIF (PIR registers) is set. The interrupt can be enabled/disabled by setting/clearing enable bit TXIE (PIE registers). Flag bit TXIF will be set, regardless of the state of enable bit TXIE, and cannot be cleared in software. It will reset only when new data is loaded into the TXREG register. While flag bit TXIF indicates the status of the TXREG register, another bit TRMT (TXSTA register) shows the status of the TSR register. TRMT is a read only bit, which is set when the TSR is empty. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user has to poll this bit in order to determine if the TSR register is empty. The TSR is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

Steps to follow when setting up a Synchronous Master Transmission:

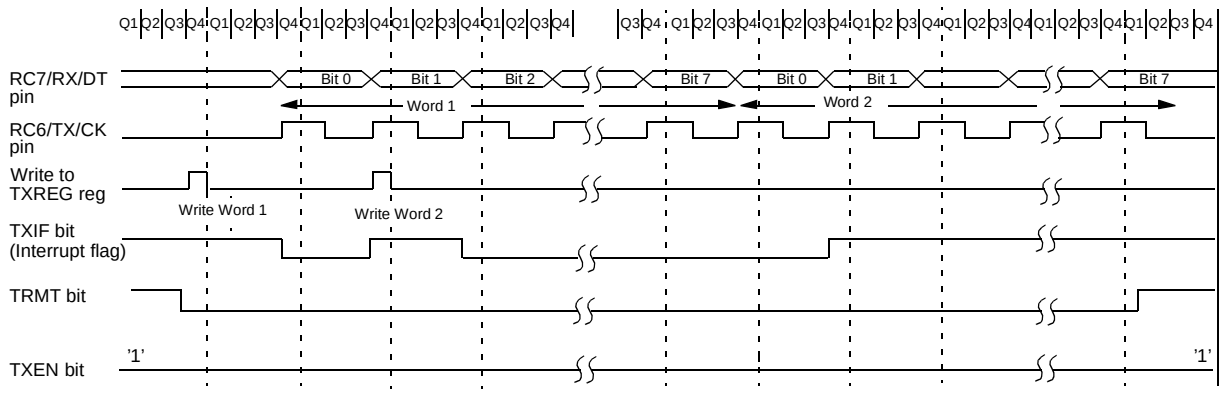
1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN, and CSRC.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.

TABLE 16-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	ADDEN	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

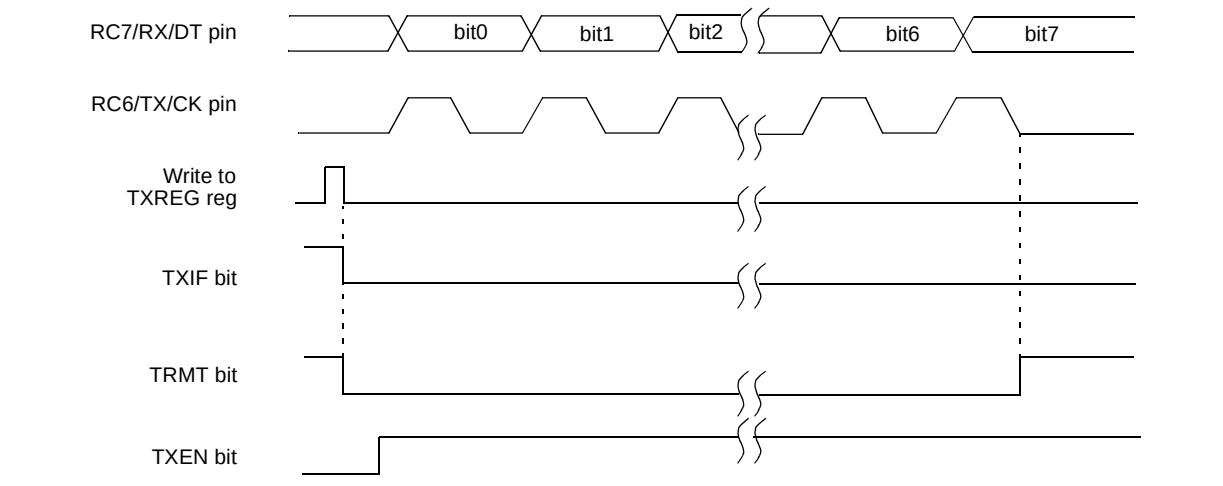
Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Transmission.

FIGURE 16-6: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION



Note: Sync Master mode; SPBRG = '0'; continuous transmission of two 8-bit words.

FIGURE 16-7: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

16.3.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Once Synchronous Master mode is selected, reception is enabled by setting either enable bit SREN (RCSTA register), or enable bit CREN (RCSTA register). Data is sampled on the RC7/RX/DT pin on the falling edge of the clock. If enable bit SREN is set, only a single word is received. If enable bit CREN is set, the reception is continuous until CREN is cleared. If both bits are set, then CREN takes precedence.

Steps to follow when setting up a Synchronous Master Reception:

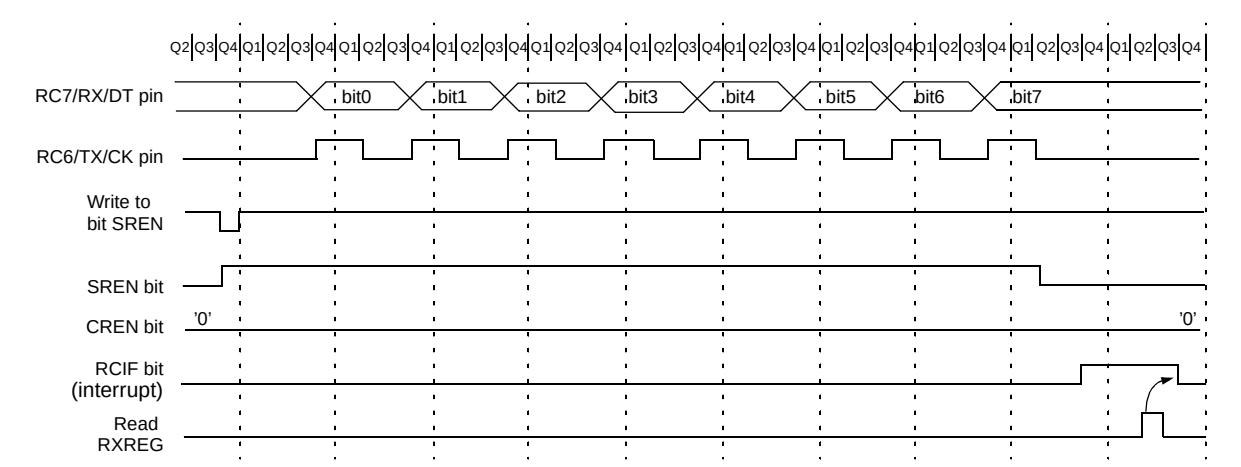
1. Initialize the SPBRG register for the appropriate baud rate (Section 16.1).
2. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC.
3. Ensure bits CREN and SREN are clear.
4. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
5. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
6. If a single reception is required, set bit SREN. For continuous reception, set bit CREN.
7. Interrupt flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete and an interrupt will be generated if the enable bit RCIE was set.
8. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
9. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
10. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.

TABLE 16-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	ADDEN	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Master Reception.

FIGURE 16-8: SYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION (MASTER MODE, SREN)



Note: Timing diagram demonstrates SYNC Master mode with bit SREN = '1' and bit BRGH = '0'.

16.4 USART Synchronous Slave Mode

Synchronous Slave mode differs from the Master mode, in that the shift clock is supplied externally at the RC6/TX/CK pin (instead of being supplied internally in Master mode). This allows the device to transfer or receive data while in SLEEP mode. Slave mode is entered by clearing bit CSRC (TXSTA register).

16.4.1 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMIT

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes are identical, except in the case of the SLEEP mode.

If two words are written to the TXREG and then the `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the following will occur:

a) The first word will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.
b) The second word will remain in TXREG register.
c) Flag bit TXIF will not be set.
d) When the first word has been shifted out of TSR, the TXREG register will transfer the second word to the TSR and flag bit TXIF will be set.
e) If enable bit TXIE is set, the interrupt will wake the chip from SLEEP. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

Steps to follow when setting up a Synchronous Slave Transmission:

1. Enable the synchronous slave serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. Clear bits CREN and SREN.
3. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit TXIE.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set bit TX9.
5. Enable the transmission by setting enable bit TXEN.
6. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in bit TX9D.
7. Start transmission by loading data to the TXREG register.

16.4.2 USART SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical, except in the case of the SLEEP mode and bit SREN, which is a "don't care" in Slave mode.

If receive is enabled by setting bit CREN prior to the `SLEEP` instruction, then a word may be received during SLEEP. On completely receiving the word, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCREG register, and if enable bit RCIE bit is set, the interrupt generated will wake the chip from SLEEP. If the global interrupt is enabled, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

Steps to follow when setting up a Synchronous Slave Reception:

1. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC and SPEN and clearing bit CSRC.
2. If interrupts are desired, set enable bit RCIE.
3. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
4. To enable reception, set enable bit CREN.
5. Flag bit RCIF will be set when reception is complete. An interrupt will be generated if enable bit RCIE was set.
6. Read the RCSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
7. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCREG register.
8. If any error occurred, clear the error by clearing bit CREN.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 16-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
TXREG	USART Transmit Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	ADDEN	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave transmission.

TABLE 16-11: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/GIEH	PEIE/GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	—	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 -00x	0000 -00x
RCREG	USART Receive Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	ADDEN	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
SPBRG	Baud Rate Generator Register								0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Synchronous Slave reception.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.0 CAN MODULE

17.1 Overview

The Controller Area Network (CAN) module is a serial interface, useful for communicating with other peripherals or microcontroller devices. This interface/protocol was designed to allow communications within noisy environments.

The CAN module is a communication controller implementing the CAN 2.0 A/B protocol as defined in the BOSCH specification. The module will support CAN 1.2, CAN 2.0A, CAN2.0B Passive, and CAN 2.0B Active versions of the protocol. The module implementation is a Full CAN system. The CAN specification is not covered within this data sheet. The reader may refer to the BOSCH CAN specification for further details.

The module features are as follows:

- Implementation of the CAN protocol CAN1.2, CAN2.0A and CAN2.0B
- Standard and extended data frames
- 0 - 8 bytes data length
- Programmable bit rate up to 1 Mbit/sec
- Support for remote frames
- Double buffered receiver with two prioritized received message storage buffers
- 6 full (standard/extended identifier) acceptance filters, 2 associated with the high priority receive buffer, and 4 associated with the low priority receive buffer
- 2 full acceptance filter masks, one each associated with the high and low priority receive buffers
- Three transmit buffers with application specified prioritization and abort capability
- Programmable wake-up functionality with integrated low-pass filter
- Programmable Loopback mode supports self-test operation
- Signaling via interrupt capabilities for all CAN receiver and transmitter error states
- Programmable clock source
- Programmable link to timer module for time-stamping and network synchronization
- Low power SLEEP mode

17.1.1 OVERVIEW OF THE MODULE

The CAN bus module consists of a Protocol Engine and message buffering and control. The CAN protocol engine handles all functions for receiving and transmitting messages on the CAN bus. Messages are transmitted by first loading the appropriate data registers. Status and errors can be checked by reading the appropriate registers. Any message detected on the CAN bus is checked for errors and then matched against filters to see if it should be received and stored in one of the 2 receive registers.

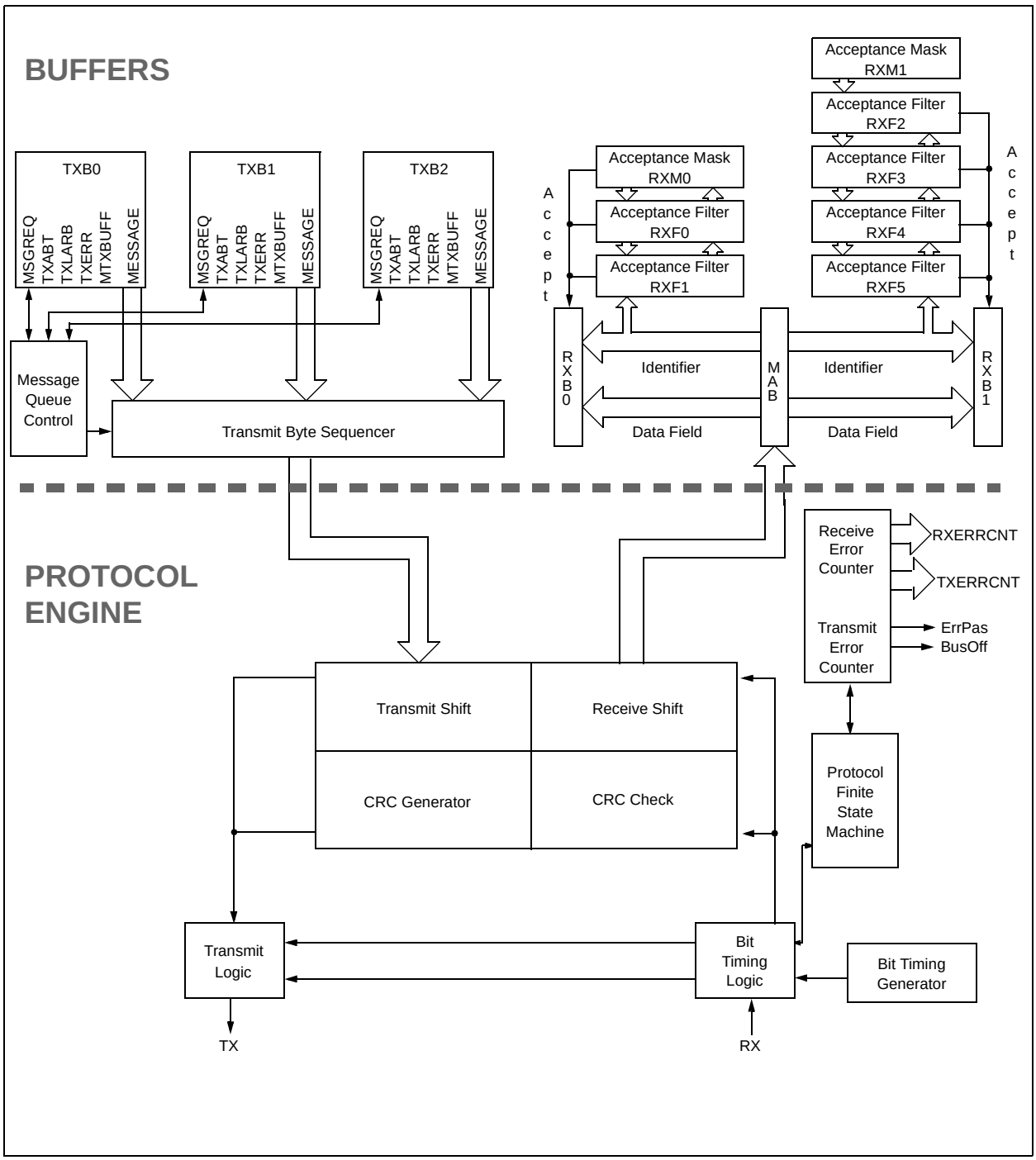
The CAN Module supports the following Frame types:

- Standard Data Frame
- Extended Data Frame
- Remote Frame
- Error Frame
- Overload Frame Reception
- Interframe Space

17.1.2 TRANSMIT/RECEIVE BUFFERS

The PIC18CXX8 has three transmit and two receive buffers, two acceptance masks (one for each receive buffer), and a total of six acceptance filters. Figure 17-1 is a block diagram of these buffers and their connection to the protocol engine.

FIGURE 17-1: CAN BUFFERS AND PROTOCOL ENGINE BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.2 Control Registers for the CAN Module

Note:	Not all CAN registers are available in the access bank.

There are many registers associated with the CAN module. Descriptions of these registers are grouped into sections. These sections are:

- Control and Status Registers
- Transmit Buffer Registers
- Receive Buffer Registers
- Baud Rate Control Registers
- Interrupt Status and Control Registers

17.2.1 CAN CONTROL AND STATUS REGISTERS

This section shows the CAN Control and Status registers.

REGISTER 17-1: CANCON – CAN CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0
REQOP2	REQOP1	REQOP0	ABAT	WIN2	WIN1	WIN0	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **REQOP2:REQOP0:** Request CAN Operation Mode bits
`1xx` = Request Configuration mode
`011` = Request Listen Only mode
`010` = Request Loopback mode
`001` = Request Disable mode
`000` = Request Normal mode

bit 4 **ABAT:** Abort All Pending Transmissions bit
1 = Abort all pending transmissions (in all transmit buffers)
0 = Transmissions proceeding as normal

bit 3-1 **WIN2:WIN0:** Window Address bits

This selects which of the CAN buffers to switch into the access bank area. This allows access to the buffer registers from any data memory bank. After a frame has caused an interrupt, the ICODE2:ICODE0 bits can be copied to the WIN2:WIN0 bits to select the correct buffer. See Example 17-1 for code example.
`111` = Receive Buffer 0
`110` = Receive Buffer 0
`101` = Receive Buffer 1
`100` = Transmit Buffer 0
`011` = Transmit Buffer 1
`010` = Transmit Buffer 2
`001` = Receive Buffer 0
`000` = Receive Buffer 0

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-2: CANSTAT – CAN STATUS REGISTER

R-1	R-0	R-0	U-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	U-0
OPMODE2	OPMODE1	OPMODE0	—	ICODE2	ICODE1	ICODE0	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **OPMODE2:OPMODE0:** Operation Mode Status bits
`111` = Reserved
`110` = Reserved
`101` = Reserved
`100` = Configuration mode
`011` = Listen Only mode
`010` = Loopback mode
`001` = Disable mode
`000` = Normal mode

> **Note:** Before the device goes into SLEEP mode, select Disable mode.

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 3-1 **ICODE2:ICODE0:** Interrupt Code bits
When an interrupt occurs, a prioritized coded interrupt value will be present in the ICODE2:ICODE0 bits. These codes indicate the source of the interrupt. The ICODE2:ICODE0 bits can be copied to the WIN2:WIN0 bits to select the correct buffer to map into the Access Bank area. See Example 17-1 for code example.
`111` = Wake-up on Interrupt
`110` = RXB0 Interrupt
`101` = RXB1 Interrupt
`100` = TXB0 Interrupt
`011` = TXB1 Interrupt
`010` = TXB2 Interrupt
`001` = Error Interrupt
`000` = No Interrupt

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

EXAMPLE 17-1: WIN AND ICODE BITS USAGE IN INTERRUPT SERVICE ROUTINE TO ACCESS TX/RX BUFFERS

```
    ; Save application required context.

    ; Poll interrupt flags and determine source of interrupt

    ; This was found to be CAN interrupt
    ; TempCANCON and TempCANSTAT are variables defined in Access Bank low
    movff   CANCON, TempCANCON            ; Save CANCON.WIN bits
                                          ; This is required to prevent CANCON
                                          ; from corrupting CAN buffer access
                                          ; in-progress while this interrupt
                                          ; occurred

    movff   CANSTAT, TempCANSTAT          ; Save CANSTAT register
                                          ; This is required to make sure that
                                          ; we use same CANSTAT value rather
                                          ; than one changed by another CAN
                                          ; interrupt.

    movf    TempCANSTAT, W                ; Retrieve ICODE bits
    andlw   b'00001110'
    addwf   PCL, F                        ; Perform computed GOTO
                                          ; to corresponding interrupt cause

    bra     NoInterrupt                   ; 000 = No interrupt
    bra     ErrorInterrupt                ; 001 = Error interrupt
    bra     TXB2Interrupt                 ; 010 = TXB2 interrupt
    bra     TXB1Interrupt                 ; 011 = TXB1 interrupt
    bra     TXB0Interrupt                 ; 100 = TXB0 interrupt
    bra     RXB1Interrupt                 ; 101 = RXB1 interrupt
    bra     RXB0Interrupt                 ; 110 = RXB0 interrupt
                                          ; 111 = Wake-up on interrupt

WakeupInterrupt
    bcf     PIR3, WAKIF                   ; Clear the interrupt flag
    ;
    ; User code to handle wake-up procedure
    ;
    ;
    ; Continue checking for other interrupt source or return from here
    …

NoInterrupt
    …                                     ; PC should never vector here. User may
                                          ; place a trap such as infinite loop or pin/port
                                          ; indication to catch this error.

ErrorInterrupt
    bcf     PIR3, ERRIF                   ; Clear the interrupt flag
    …                                     ; Handle error.
    retfie

TXB2Interrupt
    bcf     PIR3, TXB2IF                  ; Clear the interrupt flag
    goto    AccessBuffer

TXB1Interrupt
    bcf     PIR3, TXB1IF                  ; Clear the interrupt flag
    goto    AccessBuffer

TXB0Interrupt
    bcf     PIR3, TXB0IF                  ; Clear the interrupt flag
    goto    AccessBuffer

RXB1Interrupt
    bcf     PIR3, RXB1IF                  ; Clear the interrupt flag
    goto    Accessbuffer
```

```
RXB0Interrupt
    bcf     PIR3, RXB0IF                ; Clear the interrupt flag
    goto    AccessBuffer

AccessBuffer                            ; This is either TX or RX interrupt
    ; Copy CANCON.ICODE bits to CANSTAT.WIN bits
    movf    TempCANCON, W               ; Clear CANCON.WIN bits before copying
                                        ; new ones.
    andlw   b'11110001'                 ; Use previously saved CANCON value to
                                        ; make sure same value.
    movwf   TempCANCON                  ; Copy masked value back to TempCANCON

    movf    TempCANSTAT, W              ; Retrieve ICODE bits
    andlw   b'00001110'                 ; Use previously saved CANSTAT value
                                        ; to make sure same value.

    iorwf   TempCANCON                  ; Copy ICODE bits to WIN bits.
    movff   TempCANCON, CANCON          ; Copy the result to actual CANCON

    ; Access current buffer…
    ; Your code

    ; Restore CANCON.WIN bits
    movf    CANCON, W                   ; Preserve current non WIN bits
    andlw   b'11110001'
    iorwf   TempCANCON                  ; Restore original WIN bits

    ; Do not need to restore CANSTAT - it is read-only register.

    ; Return from interrupt or check for another module interrupt source
```

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-3: COMSTAT – COMMUNICATION STATUS REGISTER

R/C-0	R/C-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
RXB0OVFL	RXB1OVFL	TXBO	TXBP	RXBP	TXWARN	RXWARN	EWARN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RXB0OVFL:** Receive Buffer 0 Overflow bit
1 = Receive Buffer 0 overflowed
0 = Receive Buffer 0 has not overflowed

bit 6 **RXB1OVFL:** Receive Buffer 1 Overflow bit
1 = Receive Buffer 1 overflowed
0 = Receive Buffer 1 has not overflowed

bit 5 **TXB0:** Transmitter Bus Off bit
1 = Transmit Error Counter >255
0 = Transmit Error Counter ≤ 255

bit 4 **TXBP:** Transmitter Bus Passive bit
1 = Transmission Error Counter >127
0 = Transmission Error Counter ≤127

bit 3 **RXBP:** Receiver Bus Passive bit
1 = Receive Error Counter >127
0 = Receive Error Counter ≤127

bit 2 **TXWARN:** Transmitter Warning bit
1 = Transmit Error Counter >95
0 = Transmit Error Counter ≤95

bit 1 **RXWARN:** Receiver Warning bit
1 = Receive Error Counter >95
0 = Receive Error Counter ≤ 95

bit 0 **EWARN:** Error Warning bit
This bit is a flag of the RXWARN and TXWARN bits
1 = The RXWARN or the TXWARN bits are set
0 = Neither the RXWARN or the TXWARN bits are set

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

17.2.2 CAN TRANSMIT BUFFER REGISTERS

This section describes the CAN Transmit Buffer Register and the associated Transmit Buffer Control Registers.

REGISTER 17-4: TXBnCON – TRANSMIT BUFFER n CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R/W-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	TXABT	TXLARB	TXERR	TXREQ	—	TXPRI1	TXPRI0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 6 **TXABT:** Transmission Aborted Status bit
1 = Message was aborted
0 = Message was not aborted

bit 5 **TXLARB:** Transmission Lost Arbitration Status bit
1 = Message lost arbitration while being sent
0 = Message did not lose arbitration while being sent

bit 4 **TXERR:** Transmission Error Detected Status bit
1 = A bus error occurred while the message was being sent
0 = A bus error did not occur while the message was being sent

bit 3 **TXREQ:** Transmit Request Status bit
1 = Requests sending a message. Clears the TXABT, TLARB, and TXERR bits
0 = Automatically cleared when the message is successfully sent

> **Note:** Clearing this bit in software, while the bit is set, will request a message abort.

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 1-0 **TXPRI1:TXPRI0:** Transmit Priority bits
11 = Priority Level 3 (Highest Priority)
10 = Priority Level 2
01 = Priority Level 1
00 = Priority Level 0 (Lowest Priority)

> **Note:** These bits set the order in which Transmit buffer will be transferred. They do not alter CAN message identifier.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-5: TXBnSIDH: TRANSMIT BUFFER n STANDARD IDENTIFIER HIGH BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **SID10:SID3:** Standard Identifier bits, if EXIDE = 0 (TXBnSID Register).
Extended Identifier bits EID28:EID21, if EXIDE = 1.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-6: TXBnSIDL – TRANSMIT BUFFER n STANDARD IDENTIFIER LOW BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDE	—	EID17	EID16
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **SID2:SID0:** Standard Identifier bits, if EXIDE = 0.
Extended Identifier bits EID20:EID18, if EXIDE = 1.

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 3 **EXIDE:** Extended Identifier Enable bit
1 = Message will transmit Extended ID, SID10:SID0 becomes EID28:EID18
0 = Message will transmit Standard ID, EID17:EID0 are ignored

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 1-0 **EID17:EID16:** Extended Identifier bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-7: TXBnEIDH – TRANSMIT BUFFER n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER HIGH BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **EID15:EID8:** Extended Identifier bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-8: TXBnEIDL – TRANSMIT BUFFER n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER LOW BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **EID7:EID0:** Extended Identifier bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-9: TXBnDm – TRANSMIT BUFFER n DATA FIELD BYTE m REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
TXBnDm7	TXBnDm6	TXBnDm5	TXBnDm4	TXBnDm3	TXBnDm2	TXBnDm1	TXBnDm0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 1-0 **TXBnDm7:TXBnDm0:** Transmit Buffer n Data Field Byte m bits (where 0≤n<3 and 0<m<8)

Each Transmit Buffer has an array of registers. For example, Transmit buffer 0 has 7 registers: TXB0D0 to TXB0D7.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-10: TXBnDLC – TRANSMIT BUFFER n DATA LENGTH CODE REGISTER

U-0	R/W-x	U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
—	TXRTR	—	—	DLC3	DLC2	DLC1	DLC0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 6 **TXRTR:** Transmission Frame Remote Transmission Request bit
1 = Transmitted message will have TXRTR bit set
0 = Transmitted message will have TXRTR bit cleared.

bit 5-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 3-0 **DLC3:DLC0:** Data Length Code bits
1111 = Reserved
1110 = Reserved
1101 = Reserved
1100 = Reserved
1011 = Reserved
1010 = Reserved
1001 = Reserved
1000 = Data Length = 8 bytes
0111 = Data Length = 7 bytes
0110 = Data Length = 6 bytes
0101 = Data Length = 5 bytes
0100 = Data Length = 4 bytes
0011 = Data Length = 3 bytes
0010 = Data Length = 2 bytes
0001 = Data Length = 1 bytes
0000 = Data Length = 0 bytes

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-11: TXERRCNT – TRANSMIT ERROR COUNT REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
TEC7	TEC6	TEC5	TEC4	TEC3	TEC2	TEC1	TEC0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **TEC7:TEC0:** Transmit Error Counter bits
This register contains a value which is derived from the rate at which errors occur. When the error count overflows, the bus off state occurs. When the bus has 128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits, the counter value is cleared.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

17.2.3 CAN RECEIVE BUFFER REGISTERS

This section shows the Receive Buffer registers with its associated control registers.

REGISTER 17-12: RXB0CON – RECEIVE BUFFER 0 CONTROL REGISTER

R/C-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0
RXFUL	RXM1	RXM0	—	RXRTRRO	RXB0DBEN	JTOFF	FILHIT0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RXFUL:** Receive Full Status bit
1 = Receive buffer contains a received message
0 = Receive buffer is open to receive a new message

> **Note:** This bit is set by the CAN module and should be cleared by software after the buffer is read.

bit 6-5 **RXM1:RXM0:** Receive Buffer Mode bits
11 = Receive all messages (including those with errors)
10 = Receive only valid messages with extended identifier
01 = Receive only valid messages with standard identifier
00 = Receive all valid messages

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 3 **RXRTRRO:** Receive Remote Transfer Request Read Only bit
1 = Remote transfer request
0 = No remote transfer request

bit 2 **RXB0DBEN:** Receive Buffer 0 Double Buffer Enable bit
1 = Receive Buffer 0 overflow will write to Receive Buffer 1
0 = No Receive Buffer 0 overflow to Receive Buffer 1

bit 1 **JTOFF:** Jump Table Offset bit (read only copy of RX0DBEN)
1 = Allows Jump Table offset between 6 and 7
0 = Allows Jump Table offset between 1 and 0

> **Note:** This bit allows same filter jump table for both RXB0CON and RXB1CON.

bit 0 **FILHIT0:** Filter Hit bit
This bit indicates which acceptance filter enabled the message reception into receive buffer 0
1 = Acceptance Filter 1 (RXF1)
0 = Acceptance Filter 0 (RXF0)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-13: RXB1CON – RECEIVE BUFFER 1 CONTROL REGISTER

R/C-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
RXFUL	RXM1	RXM0	—	RXRTRRO	FILHIT2	FILHIT1	FILHIT0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **RXFUL:** Receive Full Status bit
1 = Receive buffer contains a received message
0 = Receive buffer is open to receive a new message

> **Note:** This bit is set by the CAN module and should be cleared by software after the buffer is read.

bit 6-5 **RXM1:RXM0:** Receive Buffer Mode bits
11 = Receive all messages (including those with errors)
10 = Receive only valid messages with extended identifier
01 = Receive only valid messages with standard identifier
00 = Receive all valid messages

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 3 **RXRTRRO:** Receive Remote Transfer Request bit (read only)
1 = Remote transfer request
0 = No remote transfer request

bit 2-0 **FILHIT2:FILHIT0:** Filter Hit bits
These bits indicate which acceptance filter enabled the last message reception into Receive Buffer 1.
111 = Reserved
110 = Reserved
101 = Acceptance Filter 5 (RXF5)
100 = Acceptance Filter 4 (RXF4)
011 = Acceptance Filter 3 (RXF3)
010 = Acceptance Filter 2 (RXF2)
001 = Acceptance Filter 1 (RXF1) only possible when RXB0DBEN bit is set
000 = Acceptance Filter 0 (RXF0) only possible when RXB0DBEN bit is set

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-14: RXBnSIDH – RECEIVE BUFFER n STANDARD IDENTIFIER HIGH BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **SID10:SID3:** Standard Identifier bits, if EXID = 0 (RXBnSIDL Register).
Extended Identifier bits EID28:EID21, if EXID = 1.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-15: RXBnSIDL – RECEIVE BUFFER n STANDARD IDENTIFIER LOW BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID2	SID1	SID0	SRR	EXID	—	EID17	EID16
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **SID2:SID0:** Standard Identifier bits, if EXID = 0.
Extended Identifier bits EID20:EID18, if EXID = 1.

bit 4 **SRR:** Substitute Remove Request bit (only when EXID = ’1’)
1 = Remote transfer request occurred
0 = No remote transfer request occurred

bit 3 **EXID:** Extended Identifier bit
1 = Received message is an Extended Data Frame, SID10:SID0 are EID28:EID18
0 = Received message is a Standard Data Frame

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 1-0 **EID17:EID16:** Extended Identifier bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-16: RXBnEIDH – RECEIVE BUFFER n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER HIGH BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **EID15:EID8:** Extended Identifier bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-17: RXBnEIDL – RECEIVE BUFFER n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER LOW BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **EID7:EID0:** Extended Identifier bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-18: RXBnDLC – RECEIVE BUFFER n DATA LENGTH CODE REGISTER

U-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
—	RXRTR	RB1	RB0	DLC3	DLC2	DLC1	DLC0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 6 **RXRTR:** Receiver Remote Transmission Request bit
`1` = Remote transfer request
`0` = No remote transfer request

bit 5 **RB1:** Reserved bit 1
Reserved by CAN Spec and read as ’0’

bit 4 **RB0:** Reserved bit 0
Reserved by CAN Spec and read as ’0’

bit 3-0 **DLC3:DLC0:** Data Length Code bits
`1111` = Invalid
`1110` = Invalid
`1101` = Invalid
`1100` = Invalid
`1011` = Invalid
`1010` = Invalid
`1001` = Invalid
`1000` = Data Length = 8 bytes
`0111` = Data Length = 7 bytes
`0110` = Data Length = 6 bytes
`0101` = Data Length = 5 bytes
`0100` = Data Length = 4 bytes
`0011` = Data Length = 3 bytes
`0010` = Data Length = 2 bytes
`0001` = Data Length = 1 bytes
`0000` = Data Length = 0 bytes

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-19: RXBnDm – RECEIVE BUFFER n DATA FIELD BYTE m REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
RXBnDm7	RXBnDm6	RXBnDm5	RXBnDm4	RXBnDm3	RXBnDm2	RXBnDm1	RXBnDm0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **RXBnDm7:RXBnDm0:** Receive Buffer n Data Field Byte m bits (where 0≤n<1 and 0<m<7)
Each Receive Buffer has an array of registers. For example, Receive buffer 0 has 8 registers: RXB0D0 to RXB0D7.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-20: RXERRCNT – RECEIVE ERROR COUNT REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0	R-0
REC7	REC6	REC5	REC4	REC3	REC2	REC1	REC0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **REC7:REC0:** Receive Error Counter bits

This register contains the Receive Error value as defined by the CAN specifications.

When RXERRCNT > 127, the module will go into an error passive state. RXERRCNT does not have the ability to put the module in “Bus Off” state.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.2.4 MESSAGE ACCEPTANCE FILTERS

This subsection describes the Message Acceptance filters.

REGISTER 17-21: RXFnSIDH – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE FILTER n STANDARD IDENTIFIER FILTER HIGH BYTE

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **SID10:SID3:** Standard Identifier Filter bits, if EXIDEN = 0.
Extended Identifier Filter bits EID28:EID21, if EXIDEN = 1,

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-22: RXFnSIDL – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE FILTER n STANDARD IDENTIFIER FILTER LOW BYTE

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-x	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID2	SID1	SID0	—	EXIDEN	—	EID17	EID16
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **SID2:SID0:** Standard Identifier Filter bits, if EXIDEN = 0.
Extended Identifier Filter bits EID20:EID18, if EXIDEN = 0.

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 3 **EXIDEN:** Extended Identifier Filter Enable bit
1 = Filter will only accept Extended ID messages
0 = Filter will only accept Standard ID messages

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 1-0 **EID17:EID16:** Extended Identifier Filter bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-23: RXFnEIDH – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE FILTER n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER HIGH BYTE

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **EID15:EID8:** Extended Identifier Filter bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-24: RXFnEIDL – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE FILTER n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER LOW BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **EID7:EID0:** Extended Identifier Filter bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-25: RXMnSIDH – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE MASK n STANDARD IDENTIFIER MASK HIGH BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID10	SID9	SID8	SID7	SID6	SID5	SID4	SID3
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **SID10:SID3:** Standard Identifier Mask bits, or Extended Identifier Mask bits EID28:EID21

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-26: RXMnSIDL – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE MASK n STANDARD IDENTIFIER MASK LOW BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-x	R/W-x
SID2	SID1	SID0	—	—	—	EID17	EID16
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **SID2:SID0:** Standard Identifier Mask bits, or Extended Identifier Mask bits EID20:EID18

bit 4-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 1-0 **EID17:EID16:** Extended Identifier Mask bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-27: RXMnEIDH – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE MASK n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER MASK HIGH BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID15	EID14	EID13	EID12	EID11	EID10	EID9	EID8
bit 7							bit 0

bit 1-0 **EID15:EID8:** Extended Identifier Mask bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-28: RXMnEIDL – RECEIVE ACCEPTANCE MASK n EXTENDED IDENTIFIER MASK LOW BYTE REGISTER

R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x	R/W-x
EID7	EID6	EID5	EID4	EID3	EID2	EID1	EID0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 1-0 **EID7:EID0:** Extended Identifier Mask bits

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

17.2.5 CAN BAUD RATE REGISTERS

This subsection describes the CAN Baud Rate registers.

REGISTER 17-29: BRGCON1 – BAUD RATE CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
SJW1	SJW0	BRP5	BRP4	BRP3	BRP2	BRP1	BRP0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **SJW1:SJW0:** Synchronized Jump Width bits
`11` = Synchronization Jump Width Time = 4 x TQ
`10` = Synchronization Jump Width Time = 3 x TQ
`01` = Synchronization Jump Width Time = 2 x TQ
`00` = Synchronization Jump Width Time = 1 x TQ

bit 5-0 **BRP5:BRP0:** Baud Rate Prescaler bits
`111111` = TQ = (2 x 64)/FOSC
`111110` = TQ = (2 x 63)/FOSC
:
:
`000001` = TQ = (2 x 2)/FOSC
`000000` = TQ = (2 x 1)/FOSC

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: This register is only accessible in Configuration mode.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-30: BRGCON2 – BAUD RATE CONTROL REGISTER 2

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
SEG2PHTS	SAM	SEG1PH2	SEG1PH1	SEG1PH0	PRSEG2	PRSEG1	PRSEG0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **SEG2PHTS:** Phase Segment 2 Time Select bit
`1` = Freely programmable
`0` = Maximum of PHEG1 or Information Processing Time (IPT), whichever is greater

bit 6 **SAM:** Sample of the CAN Bus Line bit
`1` = Bus line is sampled three times prior to the sample point
`0` = Bus line is sampled once at the sample point

bit 5-3 **SEG1PH2:SEG1PH0:** Phase Segment 1 bits
`111` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 8 x TQ
`110` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 7 x TQ
`101` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 6 x TQ
`100` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 5 x TQ
`011` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 4 x TQ
`010` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 3 x TQ
`001` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 2 x TQ
`000` = Phase Segment 1 Time = 1 x TQ

bit 2-0 **PRSEG2:PRSEG0:** Propagation Time Select bits
`111` = Propagation Time = 8 x TQ
`110` = Propagation Time = 7 x TQ
`101` = Propagation Time = 6 x TQ
`100` = Propagation Time = 5 x TQ
`011` = Propagation Time = 4 x TQ
`010` = Propagation Time = 3 x TQ
`001` = Propagation Time = 2 x TQ
`000` = Propagation Time = 1 x TQ

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: This register is only accessible in Configuration mode.

REGISTER 17-31: BRGCON3 – BAUD RATE CONTROL REGISTER 3

U-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	WAKFIL	—	—	—	SEG2PH2	SEG2PH1	SEG2PH0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 6 **WAKFIL:** Selects CAN Bus Line Filter for Wake-up bit
`1` = Use CAN bus line filter for wake-up
`0` = CAN bus line filter is not used for wake-up

bit 5-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 2-0 **SEG2PH2:SEG2PH0:** Phase Segment 2 Time Select bits
`111` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 8 x TQ
`110` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 7 x TQ
`101` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 6 x TQ
`100` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 5 x TQ
`011` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 4 x TQ
`010` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 3 x TQ
`001` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 2 x TQ
`000` = Phase Segment 2 Time = 1 x TQ

Note: Ignored if SEG2PHTS bit is clear.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.2.6 CAN MODULE I/O CONTROL REGISTER

This subsection describes the CAN Module I/O Control register.

REGISTER 17-32: CIOCON – CAN I/O CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
TX1SRC	TX1EN	ENDRHI	CANCAP	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **TX1SRC**: CAN TX1 Pin Data Source
1 = CAN TX1 pin will output the CAN clock
0 = CAN TX1 pin will output $\overline{\text{TXD}}$

bit 6 **TX1EN:** CAN TX1 Pin Enable
1 = CAN TX1 pin will output $\overline{\text{TXD}}$ or CAN clock
0 = CAN TX1 pin will have digital I/O function

bit 5 **ENDRHI:** Enable Drive High
1 = CAN TX0, CAN TX1 pins will drive V_{DD} when recessive
0 = CAN TX0, CAN TX1 pins will tri-state when recessive

bit 4 **CANCAP:** CAN Message Receive Capture Enable
1 = Enable CAN capture
0 = Disable CAN capture

bit 3-0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

17.2.7 CAN INTERRUPT REGISTERS

REGISTER 17-33: PIR3 – PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT FLAG REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
IRXIF	WAKIF	ERRIF	TXB2IF	TXB1IF	TXB0IF	RXB1IF	RXB0IF
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IRXIF:** CAN Invalid Received Message Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An invalid message has occurred on the CAN bus
0 = No invalid message on CAN bus

bit 6 **WAKIF:** CAN Bus Activity Wake-up Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Activity on CAN bus has occurred
0 = No activity on CAN bus

bit 5 **ERRIF:** CAN Bus Error Interrupt Flag bit
1 = An error has occurred in the CAN module (multiple sources)
0 = No CAN module errors

bit 4 **TXB2IF:** CAN Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Transmit Buffer 2 has completed transmission of a message, and may be re-loaded
0 = Transmit Buffer 2 has not completed transmission of a message

bit 3 **TXB1IF:** CAN Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Transmit Buffer 1 has completed transmission of a message, and may be re-loaded
0 = Transmit Buffer 1 has not completed transmission of a message

bit 2 **TXB0IF:** CAN Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Transmit Buffer 0 has completed transmission of a message, and may be re-loaded
0 = Transmit Buffer 0 has not completed transmission of a message

bit 1 **RXB1IF:** CAN Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Receive Buffer 1 has received a new message
0 = Receive Buffer 1 has not received a new message

bit 0 **RXB0IF:** CAN Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Receive Buffer 0 has received a new message
0 = Receive Buffer 0 has not received a new message

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 17-34: PIE3 – PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
IRXIE	WAKIE	ERRIE	TXB2IE	TXB1IE	TXB0IE	RXB1IE	RXB0IE
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IRXIE:** CAN Invalid Received Message Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable invalid message received interrupt
0 = Disable invalid message received interrupt

bit 6 **WAKIE:** CAN Bus Activity Wake-up Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable bus activity wake-up interrupt
0 = Disable bus activity wake-up interrupt

bit 5 **ERRIE:** CAN Bus Error Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable CAN bus error interrupt
0 = Disable CAN bus error interrupt

bit 4 **TXB2IE:** CAN Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable Transmit Buffer 2 interrupt
0 = Disable Transmit Buffer 2 interrupt

bit 3 **TXB1IE:** CAN Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable Transmit Buffer 1 interrupt
0 = Disable Transmit Buffer 1 interrupt

bit 2 **TXB0IE:** CAN Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable Transmit Buffer 0 interrupt
0 = Disable Transmit Buffer 0 interrupt

bit 1 **RXB1IE:** CAN Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable Receive Buffer 1 interrupt
0 = Disable Receive Buffer 1 interrupt

bit 0 **RXB0IE:** CAN Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enable Receive Buffer 0 interrupt
0 = Disable Receive Buffer 0 interrupt

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 17-35: IPR3 – PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
IRXIP	WAKIP	ERRIP	TXB2IP	TXB1IP	TXB0IP	RXB1IP	RXB0IP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **IRXIP:** CAN Invalid Received Message Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 6 **WAKIP:** CAN Bus Activity Wake-up Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 5 **ERRIP:** CAN bus Error Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 4 **TXB2IP:** CAN Transmit Buffer 2 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 3 **TXB1IP:** CAN Transmit Buffer 1 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 2 **TXB0IP:** CAN Transmit Buffer 0 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 1 **RXB1IP:** CAN Receive Buffer 1 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

bit 0 **RXB0IP:** CAN Receive Buffer 0 Interrupt Priority bit
1 = High priority
0 = Low priority

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 17-1: CAN CONTROLLER REGISTER MAP

Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name	Address	Name
F7Fh		F5Fh		F3Fh		F1Fh	RXM1EIDL
F7Eh		F5Eh	CANSTAT	F3Eh	CANSTAT	F1Eh	RXM1EIDH
F7Dh		F5Dh	RXB1D7	F3Dh	TXB1D7	F1Dh	RXM1SIDL
F7Ch		F5Ch	RXB1D6	F3Ch	TXB1D6	F1Ch	RXM1SIDH
F7Bh		F5Bh	RXB1D5	F3Bh	TXB1D5	F1Bh	RXM0EIDL
F7Ah		F5Ah	RXB1D4	F3Ah	TXB1D4	F1Ah	RXM0EIDH
F79h		F59h	RXB1D3	F39h	TXB1D3	F19h	RXM0SIDL
F78h		F58h	RXB1D2	F38h	TXB1D2	F18h	RXM0SIDH
F77h		F57h	RXB1D1	F37h	TXB1D1	F17h	RXF5EIDL
F76h	TXERRCNT	F56h	RXB1D0	F36h	TXB1D0	F16h	RXF5EIDH
F75h	RXERRCNT	F55h	RXB1DLC	F35h	TXB1DLC	F15h	RXF5SIDL
F74h	COMSTAT	F54h	RXB1EIDL	F34h	TXB1EIDL	F14h	RXF5SIDH
F73h	CIOCON	F53h	RXB1EIDH	F33h	TXB1EIDH	F13h	RXF4EIDL
F72h	BRGCON3	F52h	RXB1SIDL	F32h	TXB1SIDL	F12h	RXF4EIDH
F71h	BRGCON2	F51h	RXB1SIDH	F31h	TXB1SIDH	F11h	RXF4SIDL
F70h	BRGCON1	F50h	RXB1CON	F30h	TXB1CON	F10h	RXF4SIDH
F6Fh	CANCON	F4Fh		F2Fh		F0Fh	RXF3EIDL
F6Eh	CANSTAT	F4Eh	CANSTAT	F2Eh	CANSTAT	F0Eh	RXF3EIDH
F6Dh	RXB0D7	F4Dh	TXB0D7	F2Dh	TXB2D7	F0Dh	RXF3SIDL
F6Ch	RXB0D6	F4Ch	TXB0D6	F2Ch	TXB2D6	F0Ch	RXF3SIDH
F6Bh	RXB0D5	F4Bh	TXB0D5	F2Bh	TXB2D5	F0Bh	RXF2EIDL
F6Ah	RXB0D4	F4Ah	TXB0D4	F2Ah	TXB2D4	F0Ah	RXF2EIDH
F69h	RXB0D3	F49h	TXB0D3	F29h	TXB2D3	F09h	RXF2SIDL
F68h	RXB0D2	F48h	TXB0D2	F28h	TXB2D2	F08h	RXF2SIDH
F67h	RXB0D1	F47h	TXB0D1	F27h	TXB2D1	F07h	RXF1EIDL
F66h	RXB0D0	F46h	TXB0D0	F26h	TXB2D0	F06h	RXF1EIDH
F65h	RXB0DLC	F45h	TXB0DLC	F25h	TXB2DLC	F05h	RXF1SIDL
F64h	RXB0EIDL	F44h	TXB0EIDL	F24h	TXB2EIDL	F04h	RXF1SIDH
F63h	RXB0EIDH	F43h	TXB0EIDH	F23h	TXB2EIDH	F03h	RXF0EIDH
F62h	RXB0SIDL	F42h	TXB0SIDL	F22h	TXB2SIDL	F02h	RXF0EIDL
F61h	RXB0SIDH	F41h	TXB0SIDH	F21h	TXB2SIDH	F01h	RXF0SIDL
F60h	RXB0CON	F40h	TXB0CON	F20h	TXB2CON	F00h	RXF0SIDH

Note: Shaded registers are available in Access Bank Low area while the rest are available in Bank 15.

17.3 CAN Modes of Operation

The PIC18CXX8 has the following modes of operation. These modes are:

- Configuration mode
- Disable mode
- Normal Operation mode
- Listen Only mode
- Loopback mode
- Error Recognition mode (selected through CANRXM bits)

Modes are requested by setting the REQOP bits, except the Error Recognition mode, which is requested through the CANRXM bits. Entry into a mode is acknowledged by monitoring the OPMODE bits.

When changing modes, the mode will not actually change until all pending message transmissions are complete. Because of this, the user must verify that the device has actually changed into the requested mode before further operations are executed.

17.3.1 CONFIGURATION MODE

The CAN module has to be initialized before the activation. This is only possible if the module is in the Configuration mode. The Configuration mode is requested by setting REQOP2 bit. Only when the status bit OPMODE2 has a high level, the initialization can be performed. Afterwards, the configuration registers and the acceptance mask registers and the acceptance filter registers can be written. The module is activated by setting the control bits CFGREQ to zero.

The module will protect the user from accidentally violating the CAN protocol through programming errors. All registers which control the configuration of the module can not be modified while the module is on-line. The CAN module will not be allowed to enter the Configuration mode while a transmission is taking place. The CONFIG bit serves as a lock to protect the following registers.

- Configuration registers
- Bus Timing registers
- Identifier Acceptance Filter registers
- Identifier Acceptance Mask registers

In the Configuration mode, the module will not transmit or receive. The error counters are cleared and the interrupt flags remain unchanged. The programmer will have access to configuration registers that are access restricted in other modes.

17.3.2 DISABLE MODE

In Disable mode, the module will not transmit or receive. The module has the ability to set the WAKIF bit due to bus activity, however, any pending interrupts will remain and the error counters will retain their value.

If REQOP<2:0> is set to `001`, the module will enter the module Disable mode. This mode is similar to disabling other peripheral modules by turning off the module enables. This causes the module internal clock to stop unless the module is active (i.e., receiving or transmitting a message). If the module is active, the module will wait for 11 recessive bits on the CAN bus, detect that condition as an idle bus, then accept the module disable command. OPMODE<2:0>=`001` indicates whether the module successfully went into module Disable mode

The WAKIF interrupt is the only module interrupt that is still active in the module Disable mode. If the WAKIE is set, the processor will receive an interrupt whenever the CAN bus detects a dominant state, as occurs with a SOF.

The I/O pins will revert to normal I/O function when the module is in the module Disable mode.

17.3.3 NORMAL MODE

This is the standard operating mode of the PIC18CXX8. In this mode, the device actively monitors all bus messages and generates acknowledge bits, error frames, etc. This is also the only mode in which the PIC18CXX8 will transmit messages over the CAN bus.

17.3.4 LISTEN ONLY MODE

Listen Only mode provides a means for the PIC18CXX8 to receive all messages, including messages with errors. This mode can be used for bus monitor applications, or for detecting the baud rate in ‘hot plugging’ situations. For auto-baud detection, it is necessary that there are at least two other nodes which are communicating with each other. The baud rate can be detected empirically by testing different values until valid messages are received. The Listen Only mode is a silent mode, meaning no messages will be transmitted while in this state, including error flags or acknowledge signals. The filters and masks can be used to allow only particular messages to be loaded into the receive registers, or the filter masks can be set to all zeros to allow a message with any identifier to pass. The error counters are reset and deactivated in this state. The Listen Only mode is activated by setting the mode request bits in the CANCON register.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.3.5 LOOPBACK MODE

This mode will allow internal transmission of messages from the transmit buffers to the receive buffers, without actually transmitting messages on the CAN bus. This mode can be used in system development and testing. In this mode, the ACK bit is ignored and the device will allow incoming messages from itself just as if they were coming from another node. The Loopback mode is a silent mode, meaning no messages will be transmitted while in this state, including error flags or acknowledge signals. The TXCAN pin will revert to port I/O while the device is in this mode. The filters and masks can be used to allow only particular messages to be loaded into the receive registers. The masks can be set to all zeros to provide a mode that accepts all messages. The Loopback mode is activated by setting the mode request bits in the CANCON register.

17.3.6 ERROR RECOGNITION MODE

The module can be set to ignore all errors and receive any message. The Error Recognition mode is activated by setting the RXM<1:0> bits in the RXBnCON registers to `11`. In this mode, the data which is in the message assembly buffer until the error time, is copied in the receive buffer and can be read via the CPU interface. In addition, the data which was on the internal sampling of the CAN bus at the error time and the state vector of the protocol state machine and the bit counter CntCan, are stored in registers and can be read.

17.4 CAN Message Transmission

17.4.1 TRANSMIT BUFFERS

The PIC18CXX8 implements three Transmit Buffers. Each of these buffers occupies 14 bytes of SRAM and are mapped into the device memory maps.

For the MCU to have write access to the message buffer, the TXREQ bit must be clear, indicating that the message buffer is clear of any pending message to be transmitted. At a minimum, the TXBNSIDH, TXBNSIDL, and TXBNDLC registers must be loaded. If data bytes are present in the message, the TXBNDm registers must also be loaded. If the message is to use extended identifiers, the TXBNEIDm registers must also be loaded and the EXIDE bit set.

Prior to sending the message, the MCU must initialize the TXINE bit to enable or disable the generation of an interrupt when the message is sent. The MCU must also initialize the TXP priority bits (see Section 17.4.2).

17.4.2 TRANSMIT PRIORITY

Transmit priority is a prioritization, within the PIC18CXX8, of the pending transmittable messages. This is independent from, and not related to, any prioritization implicit in the message arbitration scheme built into the CAN protocol. Prior to sending the SOF, the priority of all buffers that are queued for transmission is compared. The transmit buffer with the highest priority will be sent first. If two buffers have the same priority setting, the buffer with the highest buffer number will be sent first. There are four levels of transmit priority. If TXP bits for a particular message buffer are set to `11`, that buffer has the highest possible priority. If TXP bits for a particular message buffer are `00`, that buffer has the lowest possible priority.

17.4.3 INITIATING TRANSMISSION

To initiate message transmission, the TXREQ bit must be set for each buffer to be transmitted.

When TXREQ is set, the TXABT, TXLARB and TXERR bits will be cleared.

Setting the TXREQ bit does not initiate a message transmission, it merely flags a message buffer as ready for transmission. Transmission will start when the device detects that the bus is available. The device will then begin transmission of the highest priority message that is ready.

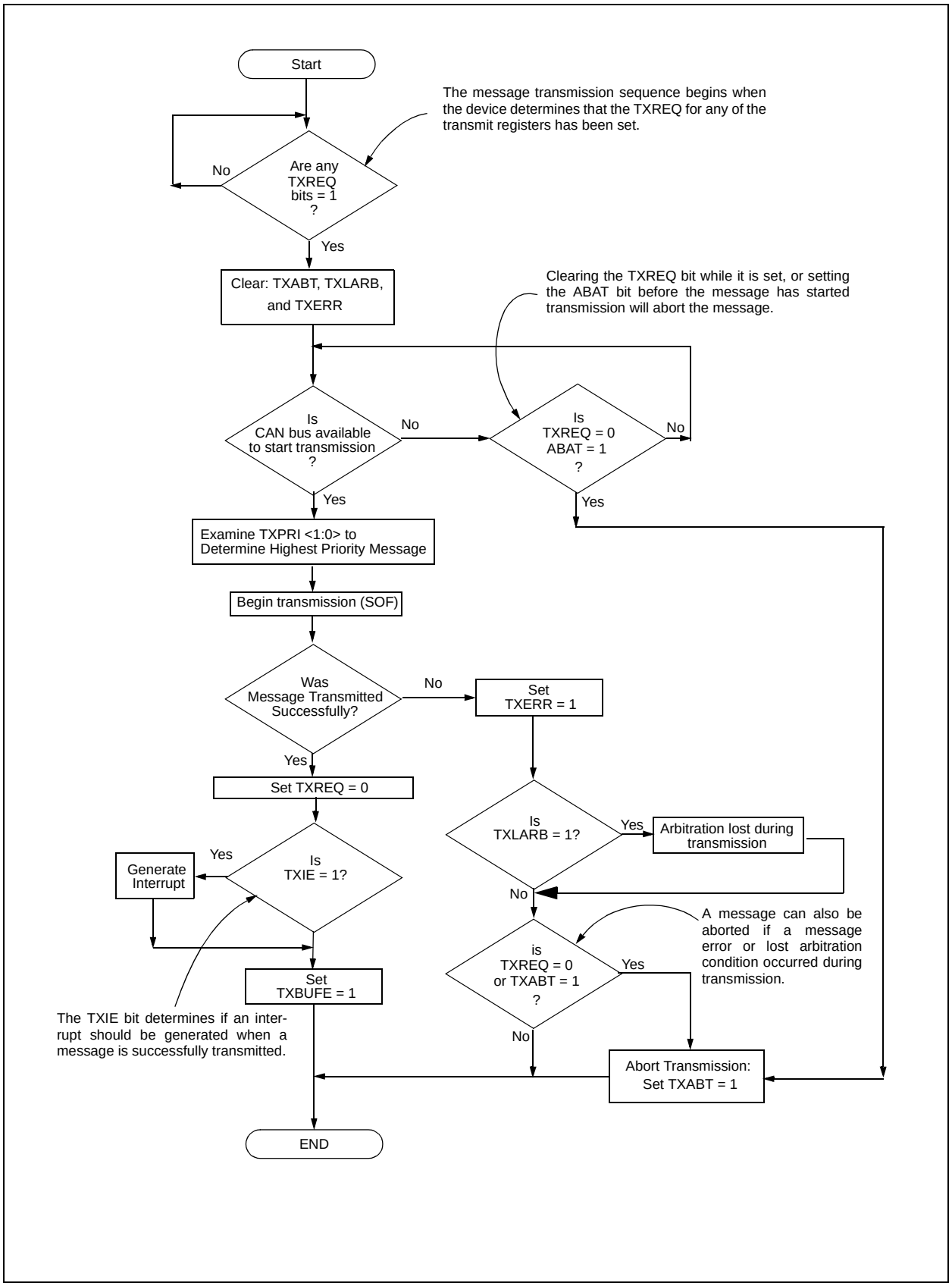
When the transmission has completed successfully, the TXREQ bit will be cleared, the TXBnIF bit will be set, and an interrupt will be generated if the TXBnIE bit is set.

If the message transmission fails, the TXREQ will remain set indicating that the message is still pending for transmission and one of the following condition flags will be set. If the message started to transmit but encountered an error condition, the TXERR and the IRXIF bits will be set and an interrupt will be generated. If the message lost arbitration, the TXLARB bit will be set.

17.4.4 ABORTING TRANSMISSION

The MCU can request to abort a message by clearing the TXBnCON.TXREQ bit associated with the corresponding message buffer. Setting CANCON.ABAT bit will request an abort of all pending messages. If the message has not yet started transmission, or if the message started but is interrupted by loss of arbitration or an error, the abort will be processed. The abort is indicated when the module sets TXBnCON.ABTF bits. If the message has started to transmit, it will attempt to transmit the current message fully. If the current message is transmitted fully and is not lost to arbitration or an error, the ABTF bit will not be set, because the message was transmitted successfully. Likewise, if a message is being transmitted during an abort request and the message is lost to arbitration or an error, the message will not be re-transmitted and the ABTF bit will be set, indicating that the message was successfully aborted.

FIGURE 17-2: TRANSMIT MESSAGE FLOWCHART



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.5 Message Reception

17.5.1 RECEIVE MESSAGE BUFFERING

The PIC18CXX8 includes two full receive buffers with multiple acceptance filters for each. There is also a separate Message Assembly Buffer (MAB), which acts as a third receive buffer (see Figure 17-3).

17.5.2 RECEIVE BUFFERS

Of the three receive buffers, the MAB is always committed to receiving the next message from the bus. The remaining two receive buffers are called RXB0 and RXB1 and can receive a complete message from the protocol engine. The MCU can access one buffer while the other buffer is available for message reception, or holding a previously received message.

The MAB assembles all messages received. These messages will be transferred to the RXBn buffers, only if the acceptance filter criteria are met.

> **Note:** The entire contents of the MAB is moved into the receive buffer once a message is accepted. This means that regardless of the type of identifier (standard or extended) and the number of data bytes received, the entire receive buffer is overwritten with the MAB contents. Therefore, the contents of all registers in the buffer must be assumed to have been modified when any message is received.

When a message is moved into either of the receive buffers, the appropriate RXBnIF bit is set. This bit must be cleared by the MCU when it has completed processing the message in the buffer, in order to allow a new message to be received into the buffer. This bit provides a positive lockout to ensure that the MCU has finished with the message before the PIC18CXX8 attempts to load a new message into the receive buffer. If the RXBnIE bit is set, an interrupt will be generated to indicate that a valid message has been received.

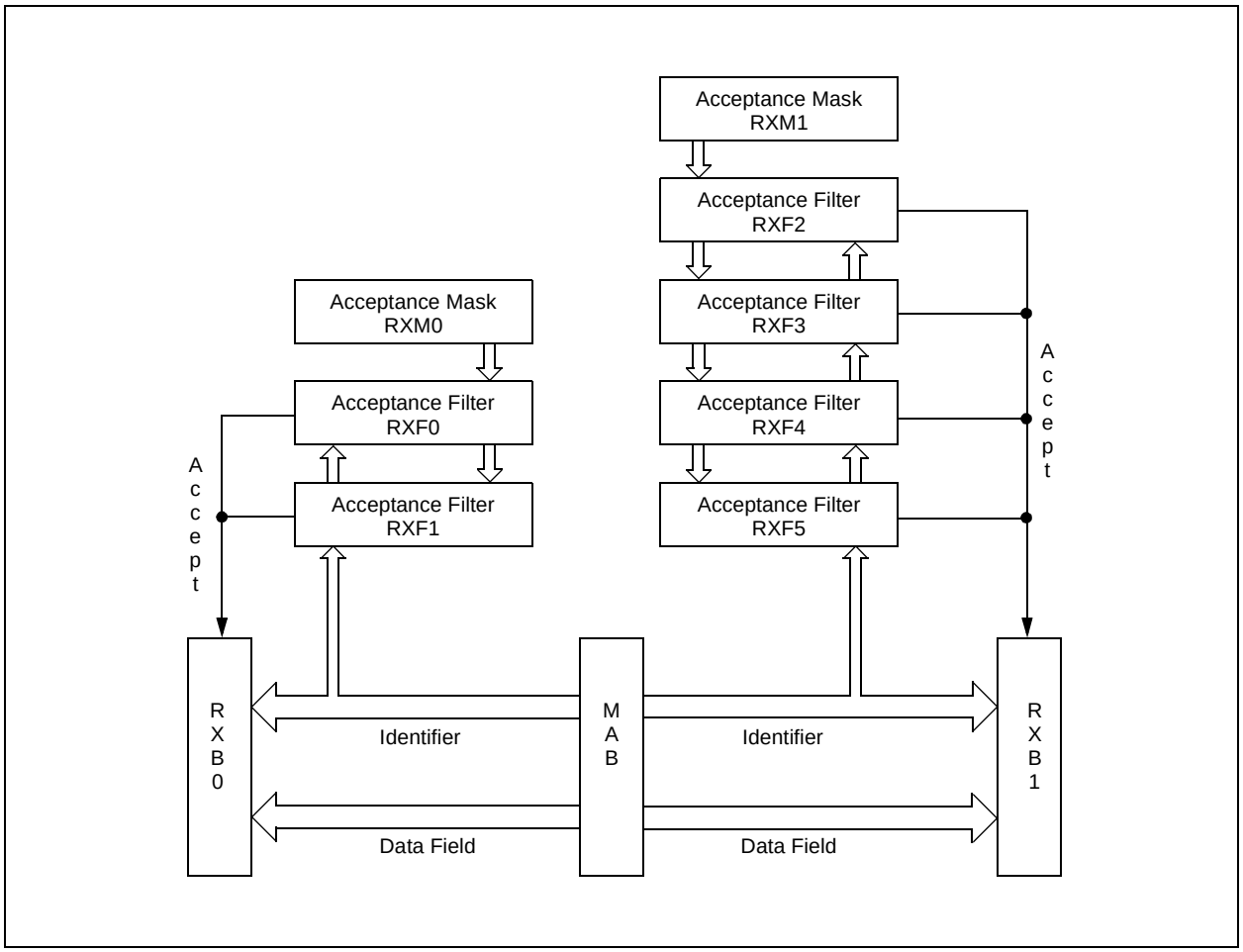
17.5.3 RECEIVE PRIORITY

RXB0 is the higher priority buffer and has two message acceptance filters associated with it. RXB1 is the lower priority buffer and has four acceptance filters associated with it. The lower number of acceptance filters makes the match on RXB0 more restrictive and implies a higher priority for that buffer. Additionally, the RXB0CON register can be configured such that if RXB0 contains a valid message, and another valid message is received, an overflow error will not occur and the new message will be moved into RXB1, regardless of the acceptance criteria of RXB1. There are also two programmable acceptance filter masks available, one for each receive buffer (see Section 4.5).

When a message is received, bits <3:0> of the RXBnCON register will indicate the acceptance filter number that enabled reception, and whether the received message is a remote transfer request.

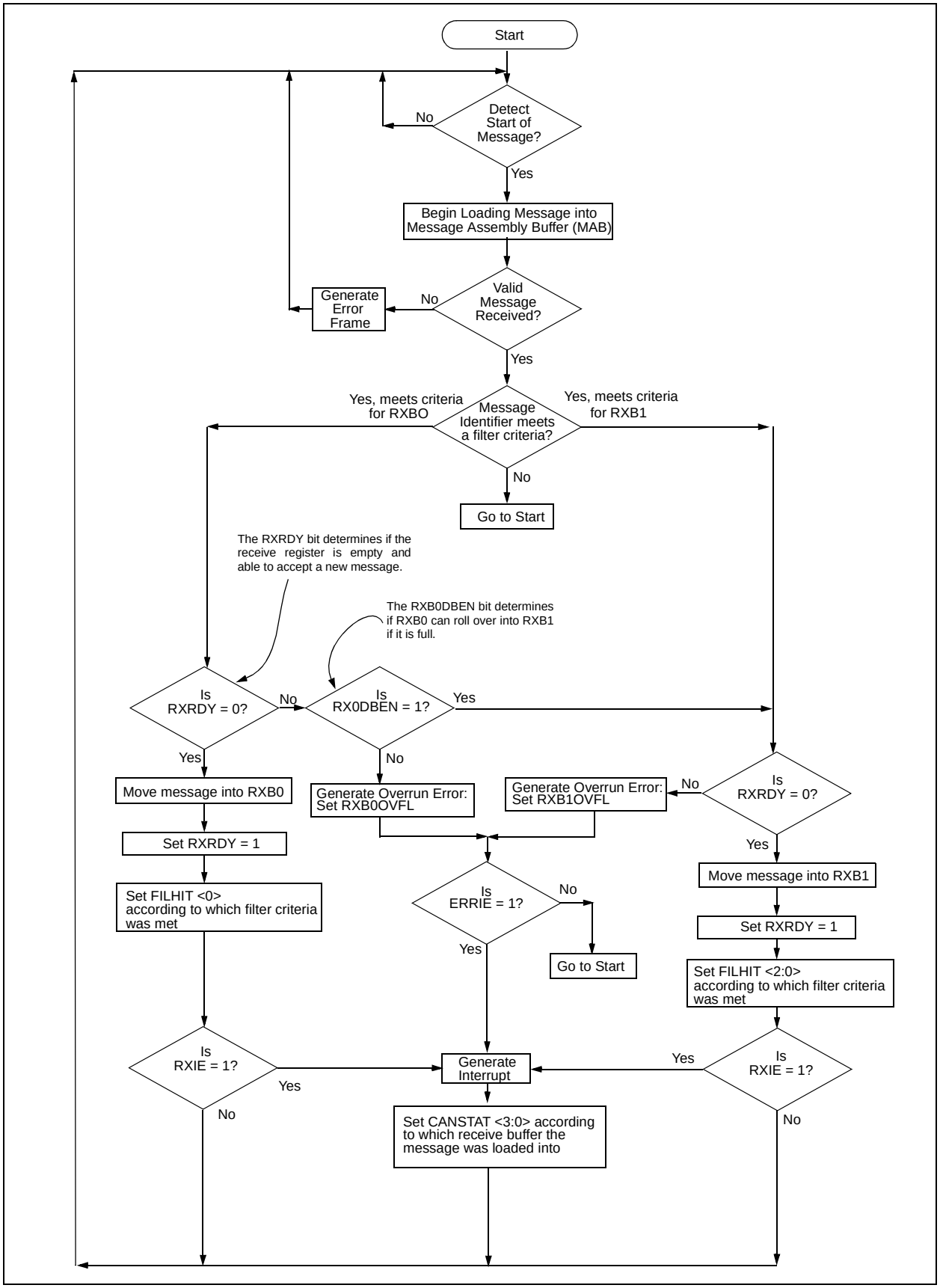
The RXM bits set special receive modes. Normally, these bits are set to `00` to enable reception of all valid messages, as determined by the appropriate acceptance filters. In this case, the determination of whether or not to receive standard or extended messages is determined by the EXIDE bit in the acceptance filter register. If the RXM bits are set to `01` or `10`, the receiver will accept only messages with standard or extended identifiers, respectively. If an acceptance filter has the EXIDE bit set such that it does not correspond with the RXM mode, that acceptance filter is rendered useless. These two modes of RXM bits can be used in systems where it is known that only standard or extended messages will be on the bus. If the RXM bits are set to `11`, the buffer will receive all messages, regardless of the values of the acceptance filters. Also, if a message has an error before the end of frame, that portion of the message assembled in the MAB before the error frame, will be loaded into the buffer. This mode has some value in debugging a CAN system and would not be used in an actual system environment.

FIGURE 17-3: RECEIVE BUFFER BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 17-4: MESSAGE RECEPTION FLOWCHART



17.6 Message Acceptance Filters and Masks

The Message Acceptance Filters and Masks are used to determine if a message in the message assembly buffer should be loaded into either of the receive buffers. Once a valid message has been received into the MAB, the identifier fields of the message are compared to the filter values. If there is a match, that message will be loaded into the appropriate receive buffer. The filter masks are used to determine which bits in the identifier are examined with the filters. A truth table is shown below in Table 17-2 that indicates how each bit in the identifier is compared to the masks and filters to determine if a the message should be loaded into a receive buffer. The mask essentially determines which bits to apply the acceptance filters to. If any mask bit is set to a zero, then that bit will automatically be accepted, regardless of the filter bit.

TABLE 17-2: FILTER/MASK TRUTH TABLE

Mask bit n	Filter bit n	Message Identifier bit n001	Accept or Reject bit n
0	X	X	Accept
1	0	0	Accept
1	0	1	Reject
1	1	0	Reject
1	1	1	Accept

Legend: X = don't care

As shown in the Receive Buffers Block Diagram (Figure 17-3), acceptance filters RXF0 and RXF1, and filter mask RXM0 are associated with RXB0. Filters RXF2, RXF3, RXF4, and RXF5 and mask RXM1 are associated with RXB1. When a filter matches and a message is loaded into the receive buffer, the filter number that enabled the message reception is loaded into the FILHIT bit(s). For RXB1, the RXB1CON register contains the FILHIT<2:0> bits. They are coded as follows:

- `101` = Acceptance Filter 5 (RXF5)
- `100` = Acceptance Filter 4 (RXF4)
- `011` = Acceptance Filter 3 (RXF3)
- `010` = Acceptance Filter 2 (RXF2)
- `001` = Acceptance Filter 1 (RXF1)
- `000` = Acceptance Filter 0 (RXF0)

> **Note:** `000` and `001` can only occur if the RXB0DBEN bit is set in the RXB0CON register, allowing RXB0 messages to roll over into RXB1.

The coding of the RXB0DBEN bit enables these three bits to be used similarly to the FILHIT bits and to distinguish a hit on filter RXF0 and RXF1, in either RXB0, or after a roll over into RXB1.

- `111` = Acceptance Filter 1 (RXF1)
- `110` = Acceptance Filter 0 (RXF0)
- `001` = Acceptance Filter 1 (RXF1)
- `000` = Acceptance Filter 0

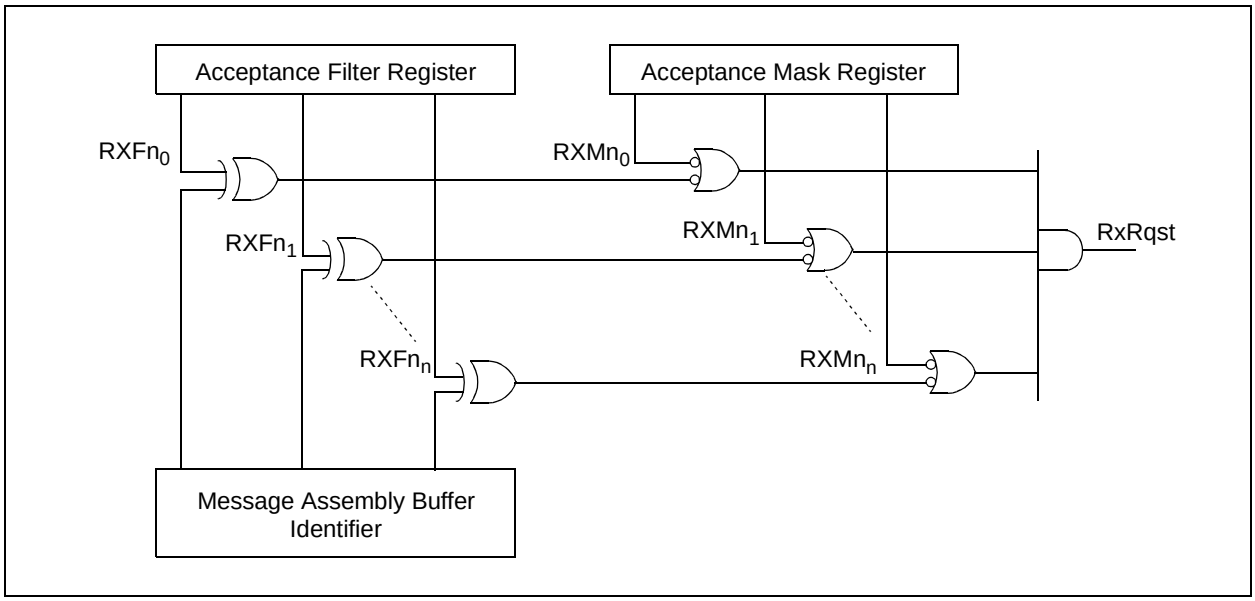
If the RXB0DBEN bit is clear, there are six codes corresponding to the six filters. If the RXB0DBEN bit is set, there are six codes corresponding to the six filters, plus two additional codes corresponding to RXF0 and RXF1 filters that roll over into RXB1.

If more than one acceptance filter matches, the FILHIT bits will encode the binary value of the lowest numbered filter that matched. In other words, if filter RXF2 and filter RXF4 match, FILHIT will be loaded with the value for RXF2. This essentially prioritizes the acceptance filters with a lower number filter having higher priority. Messages are compared to filters in ascending order of filter number.

The mask and filter registers can only be modified when the PIC18CXX8 is in Configuration mode. The mask and filter registers cannot be read outside of Configuration mode. When outside of Configuration mode, all mask and filter registers will be read as '0'.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 17-5: MESSAGE ACCEPTANCE MASK AND FILTER OPERATION



17.7 Baud Rate Setting

All nodes on a given CAN bus must have the same nominal bit rate. The CAN protocol uses Non-Return-to-Zero (NRZ) coding, which does not encode a clock within the data stream. Therefore, the receive clock must be recovered by the receiving nodes and synchronized to the transmitters clock.

As oscillators and transmission time may vary from node to node, the receiver must have some type of Phase Lock Loop (PLL) synchronized to data transmission edges, to synchronize and maintain the receiver clock. Since the data is NRZ coded, it is necessary to include bit stuffing to ensure that an edge occurs at least every six bit times, to maintain the Digital Phase Lock Loop (DPLL) synchronization.

The bit timing of the PIC18CXX8 is implemented using a DPLL that is configured to synchronize to the incoming data, and provide the nominal timing for the transmitted data. The DPLL breaks each bit time into multiple segments, made up of minimal periods of time called the time quanta (T_Q).

Bus timing functions executed within the bit time frame, such as synchronization to the local oscillator, network transmission delay compensation, and sample point positioning, are defined by the programmable bit timing logic of the DPLL.

All devices on the CAN bus must use the same bit rate. However, all devices are not required to have the same master oscillator clock frequency. For the different clock frequencies of the individual devices, the bit rate has to be adjusted by appropriately setting the baud rate prescaler and number of time quanta in each segment.

The nominal bit rate is the number of bits transmitted per second assuming an ideal transmitter with an ideal oscillator, in the absence of resynchronization. The nominal bit rate is defined to be a maximum of 1Mb/s.

Nominal Bit Time is defined as:

T_{BIT} = 1 / NOMINAL BIT RATE

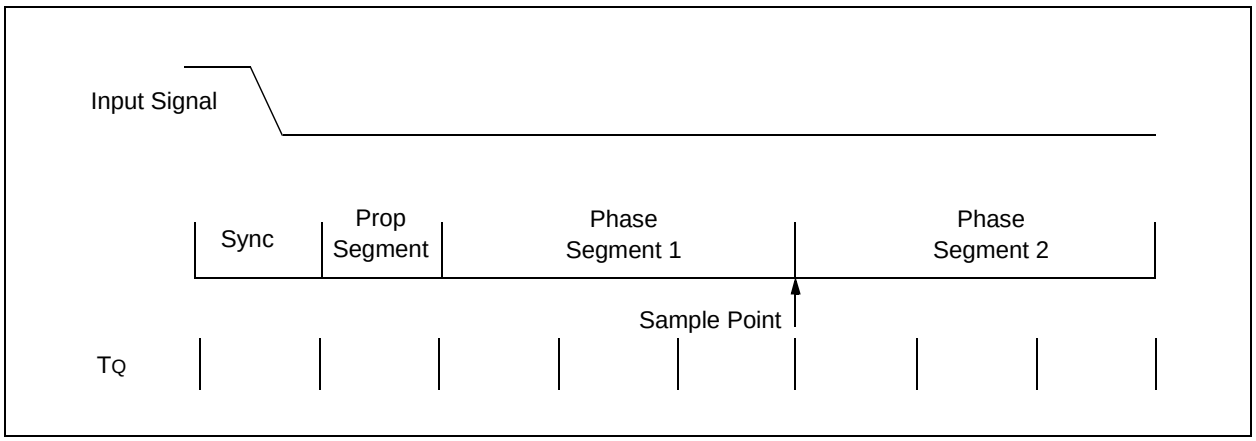
The nominal bit time can be thought of as being divided into separate non-overlapping time segments. These segments are shown in Figure 17-6.

- Synchronization Segment (Sync_Seg)
- Propagation Time Segment (Prop_Seg)
- Phase Buffer Segment 1 (Phase_Seg1)
- Phase Buffer Segment 2 [Phase_Seg2)

Nominal Bit Time = T_Q * (Sync_Seg + Prop_Seg + Phase_Seg1 + Phase_Seg2)

The time segments and also, the nominal bit time, are made up of integer units of time called time quanta or T_Q (see Figure 17-6). By definition, the nominal bit time is programmable from a minimum of 8 T_Q to a maximum of 25 T_Q. Also by definition, the minimum nominal bit time is 1 µs, corresponding to a maximum 1 Mb/s rate.

FIGURE 17-6: BIT TIME PARTITIONING



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.7.1 TIME QUANTA

The Time Quanta is a fixed unit of time derived from the oscillator period. There is a programmable baud rate prescaler, with integral values ranging from 1 to 64, in addition to a fixed divide by two for clock generation.

EXAMPLE 17-2: CALCULATION FOR FOSC = 16MHz

If Fosc = 16 MHz, BRP<5:0> = 00h, and Nominal Bit Time = 8 TQ; then TQ = 125 nsec and Nominal Bit Rate = 1 Mb/s

EXAMPLE 17-3: CALCULATION FOR FOSC = 20MHz

If FOSC = 20 MHz, BRP<5:0> = 01h, and Nominal Bit Time = 8 TQ; then TQ = 200nsec and Nominal Bit Rate = 625 Kb/s

EXAMPLE 17-4: CALCULATION FOR FOSC = 25MHz

If Fosc = 25 MHz, BRP<5:0> = 3Fh, and Nominal Bit Time = 25 TQ; then TQ = 5.12 usec and Nominal Bit Rate = 7.8 Kb/s

The frequencies of the oscillators in the different nodes must be coordinated in order to provide a system-wide specified nominal bit time. This means that all oscillators must have a TOSC that is a integral divisor of TQ. It should also be noted that although the number of TQ is programmable from 4 to 25, the usable minimum is 8 TQ. A bit time of less than 8 TQ in length is not guaranteed to operate correctly.

17.7.2 SYNCHRONIZATION SEGMENT

This part of the bit time is used to synchronize the various CAN nodes on the bus. The edge of the input signal is expected to occur during the sync segment. The duration is 1 TQ.

17.7.3 PROPAGATION SEGMENT

This part of the bit time is used to compensate for physical delay times within the network. These delay times consist of the signal propagation time on the bus line and the internal delay time of the nodes. The length of the Propagation Segment can be programmed from 1 TQ to 8 TQ by setting the PRSEG2:PRSEG0 bits.

17.7.4 PHASE BUFFER SEGMENTS

The Phase Buffer Segments are used to optimally locate the sampling point of the received bit, within the nominal bit time. The sampling point occurs between phase segment 1 and phase segment 2. These segments can be lengthened or shortened by the resynchronization process. The end of phase segment 1 determines the sampling point within a bit time. Phase segment 1 is programmable from 1 TQ to 8 TQ in duration. Phase segment 2 provides delay before the next transmitted data transition and is also programmable from 1 TQ to 8 TQ in duration (however, due to IPT requirements the actual minimum length of phase segment 2 is 2 TQ, or it may be defined to be equal to the greater of phase segment 1 or the Information Processing Time (IPT)).

17.7.5 SAMPLE POINT

The Sample Point is the point of time at which the bus level is read and value of the received bit is determined. The sampling point occurs at the end of phase segment 1. If the bit timing is slow and contains many TQ, it is possible to specify multiple sampling of the bus line at the sample point. The value of the received bit is determined to be the value of the majority decision of three values. The three samples are taken at the sample point, and twice before with a time of TQ/2 between each sample.

17.7.6 INFORMATION PROCESSING TIME

The Information Processing Time (IPT) is the time segment, starting at the sample point, that is reserved for calculation of the subsequent bit level. The CAN specification defines this time to be less than or equal to 2 TQ. The PIC18CXX8 defines this time to be 2 TQ. Thus, phase segment 2 must be at least 2 TQ long.

17.8 Synchronization

To compensate for phase shifts between the oscillator frequencies of each of the nodes on the bus, each CAN controller must be able to synchronize to the relevant signal edge of the incoming signal. When an edge in the transmitted data is detected, the logic will compare the location of the edge to the expected time (Sync Seg). The circuit will then adjust the values of phase segment 1 and phase segment 2, as necessary. There are two mechanisms used for synchronization.

17.8.1 HARD SYNCHRONIZATION

Hard Synchronization is only done when there is a recessive to dominant edge during a BUS IDLE condition, indicating the start of a message. After hard synchronization, the bit time counters are restarted with Sync Seg. Hard synchronization forces the edge, which has occurred to lie within the synchronization segment of the restarted bit time. Due to the rules of synchronization, if a hard synchronization occurs, there will not be a resynchronization within that bit time.

17.8.2 RESYNCHRONIZATION

As a result of Resynchronization, phase segment 1 may be lengthened, or phase segment 2 may be shortened. The amount of lengthening or shortening of the phase buffer segments has an upper bound given by the Synchronization Jump Width (SJW). The value of the SJW will be added to phase segment 1 (see Figure 17-7), or subtracted from phase segment 2 (see Figure 17-8). The SJW is programmable between 1 T_Q and 4 T_Q.

Clocking information will only be derived from recessive to dominant transitions. The property that only a fixed maximum number of successive bits have the same value, ensures resynchronization to the bit stream during a frame.

The phase error of an edge is given by the position of the edge relative to Sync Seg, measured in T_Q. The phase error is defined in magnitude of T_Q as follows:

- e = 0 if the edge lies within SYNCESEG.
- e > 0 if the edge lies before the SAMPLE POINT.
- e < 0 if the edge lies after the SAMPLE POINT of the previous bit.

If the magnitude of the phase error is less than, or equal to, the programmed value of the synchronization jump width, the effect of a resynchronization is the same as that of a hard synchronization.

If the magnitude of the phase error is larger than the synchronization jump width, and if the phase error is positive, then phase segment 1 is lengthened by an amount equal to the synchronization jump width.

If the magnitude of the phase error is larger than the resynchronization jump width, and if the phase error is negative, then phase segment 2 is shortened by an amount equal to the synchronization jump width.

17.8.3 SYNCHRONIZATION RULES

- Only one synchronization within one bit time is allowed.
- An edge will be used for synchronization only if the value detected at the previous sample point (previously read bus value) differs from the bus value immediately after the edge.
- All other recessive to dominant edges, fulfilling rules 1 and 2, will be used for resynchronization with the exception that a node transmitting a dominant bit will not perform a resynchronization, as a result of a recessive to dominant edge with a positive phase error.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 17-7: LENGTHENING A BIT PERIOD

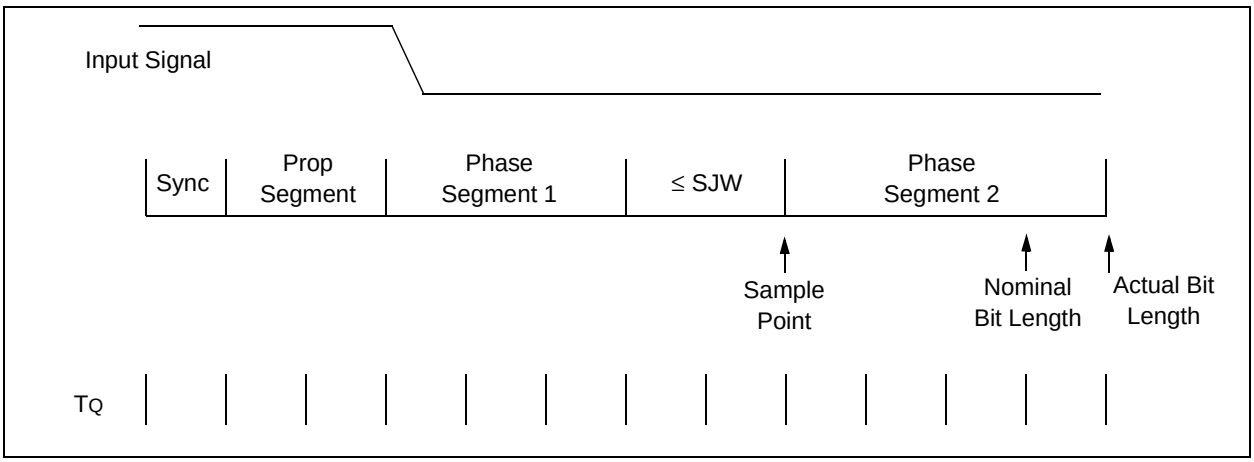
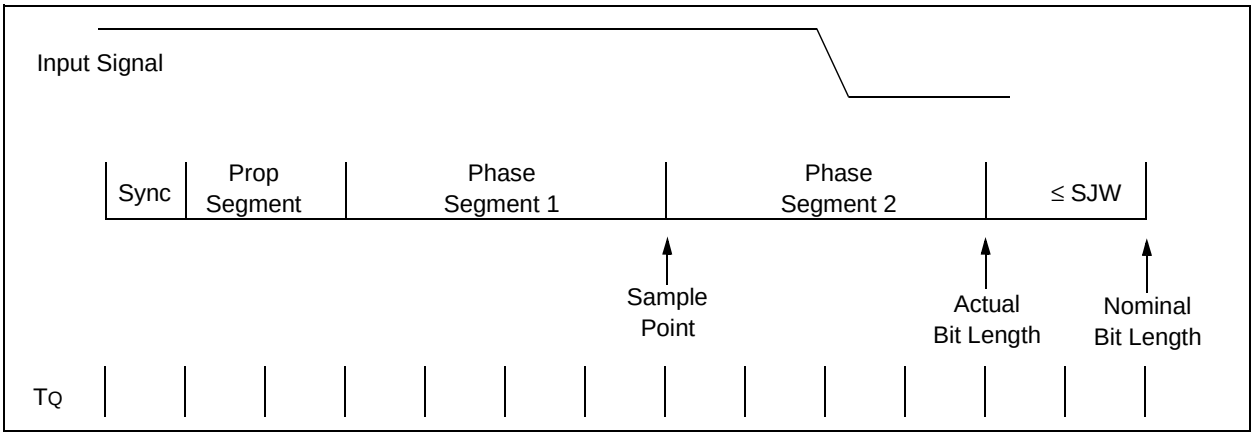


FIGURE 17-8: SHORTENING A BIT PERIOD



17.9 Programming Time Segments

Some requirements for programming of the time segments:

- Prop Seg + Phase Seg 1 ≥ Phase Seg 2
- Phase Seg 2 ≥ Sync Jump Width

For example, assuming that a 125 kHz CAN baud rate with FOSC = 20 MHz is desired:

TOSC = 50nsec, choose BRP<5:0> = 04h, then TQ = 500nsec. To obtain 125 kHz, the bit time must be 16 TQ.

Sync Seg = 1 TQ; Prop Seg = 2 TQ; So, setting Phase Seg 1 = 7 TQ would place the sample at 10 TQ after the transition. This would leave 6 TQ for Phase Seg 2.

Since Phase Seg 2 is 6, by the rules, SJW could be the maximum of 4 TQ. However, normally a large SJW is only necessary when the clock generation of the different nodes is inaccurate or unstable, such as using ceramic resonators. So an SJW of 1 is typically enough.

17.10 Oscillator Tolerance

The bit timing requirements allow ceramic resonators to be used in applications with transmission rates of up to 125 kbit/sec, as a rule of thumb. For the full bus speed range of the CAN protocol, a quartz oscillator is required. A maximum node-to-node oscillator variation of 1.7% is allowed.

17.11 Bit Timing Configuration Registers

The configuration registers (BRGCON1, BRGCON2, BRGCON3) control the bit timing for the CAN bus interface. These registers can only be modified when the PIC18CXX8 is in Configuration mode.

17.11.1 BRGCON1

The BRP bits control the baud rate prescaler. The SJW<1:0> bits select the synchronization jump width in terms of number of TQ's.

17.11.2 BRGCON2

The PRSEG bits set the length, in TQ's, of the propagation segment. The SEG1PH bits set the length, in TQ's, of phase segment 1. The SAM bit controls how many times the RXCAN pin is sampled. Setting this bit to a '1' causes the bus to be sampled three times; twice at TQ/2 before the sample point, and once at the normal sample point (which is at the end of phase segment 1). The value of the bus is determined to be the value read during at least two of the samples. If the SAM bit is set to a '0', then the RXCAN pin is sampled only once at the sample point. The SEG2PHTS bit controls how the length of phase segment 2 is determined. If this bit is set to a '1', then the length of phase segment 2 is determined by the SEG2PH bits of BRGCON3. If the SEG2PHTS bit is set to a '0', then the length of phase segment 2 is the greater of phase segment 1 and the information processing time (which is fixed at 2 TQ for the PIC18CXX8).

17.11.3 BRGCON3

The PHSEG2<2:0> bits set the length, in TQ's, of phase segment 2, if the SEG2PHTS bit is set to a '1'. If the SEG2PHTS bit is set to a '0', then the PHSEG2<2:0> bits have no effect.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.12 Error Detection

The CAN protocol provides sophisticated error detection mechanisms. The following errors can be detected.

17.12.1 CRC ERROR

With the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC), the transmitter calculates special check bits for the bit sequence, from the start of a frame until the end of the data field. This CRC sequence is transmitted in the CRC Field. The receiving node also calculates the CRC sequence using the same formula and performs a comparison to the received sequence. If a mismatch is detected, a CRC error has occurred and an error frame is generated. The message is repeated.

17.12.2 ACKNOWLEDGE ERROR

In the acknowledge field of a message, the transmitter checks if the acknowledge slot (which has sent out as a recessive bit) contains a dominant bit. If not, no other node has received the frame correctly. An acknowledge error has occurred; an error frame is generated and the message will have to be repeated.

17.12.3 FORM ERROR

If a node detects a dominant bit in one of the four segments, including end of frame, interframe space, acknowledge delimiter, or CRC delimiter, then a form error has occurred and an error frame is generated. The message is repeated.

17.12.4 BIT ERROR

A Bit Error occurs if a transmitter sends a dominant bit and detects a recessive bit, or if it sends a recessive bit and detects a dominant bit, when monitoring the actual bus level and comparing it to the just transmitted bit. In the case where the transmitter sends a recessive bit and a dominant bit is detected during the arbitration field and the acknowledge slot, no bit error is generated because normal arbitration is occurring.

17.12.5 STUFF BIT ERROR

If, between the start of frame and the CRC delimiter, six consecutive bits with the same polarity are detected, the bit stuffing rule has been violated. A Stuff Bit Error occurs and an error frame is generated. The message is repeated.

17.12.6 ERROR STATES

Detected errors are made public to all other nodes via error frames. The transmission of the erroneous message is aborted and the frame is repeated as soon as possible. Furthermore, each CAN node is in one of the three error states “error-active”, “error-passive” or “bus-off” according to the value of the internal error counters. The error-active state is the usual state, where the bus node can transmit messages and active error frames (made of dominant bits), without any restrictions. In the error-passive state, messages and passive error frames (made of recessive bits) may be transmitted. The bus-off state makes it temporarily impossible for the station to participate in the bus communication. During this state, messages can neither be received nor transmitted.

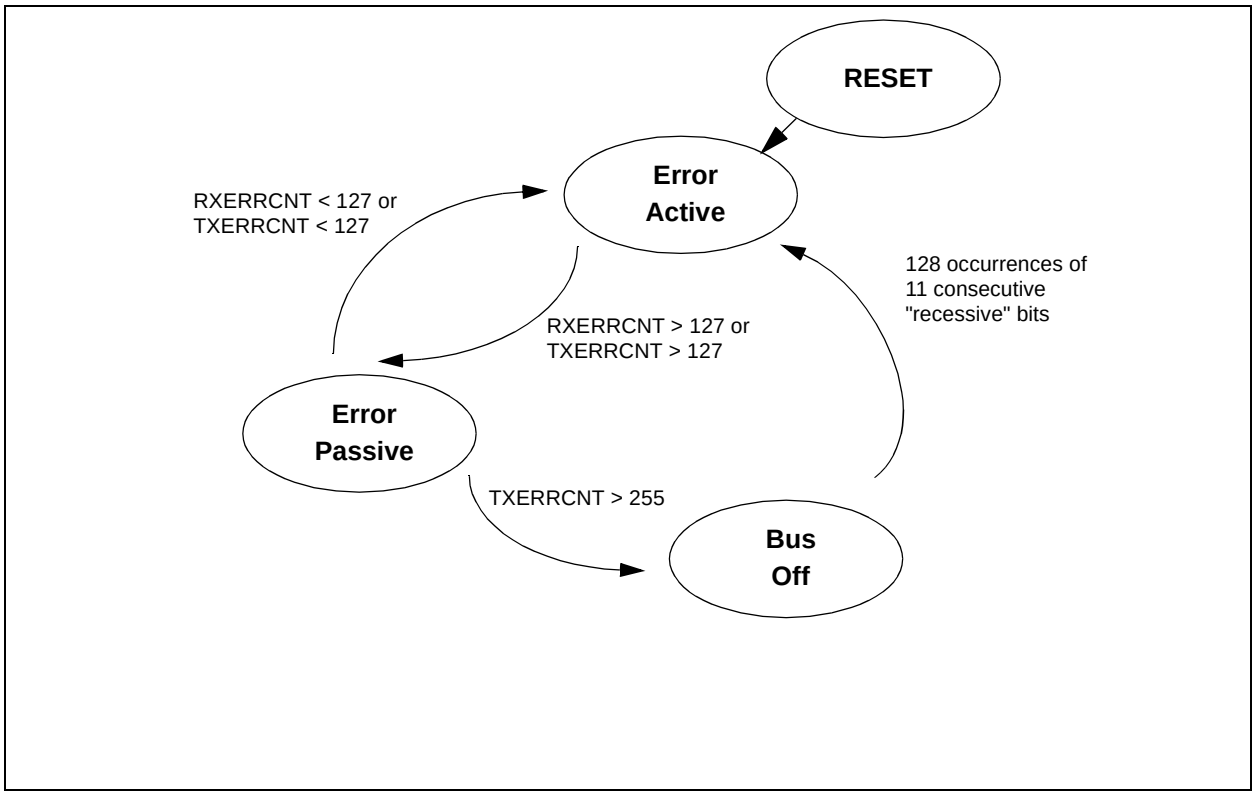
17.12.7 ERROR MODES AND ERROR COUNTERS

The PIC18CXX8 contains two error counters: the Receive Error Counter (RXERRCNT), and the Transmit Error Counter (TXERRCNT). The values of both counters can be read by the MCU. These counters are incremented or decremented in accordance with the CAN bus specification.

The PIC18CXX8 is error-active if both error counters are below the error-passive limit of 128. It is error-passive if at least one of the error counters equals or exceeds 128. It goes to bus-off if the transmit error counter equals or exceeds the bus-off limit of 256. The device remains in this state, until the bus-off recovery sequence is received. The bus-off recovery sequence consists of 128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits (see Figure 17-9). Note that the CAN module, after going bus-off, will recover back to error-active, without any intervention by the MCU, if the bus remains idle for 128 X 11 bit times. If this is not desired, the error interrupt service routine should address this. The current error mode of the CAN module can be read by the MCU via the COMSTAT register.

Additionally, there is an error state warning flag bit, EWARN, which is set if at least one of the error counters equals or exceeds the error warning limit of 96. EWARN is reset if both error counters are less than the error warning limit.

FIGURE 17-9: ERROR MODES STATE DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

17.13 CAN Interrupts

The module has several sources of interrupts. Each of these interrupts can be individually enabled or disabled. The CANINTF register contains interrupt flags. The CANINTE register contains the enables for the 8 main interrupts. A special set of read only bits in the CANSTAT register (ICODE bits) can be used in combination with a jump table for efficient handling of interrupts.

All interrupts have one source, with the exception of the Error Interrupt. Any of the Error Interrupt sources can set the Error Interrupt Flag. The source of the Error Interrupt can be determined by reading the Communication Status register COMSTAT.

The interrupts can be broken up into two categories: receive and transmit interrupts.

The receive related interrupts are:

- Receive Interrupts
- Wake-up Interrupt
- Receiver Overrun Interrupt
- Receiver Warning Interrupt
- Receiver Error Passive Interrupt

The Transmit related interrupts are

- Transmit Interrupts
- Transmitter Warning Interrupt
- Transmitter Error Passive Interrupt
- Bus Off Interrupt

17.13.1 INTERRUPT CODE BITS

The source of a pending interrupt is indicated in the ICODE (interrupt code) bits. Interrupts are internally prioritized, such that the lower the ICODE value, the higher the interrupt priority. Once the highest priority interrupt condition has been cleared, the code for the next highest priority interrupt that is pending (if any), will be reflected by the ICODE bits (see Table 17-3). Note that only those interrupt sources that have their associated CANINTE enable bit set will be reflected in the ICODE bits.

TABLE 17-3: ICODE<2:0> DECODE

ICODE<2:0>	Boolean Expression
000	$\overline{ERR}\bullet\overline{WAK}\bullet\overline{TX0}\bullet\overline{TX1}\bullet\overline{TX2}\bullet\overline{RX0}\bullet\overline{RX1}$
001	ERR
010	$\overline{ERR}\bullet WAK$
011	$\overline{ERR}\bullet\overline{WAK}\bullet TX0$
100	$\overline{ERR}\bullet\overline{WAK}\bullet\overline{TX0}\bullet TX1$
101	$\overline{ERR}\bullet\overline{WAK}\bullet\overline{TX0}\bullet\overline{TX1}\bullet TX2$
110	$\overline{ERR}\bullet\overline{WAK}\bullet\overline{TX0}\bullet\overline{TX1}\bullet\overline{TX2}\bullet RX0$
111	$\overline{ERR}\bullet\overline{WAK}\bullet\overline{TX0}\bullet\overline{TX1}\bullet\overline{TX2}\bullet\overline{RX0}\bullet RX1$

17.13.2 TRANSMIT INTERRUPT

When the Transmit Interrupt is enabled, an interrupt will be generated when the associated transmit buffer becomes empty and is ready to be loaded with a new message. The TXBnIF bit will be set to indicate the source of the interrupt. The interrupt is cleared by the MCU resetting the TXBnIF bit to a ‘0’.

17.13.3 RECEIVE INTERRUPT

When the Receive Interrupt is enabled, an interrupt will be generated when a message has been successfully received and loaded into the associated receive buffer. This interrupt is activated immediately after receiving the EOF field. The RXBnIF bit will be set to indicate the source of the interrupt. The interrupt is cleared by the MCU resetting the RXBnIF bit to a ‘0’.

17.13.4 MESSAGE ERROR INTERRUPT

When an error occurs during transmission or reception of a message, the message error flag IRXIF will be set and, if the IRXIE bit is set, an interrupt will be generated. This is intended to be used to facilitate baud rate determination when used in conjunction with Listen Only mode.

17.13.5 BUS ACTIVITY WAKE-UP INTERRUPT

When the PIC18CXX8 is in SLEEP mode and the bus activity wake-up interrupt is enabled, an interrupt will be generated, and the WAKIF bit will be set, when activity is detected on the CAN bus. This interrupt causes the PIC18CXX8 to exit SLEEP mode. The interrupt is reset by the MCU clearing the WAKIF bit.

17.13.6 ERROR INTERRUPT

When the error interrupt is enabled, an interrupt is generated if an overflow condition occurs, or if the error state of transmitter or receiver has changed. The Error Flags in COMSTAT will indicate one of the following conditions.

17.13.6.1 Receiver Overflow

An overflow condition occurs when the MAB has assembled a valid received message (the message meets the criteria of the acceptance filters) and the receive buffer associated with the filter is not available for loading of a new message. The associated COMSTAT.RXNOVFL bit will be set to indicate the overflow condition. This bit must be cleared by the MCU.

17.13.6.2 Receiver Warning

The receive error counter has reached the MCU warning limit of 96.

17.13.6.3 Transmitter Warning

The transmit error counter has reached the MCU warning limit of 96.

17.13.6.4 Receiver Bus-Passive

The receive error counter has exceeded the error-passive limit of 127 and the device has gone to error-passive state.

17.13.6.5 Transmitter Bus-Passive

The transmit error counter has exceeded the error-passive limit of 127 and the device has gone to error-passive state.

17.13.6.6 Bus-Off

The transmit error counter has exceeded 255 and the device has gone to bus-off state.

17.13.7 INTERRUPT ACKNOWLEDGE

Interrupts are directly associated with one or more status flags in the PIF register. Interrupts are pending as long as one of the flags is set. Once an interrupt flag is set by the device, the flag can not be reset by the MCU until the interrupt condition is removed.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

18.0 10-BIT ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (A/D) MODULE

The analog-to-digital (A/D) converter module has twelve inputs for the PIC18C658 devices and sixteen for the PIC18C858 devices. This module has the ADCON0, ADCON1, and ADCON2 registers.

The A/D allows conversion of an analog input signal to a corresponding 10-bit digital number.

The A/D module has five registers:

- A/D Result High Register (ADRESH)
- A/D Result Low Register (ADRESL)
- A/D Control Register 0 (ADCON0)
- A/D Control Register 1 (ADCON1)
- A/D Control Register 2 (ADCON2)

The ADCON0 register, shown in Register 18-1, controls the operation of the A/D module. The ADCON1 register, shown in Register 18-2, configures the functions of the port pins. The ADCON2, shown in Register 16-3, configures the A/D clock source and justification.

REGISTER 18-1: ADCON0 REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	CHS3	CHS2	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-2 **CHS3:CHS0:** Analog Channel Select bits
0000 = channel 00, (AN0)
0001 = channel 01, (AN1)
0010 = channel 02, (AN2)
0011 = channel 03, (AN3)
0100 = channel 04, (AN4)
0101 = channel 05, (AN5)
0110 = channel 06, (AN6)
0111 = channel 07, (AN7)
1000 = channel 08, (AN8)
1001 = channel 09, (AN9)
1010 = channel 10, (AN10)
1011 = channel 11, (AN11)
1100 = channel 12, (AN12)(1)
1101 = channel 13, (AN13)(1)
1110 = channel 14, (AN14)(1)
1111 = channel 15, (AN15)(1)

Note 1: These channels are not available on the PIC18C658 devices.

bit 1 **GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$:** A/D Conversion Status bit
When ADON = 1
1 = A/D conversion in progress. Setting this bit starts an A/D conversion cycle. This bit is automatically cleared by hardware when the A/D conversion is complete.
0 = A/D conversion not in progress

bit 0 **ADON:** A/D On bit
1 = A/D converter module is operating
0 = A/D converter module is shut off and consumes no operating current

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

REGISTER 18-2: ADCON1 REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-4 **VCFG1:VCFG0:** Voltage Reference Configuration bits

	A/D VREF+	A/D VREF-
00	AVDD	AVSS
01	External VREF+	AVSS
10	AVDD	External VREF-
11	External VREF+	External VREF-

bit 3:0 **PCFG3:PCFG0:** A/D Port Configuration Control bits

	AN15	AN14	AN13	AN12	AN11	AN10	AN9	AN8	AN7	AN6	AN5	AN4	AN3	AN2	AN1	AN0
0000	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0001	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0010	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0011	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0100	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0101	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0110	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
0111	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
1000	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
1001	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A	A
1010	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A	A
1011	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A	A
1100	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A	A
1101	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A	A
1110	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	A
1111	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D

A = Analog input D = Digital I/O

Shaded cells = additional A/D channels available on the PIC18C858 devices.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

Note: Channels AN15 through AN12 are not available on the 68-pin devices.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 18-3: ADCON2 REGISTER

R/W-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
ADFM	—	—	—	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **ADFM:** A/D Result Format Select bit
1 = Right justified
0 = Left justified

bit 6-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2-0 **ADCS1:ADCS0:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits
000 = FOSC/2
001 = FOSC/8
010 = FOSC/32
011 = FRC (clock derived from an RC oscillator = 1 MHz max)
100 = FOSC/4
101 = FOSC/16
110 = FOSC/64
111 = FRC (clock derived from an RC oscillator = 1 MHz max)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

The analog reference voltage is software selectable to either the device's positive and negative supply voltage (V_{DD} and V_{SS}), or the voltage level on the RA3/AN3/V_{REF}+ pin and RA2/AN2/V_{REF}-.

The A/D converter has a unique feature of being able to operate while the device is in SLEEP mode. To operate in SLEEP, the A/D conversion clock must be derived from the A/D's internal RC oscillator.

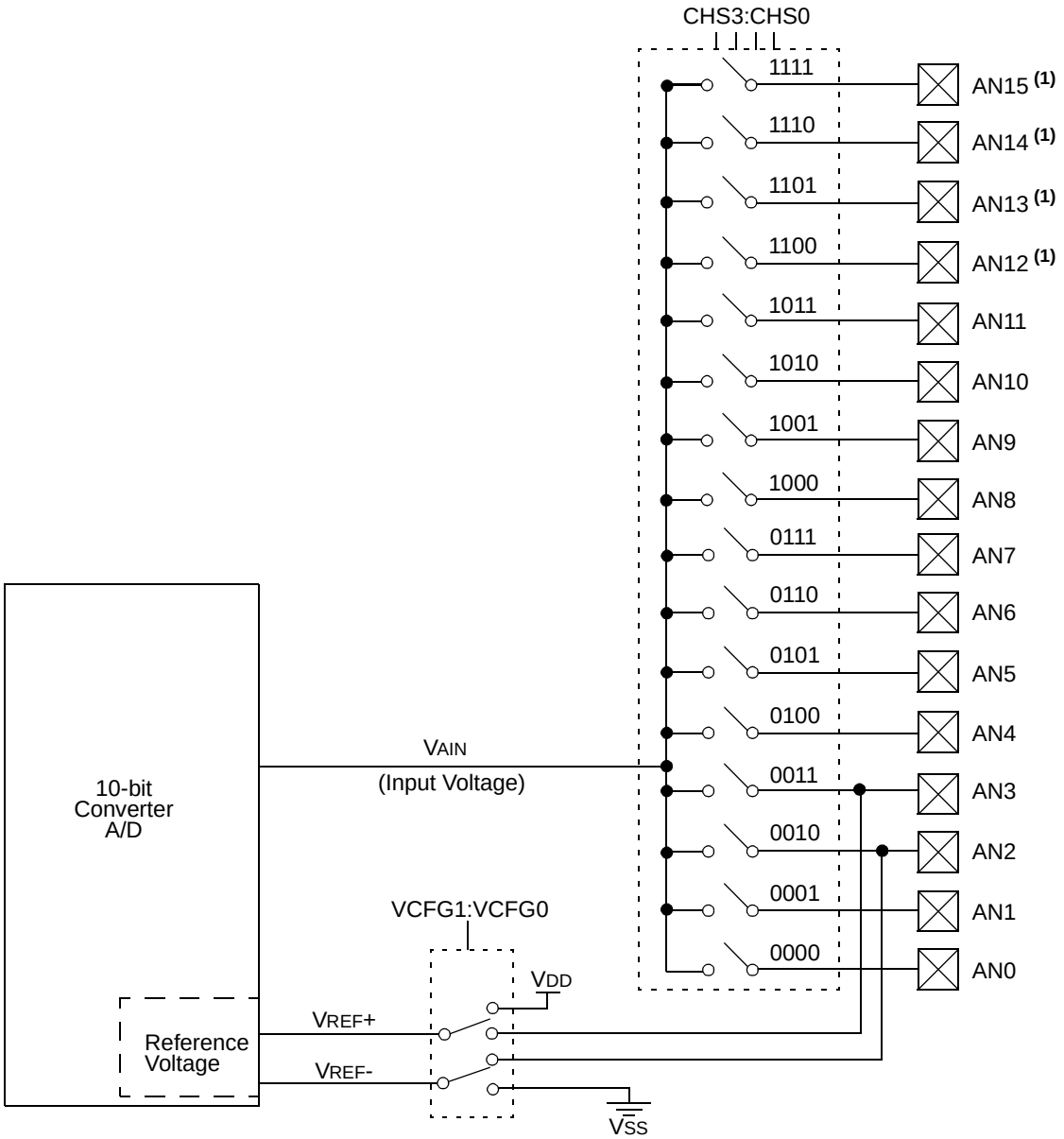
The output of the sample and hold is the input into the converter, which generates the result via successive approximation.

A device RESET forces all registers to their RESET state. This forces the A/D module to be turned off and any conversion is aborted.

Each port pin associated with the A/D converter can be configured as an analog input (RA3 can also be a voltage reference), or as a digital I/O.

The ADRESH and ADRESL registers contain the result of the A/D conversion. When the A/D conversion is complete, the result is loaded into the ADRESH/ADRESL registers, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (ADCON0 register) is cleared, and A/D interrupt flag bit ADIF is set. The block diagram of the A/D module is shown in Figure 18-1.

FIGURE 18-1: A/D BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Channels AN15 through AN12 are not available on the PIC18C658.
2: I/O pins have diode protection to V_{DD} and V_{SS}.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

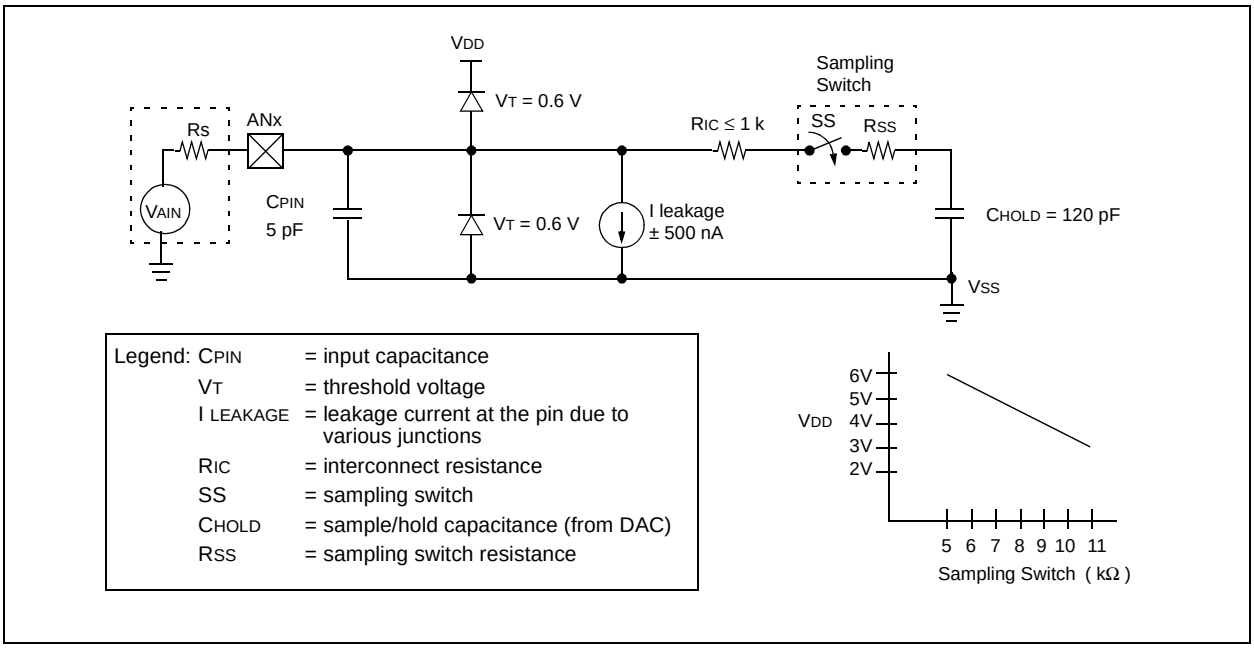
The value in the ADRESH/ADRESL registers is not modified for a Power-on Reset. The ADRESH/ADRESL registers will contain unknown data after a Power-on Reset.

After the A/D module has been configured as desired, the selected channel must be acquired before the conversion is started. The analog input channels must have their corresponding TRIS bits selected as an input. To determine acquisition time, see Section 18.1. After this acquisition time has elapsed, the A/D conversion can be started. The following steps should be followed to do an A/D conversion:

1. Configure the A/D module:
   - Configure analog pins, voltage reference and digital I/O (ADCON1)
   - Select A/D input channel (ADCON0)
   - Select A/D conversion clock (ADCON2)
   - Turn on A/D module (ADCON0)
2. Configure A/D interrupt (if desired):
   - Clear ADIF bit
   - Set ADIE bit
   - Set GIE bit
3. Wait the required acquisition time.
4. Start conversion:
   - Set GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (ADCON0 register)
5. Wait for A/D conversion to complete, by either:
   - Polling for the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit to be cleared

   OR
   - Waiting for the A/D interrupt
6. Read A/D Result registers (ADRESH:ADRESL); clear bit ADIF, if required.
7. For next conversion, go to step 1 or step 2, as required. The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. A minimum wait of 2TAD is required before next acquisition starts.

FIGURE 18-2: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



18.1 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the A/D converter to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (C_{HOLD}) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The analog input model is shown in Figure 18-2. The source impedance (R_S) and the internal sampling switch (R_{SS}) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor C_{HOLD}. The sampling switch (R_{SS}) impedance varies over the device voltage (V_{DD}). The source impedance affects the offset voltage at the analog input (due to pin leakage current). **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 2.5kΩ**. After the analog input channel is selected (changed), this acquisition must be done before the conversion can be started.

Note:	When the conversion is started, the holding capacitor is disconnected from the input pin.

To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 18-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSb error is used (1024 steps for the A/D). The 1/2 LSb error is the maximum error allowed for the A/D to meet its specified resolution.

Example 18-1 shows the calculation of the minimum required acquisition time T_{ACQ}. This calculation is based on the following application system assumptions:

C_{HOLD}	=	120 pF
Rs	=	2.5 kΩ
Conversion Error	≤	1/2 LSb
V_{DD}	=	5V → Rss = 7 kΩ
Temperature	=	50°C (system max.)
V_{HOLD}	=	0V @ time = 0

EQUATION 18-1: ACQUISITION TIME

$$T_{ACQ} = \text{Amplifier Settling Time} + \text{Holding Capacitor Charging Time} + \text{Temperature Coefficient}$$

$$= T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$$

EQUATION 18-2: A/D MINIMUM CHARGING TIME

$$V_{HOLD} = (V_{REF} - (V_{REF}/2048)) \bullet (1 - e^{(-T_C/C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S))})$$

or

$$T_C = -(120\text{ pF})(1\text{ k}\Omega + R_{SS} + R_S)\ln(1/2047)$$

EXAMPLE 18-1: CALCULATING THE MINIMUM REQUIRED ACQUISITION TIME

$T_{ACQ} = T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF}$

Temperature coefficient is only required for temperatures > 25°C.

$T_{ACQ} = 2\ \mu s + T_C + [(\text{Temp} - 25°C)(0.05\ \mu s/°C)]$

$T_C = -C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S)\ln(1/2047)$
$-120\text{ pF}(1\text{ k}\Omega + 7\text{ k}\Omega + 2.5\text{ k}\Omega)\ln(0.0004885)$
$-120\text{ pF}(10.5\text{ k}\Omega)\ln(0.0004885)$
$-1.26\ \mu s(-7.6241)$
$9.61\ \mu s$

$T_{ACQ} = 2\ \mu s + 9.61\ \mu s + [(50°C - 25°C)(0.05\ \mu s/°C)]$
$11.61\ \mu s + 1.25\ \mu s$
$12.86\ \mu s$

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

18.2 Selecting the A/D Conversion Clock

The A/D conversion time per bit is defined as TAD. The A/D conversion requires 12 TAD per 10-bit conversion. The source of the A/D conversion clock is software selectable. There are seven possible options for TAD:

- 2TOSC
- 4TOSC
- 8TOSC
- 16TOSC
- 32TOSC
- 64TOSC
- Internal RC oscillator

For correct A/D conversions, the A/D conversion clock (TAD) must be selected to ensure a minimum TAD time of 1.6 µs.

Table 18-1 shows the resultant TAD times derived from the device operating frequencies and the A/D clock source selected.

18.3 Configuring Analog Port Pins

The ADCON1, TRISA, TRISF and TRISH registers control the operation of the A/D port pins. The port pins needed as analog inputs must have their corresponding TRIS bits set (input). If the TRIS bit is cleared (output), the digital output level (VOH or VOL) will be converted.

The A/D operation is independent of the state of the CHS3:CHS0 bits and the TRIS bits.

Note 1: When reading the port register, all pins configured as analog input channels will read as cleared (a low level). Pins configured as digital inputs will convert an analog input. Analog levels on a digitally configured input will not affect the conversion accuracy.

2: Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to consume current out of the device's specification limits.

TABLE 18-1: TAD vs. DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES

AD Clock Source (TAD)		Maximum Device Frequency	
Operation	**ADCS2:ADCS0**	**PIC18CXX8**	**PIC18LCXX8(6)**
2TOSC	000	1.25 MHz	666 kHz
4TOSC	100	2.50 MHz	1.33 MHz
8TOSC	001	5.00 MHz	2.67 MHz
16TOSC	101	10.0 MHz	5.33 MHz
32TOSC	010	20.0 MHz	10.67 MHz
64TOSC	110	40.0 MHz	21.33 MHz
RC	x11	—	—

Note 1: The RC source has a typical TAD time of 4 ms.
2: The RC source has a typical TAD time of 6 ms.
3: These values violate the minimum required TAD time.
4: For faster conversion times, the selection of another clock source is recommended.
5: For device frequencies above 1 MHz, the device must be in SLEEP for the entire conversion or the A/D accuracy may be out of specification.
6: This column is for the **LC** devices only.

18.4 A/D Conversions

Figure 18-3 shows the operation of the A/D converter after the GO bit has been set. Clearing the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit during a conversion will abort the current conversion. The A/D result register pair will NOT be updated with the partially completed A/D conversion sample. That is, the ADRESH:ADRESL registers will continue to contain the value of the last completed conversion (or the last value written to the ADRESH:ADRESL registers). After the A/D conversion is aborted, a 2TAD wait is required before the next acquisition is started. After this 2TAD wait, acquisition on the selected channel is automatically started.

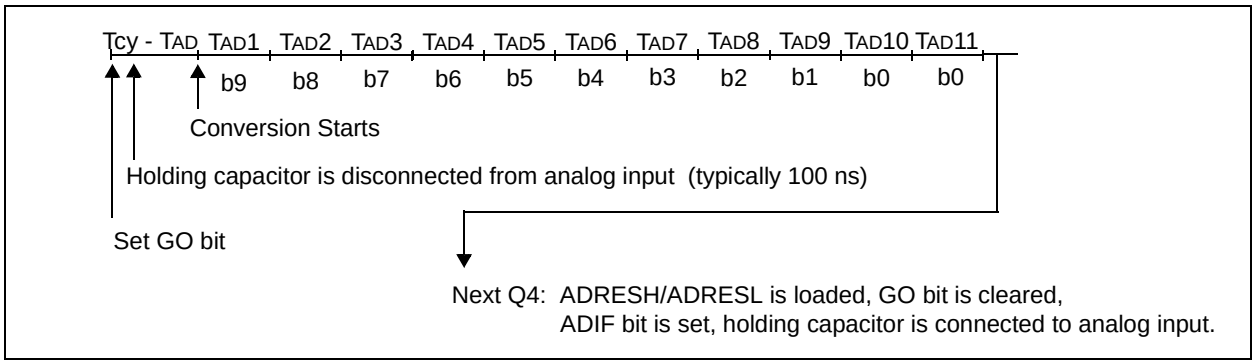
Note:	The GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit should **NOT** be set in the same instruction that turns on the A/D.

18.5 Use of the CCP2 Trigger

An A/D conversion can be started by the “special event trigger” of the CCP2 module. This requires that the CCP2M3:CCP2M0 bits (CCP2CON<3:0>) be programmed as `1011` and that the A/D module is enabled (ADON bit is set). When the trigger occurs, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit will be set, starting the A/D conversion, and the Timer1 (or Timer3) counter will be reset to zero. Timer1 (or Timer3) is reset to automatically repeat the A/D acquisition period with minimal software overhead (moving ADRESH/ADRESL to the desired location). The appropriate analog input channel must be selected and the minimum acquisition done before the “special event trigger” sets the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit (starts a conversion).

If the A/D module is not enabled (ADON is cleared), the “special event trigger” will be ignored by the A/D module, but will still reset the Timer1 (or Timer3) counter.

FIGURE 18-3: A/D CONVERSION TAD CYCLES



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 18-2: SUMMARY OF A/D REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other RESETS
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INT0IE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INT0IF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR1	PSPIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIE1	PSPIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
IPR1	PSPIP	ADIP	RCIP	TXIP	SSPIP	CCP1IP	TMR2IP	TMR1IP	0000 0000	0000 0000
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
ADRESH	A/D Result Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADRESL	A/D Result Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
ADCON0	—	—	CHS3	CHS3	CHS1	CHS0	GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	0000 00-0	0000 00-0
ADCON1	—	—	VCFG1	VCFG0	PCFG3	PCFG2	PCFG1	PCFG0	---- -000	---- -000
ADCON2	ADFM	—	—	—	—	ADCS2	ADCS1	ADCS0	0--- -000	0--- -000
PORTA	—	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	--0x 0000	--0u 0000
TRISA	—	PORTA Data Direction Register							--11 1111	--11 1111
PORTF	RF7	RF6	RF5	RF4	RF3	RF2	RF1	RF0	x000 0000	u000 0000
LATF	LATF7	LATF6	LATF5	LATF4	LATF3	LATF2	LATF1	LATF0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISF	PORTF Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
PORTH(1)	RH7	RH6	RH5	RH4	RH3	RH2	RH1	RH0	0000 xxxx	0000 xxxx
LATH(1)	LATH7	LATH6	LATH5	LATH4	LATH3	LATH2	LATH1	LATH0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISH(1)	PORTH Data Direction Control Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for A/D conversion.

Note 1: Only available on PIC18C858 devices.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.0 COMPARATOR MODULE

The comparator module contains two analog comparators. The inputs to the comparators are multiplexed with the RF1 through RF6 pins. The on-chip Voltage Reference (Section 20.0) can also be an input to the comparators.

The CMCON register, shown as Register 19-1, controls the comparator input and output multiplexers. A block diagram of the comparator is shown in Figure 19-1.

REGISTER 19-1: CMCON REGISTER

R-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **C2OUT**: Comparator 2 Output
When C2INV = 0:
1 = C2 V_{IN+} > C2 V_{IN-}
0 = C2 V_{IN+} < C2 V_{IN-}

When C2INV = 1:
1 = C2 V_{IN+} < C2 V_{IN-}
0 = C2 V_{IN+} > C2 V_{IN-}

bit 6 **C1OUT**: Comparator 1 Output
When C1INV = 0:
1 = C1 V_{IN+} > C1 V_{IN-}
0 = C1 V_{IN+} < C1 V_{IN-}

When C1INV = 1:
1 = C1 V_{IN+} < C1 V_{IN-}
0 = C1 V_{IN+} > C1 V_{IN-}

bit 5 **C2INV**: Comparator 2 Output Inversion
1 = C2 output inverted
0 = C2 output not inverted

bit 4 **C1INV**: Comparator 1 Output Inversion
1 = C1 Output inverted
0 = C1 Output not inverted

bit 3 **CIS**: Comparator Input Switch
When CM2:CM0 = 110:
1 = C1 V_{IN-} connects to RF5/AN10
C2 V_{IN-} connects to RF3/AN8
0 = C1 V_{IN-} connects to RF6/AN11
C2 V_{IN-} connects to RF4/AN9

bit 2-0 **CM2:CM0**: Comparator Mode
Figure 19-1 shows the Comparator modes and CM2:CM0 bit settings

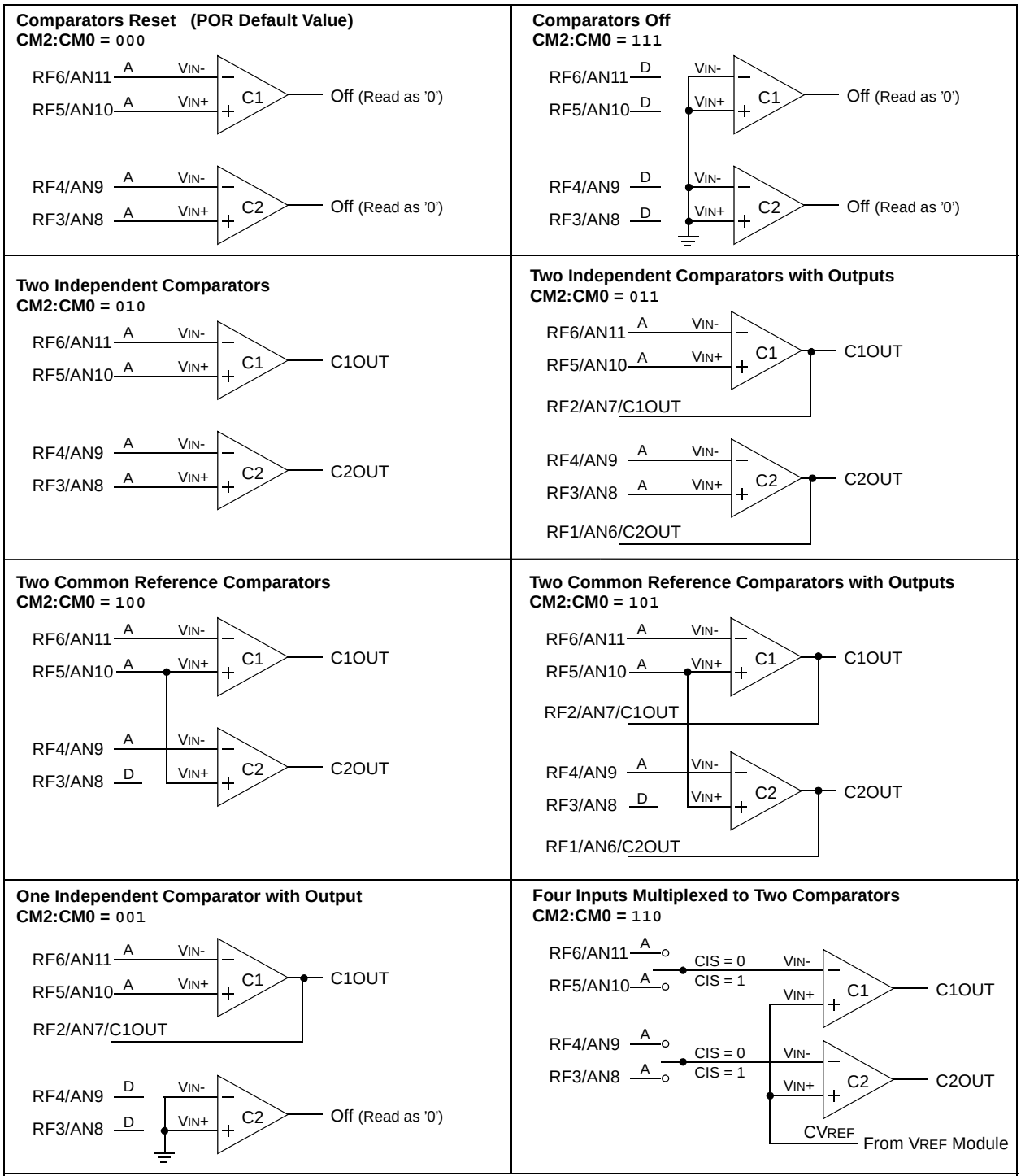
Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

19.1 Comparator Configuration

There are eight modes of operation for the comparators. The CMCON register is used to select these modes. Figure 19-1 shows the eight possible modes. The TRISF register controls the data direction of the comparator pins for each mode. If the Comparator mode is changed, the comparator output level may not be valid for the specified mode change delay shown in Electrical Specifications (Section 25.0).

Note:	Comparator interrupts should be disabled during a Comparator mode change. Otherwise, a false interrupt may occur.

FIGURE 19-1: COMPARATOR I/O OPERATING MODES



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

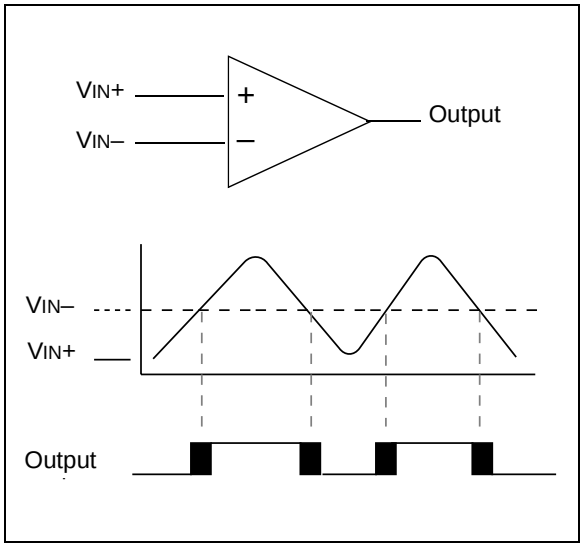
19.2 Comparator Operation

A single comparator is shown in Figure 19-2 along with the relationship between the analog input levels and the digital output. When the analog input at VIN+ is less than the analog input VIN–, the output of the comparator is a digital low level. When the analog input at VIN+ is greater than the analog input VIN–, the output of the comparator is a digital high level. The shaded areas of the output of the comparator in Figure 19-2 represent the uncertainty due to input offsets and response time.

19.3 Comparator Reference

An external or internal reference signal may be used depending on the comparator operating mode. The analog signal present at VIN– is compared to the signal at VIN+, and the digital output of the comparator is adjusted accordingly (Figure 19-2).

FIGURE 19-2: SINGLE COMPARATOR



19.3.1 EXTERNAL REFERENCE SIGNAL

When external voltage references are used, the comparator module can be configured to have the comparators operate from the same, or different reference sources. However, threshold detector applications may require the same reference. The reference signal must be between VSS and VDD, and can be applied to either pin of the comparator(s).

19.3.2 INTERNAL REFERENCE SIGNAL

The comparator module also allows the selection of an internally generated voltage reference for the comparators. Section 20.0 contains a detailed description of the Comparator Voltage Reference Module that provides this signal. The internal reference signal is used when comparators are in mode CM<2:0> = `110` (Figure 19-1). In this mode, the internal voltage reference is applied to the VIN+ pin of both comparators.

19.4 Comparator Response Time

Response time is the minimum time, after selecting a new reference voltage or input source, before the comparator output has a valid level. If the internal reference is changed, the maximum delay of the internal voltage reference must be considered when using the comparator outputs. Otherwise the maximum delay of the comparators should be used (Section 25.0).

19.5 Comparator Outputs

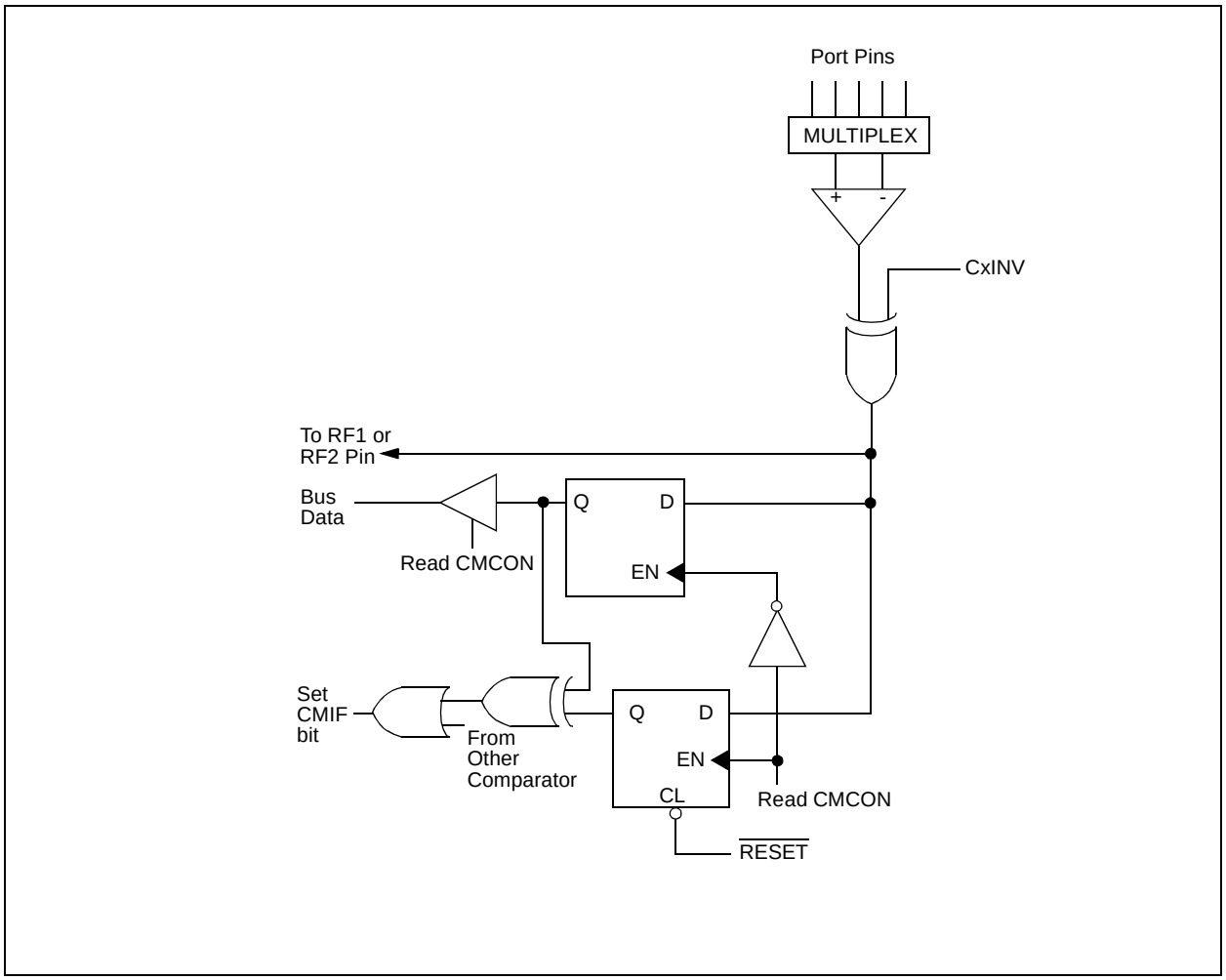
The comparator outputs are read through the CMCON Register. These bits are read-only. The comparator outputs may also be directly output to the RF1 and RF2 I/O pins. When enabled, multiplexors in the output path of the RF1 and RF2 pins will switch and the output of each pin will be the unsynchronized output of the comparator. The uncertainty of each of the comparators is related to the input offset voltage and the response time given in the specifications. Figure 19-3 shows the comparator output block diagram.

The TRISA bits will still function as an output enable/disable for the RF1 and RF2 pins while in this mode.

The polarity of the comparator outputs can be changed using the C2INV and C1INV bits (CMCON<4:5>).

Note 1:	When reading the PORT register, all pins configured as analog inputs will read as a ‘0’. Pins configured as digital inputs will convert an analog input, according to the Schmitt Trigger input specification.
2:	Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input, may cause the input buffer to consume more current than is specified.

FIGURE 19-3: COMPARATOR OUTPUT BLOCK DIAGRAM



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

19.6 Comparator Interrupts

The comparator interrupt flag is set whenever there is a change in the output value of either comparator. Software will need to maintain information about the status of the output bits, as read from CMCON<7:6>, to determine the actual change that occurred. The CMIF bit (PIR registers) is the comparator interrupt flag. The CMIF bit must be RESET by clearing ‘0’. Since it is also possible to write a '1' to this register, a simulated interrupt may be initiated.

The CMIE bit (PIE registers) and the PEIE bit (INTCON register) must be set to enable the interrupt. In addition, the GIE bit must also be set. If any of these bits are clear, the interrupt is not enabled, though the CMIF bit will still be set if an interrupt condition occurs.

.

Note:	If a change in the CMCON register (C1OUT or C2OUT) should occur when a read operation is being executed (start of the Q2 cycle), then the CMIF (PIR registers) interrupt flag may not get set.

The user, in the interrupt service routine, can clear the interrupt in the following manner:

a) Any read or write of CMCON will end the mismatch condition.

b) Clear flag bit CMIF.

A mismatch condition will continue to set flag bit CMIF. Reading CMCON will end the mismatch condition, and allow flag bit CMIF to be cleared.

19.7 Comparator Operation During SLEEP

When a comparator is active and the device is placed in SLEEP mode, the comparator remains active and the interrupt is functional if enabled. This interrupt will wake-up the device from SLEEP mode, when enabled. While the comparator is powered up, higher SLEEP currents than shown in the power-down current specification will occur. Each operational comparator will consume additional current, as shown in the comparator specifications. To minimize power consumption while in SLEEP mode, turn off the comparators, CM<2:0> = `111`, before entering SLEEP. If the device wakes up from SLEEP, the contents of the CMCON register are not affected.

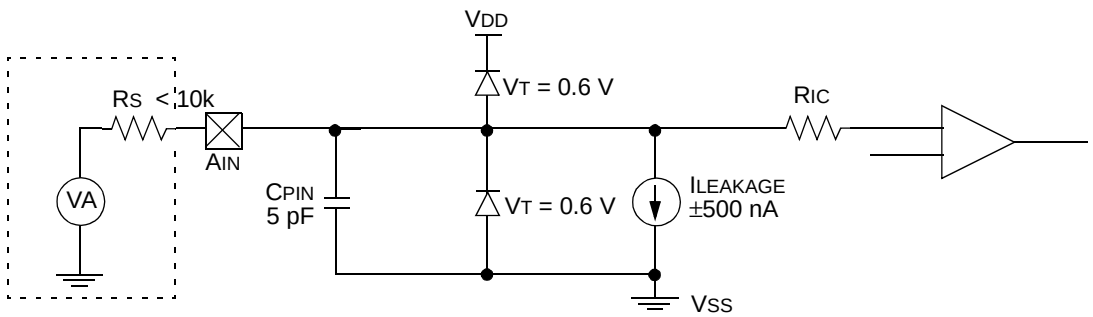
19.8 Effects of a RESET

A device RESET forces the CMCON register to its RESET state, causing the comparator module to be in the comparator RESET mode, CM<2:0> = `000`. This ensures that all potential inputs are analog inputs. Device current is minimized when analog inputs are present at RESET time. The comparators will be powered down during the RESET interval.

19.9 Analog Input Connection Considerations

A simplified circuit for an analog input is shown in Figure 19-4. Since the analog pins are connected to a digital output, they have reverse biased diodes to VDD and VSS. The analog input, therefore, must be between VSS and VDD. If the input voltage deviates from this range by more than 0.6 V in either direction, one of the diodes is forward biased and a latch-up condition may occur. A maximum source impedance of 10 kΩ is recommended for the analog sources. Any external component connected to an analog input pin, such as a capacitor or a Zener diode, should have very little leakage current.

FIGURE 19-4: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



Legend:

CPIN	=	Input Capacitance
VT	=	Threshold Voltage
ILEAKAGE	=	Leakage Current at the pin due to various junctions
RIC	=	Interconnect Resistance
RS	=	Source Impedance
VA	=	Analog Voltage

TABLE 19-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR	Value on All Other RESETS
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
VRCON	VREN	VROE	VRR	VRSS	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0	0000 0000	0000 0000
INTCON	GIE/ GIEH	PEIE/ GIEL	TMR0IE	INTIE	RBIE	TMR0IF	INTIF	RBIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
PIR2	—	CMIF	—	—	BCLIF	LVDIF	TMR3IF	CCP2IF	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
PIE2	—	CMIE	—	—	BCLIE	LVDIE	TMR3IE	CCP2IE	-0-- 0000	-0-- 0000
IPR2	—	CMIP	—	—	BCLIP	LVDIP	TMR3IP	CCP2IP	-1-- 1111	-1-- 1111
PORTF	RF7	RF6	RF5	RF4	RF3	RF2	RF1	RF0	x000 0000	u000 0000
LATF	LATF7	LATF6	LATF5	LATF4	LATF3	LATF2	LATF1	LATF0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
TRISF	PORTF Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, read as "0"

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

20.0 COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE MODULE

The Comparator Voltage Reference is a 16-tap resistor ladder network that provides a selectable voltage reference. The resistor ladder is segmented to provide two ranges of CVREF values and has a power-down function to conserve power when the reference is not being used. The CVRCON register controls the operation of the reference as shown in Register 20-1. The block diagram is given in Figure 20-1.

The comparator reference supply voltage can come from either VDD or VSS, or the external VREF+ and VREF- that are multiplexed with RA3 and RA2. The comparator reference supply voltage is controlled by the CVRSS bit.

20.1 Configuring the Comparator Voltage Reference

The Comparator Voltage Reference can output 16 distinct voltage levels for each range. The equations used to calculate the output of the Comparator Voltage Reference are as follows:

If CVRR = 1:
CVREF= (CVR<3:0>/24) x CVRSRC

If CVRR = 0:
CVREF = (CVDD x 1/4) + (CVR<3:0>/32) x CVRSRC

The settling time of the Comparator Voltage Reference must be considered when changing the CVREF output (Section 25.0).

REGISTER 20-1: VRCON REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
VREN	VROE	VRR	VRSS	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7 **VREN**: Comparator Voltage Reference Enable
1 = CVREF circuit powered on
0 = CVREF circuit powered down

bit 6 **VROE**: Comparator VREF Output Enable
1 = CVREF voltage level is also output on the RF5/AN10/CVREF pin
0 = CVREF voltage is disconnected from the RF5/AN10/CVREF pin

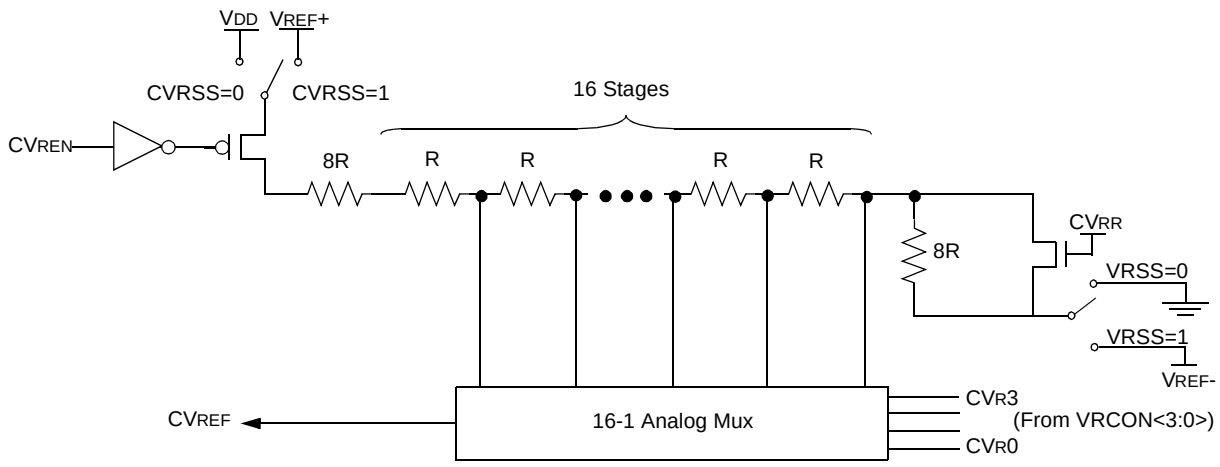
bit 5 **VRR**: Comparator VREF Range Selection
1 = 0.00 CVRSRC to 0.75 CVRSRC, with CVRSRC/24 step size
0 = 0.25 CVRSRC to 0.75 CVRSRC, with CVRSRC/32 step size

bit 4 **VRSS**: Comparator VREF Source Selection
1 = Comparator reference source CVRSRC = VREF+-VREF-
0 = Comparator reference source CVRSRC = VDD-VSS

bit 3-0 **VR3:VR0:** Comparator VREF Value Selection 0 ≤ VR3:VR0 ≤ 15
When VRR = 1:
CVREF = (VR<3:0>/ 24) • (CVRSRC)
When VRR = 0:
CVREF = 1/4 • (CVRSRC) + (VR3:VR0/ 32) • (CVRSRC)

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

FIGURE 20-1: VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: R is defined in Section 25.0.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

20.2 Voltage Reference Accuracy/Error

The full range of voltage reference cannot be realized due to the construction of the module. The transistors on the top and bottom of the resistor ladder network (Figure 20-1) keep VREF from approaching the reference source rails. The voltage reference is derived from the reference source; therefore, the VREF output changes with fluctuations in that source. The tested absolute accuracy of the voltage reference can be found in Section 25.0.

20.3 Operation During SLEEP

When the device wakes up from SLEEP through an interrupt or a Watchdog Timer time-out, the contents of the VRCON register are not affected. To minimize current consumption in SLEEP mode, the voltage reference should be disabled.

20.4 Effects of a RESET

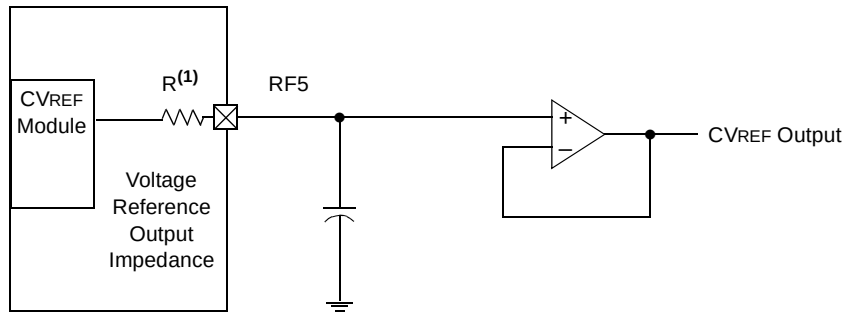
A device RESET disables the voltage reference by clearing bit VREN (VRCON register). This RESET also disconnects the reference from the RA2 pin by clearing bit VROE (VRCON register) and selects the high voltage range by clearing bit CVRR (VRCON register). The VRSS value select bits, CVRCON<3:0>, are also cleared.

20.5 Connection Considerations

The voltage reference module operates independently of the comparator module. The output of the reference generator may be connected to the RF5 pin if the TRISF<5> bit is set and the VROE bit (VRCON register) is set. Enabling the voltage reference output onto the RF5 pin, with an input signal present, will increase current consumption. Connecting RF5 as a digital output with VRSS enabled will also increase current consumption.

The RF5 pin can be used as a simple D/A output with limited drive capability. Due to the limited current drive capability, a buffer must be used on the voltage reference output for external connections to VREF. Figure 20-2 shows an example buffering technique.

FIGURE 20-2: VOLTAGE REFERENCE OUTPUT BUFFER EXAMPLE



Note 1: R is dependent upon the Voltage Reference Configuration VRCON<3:0> and VRCON<5>.

TABLE 20-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR VOLTAGE REFERENCE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value On POR	Value On All Other RESETS
VRCON	VREN	VROE	VRR	VRSS	VR3	VR2	VR1	VR0	0000 0000	0000 0000
CMCON	C2OUT	C1OUT	C2INV	C1INV	CIS	CM2	CM1	CM0	0000 0000	0000 0000
TRISF	TRISF7	TRISF6	TRISF5	TRISF4	TRISF3	TRISF2	TRISF1	TRISF0	1111 1111	1111 1111

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.0 LOW VOLTAGE DETECT

In many applications, the ability to determine if the device voltage (V_{DD}) is below a specified voltage level is a desirable feature. A window of operation for the application can be created, where the application software can do "housekeeping tasks" before the device voltage exits the valid operating range. This can be done using the Low Voltage Detect module.

This module is software programmable circuitry, where a device voltage trip point can be specified (internal reference voltage or external voltage input). When the voltage of the device becomes lower than the specified point, an interrupt flag is set. If the interrupt is enabled, the program execution will branch to the interrupt vector address and the software can then respond to that interrupt source.

The Low Voltage Detect circuitry is completely under software control. This allows the circuitry to be "turned off" by the software, which minimizes the current consumption for the device.

Figure 21-1 shows a possible application voltage curve (typically for batteries). Over time, the device voltage decreases. When the device voltage equals voltage V_A, the LVD logic generates an interrupt. This occurs at time T_A. The application software then has the time, until the device voltage is no longer in valid operating range, to shut down the system. Voltage point V_B is the minimum valid operating voltage specification. This occurs at time T_B. T_B - T_A is the total time for shutdown.

FIGURE 21-1: TYPICAL LOW VOLTAGE DETECT APPLICATION

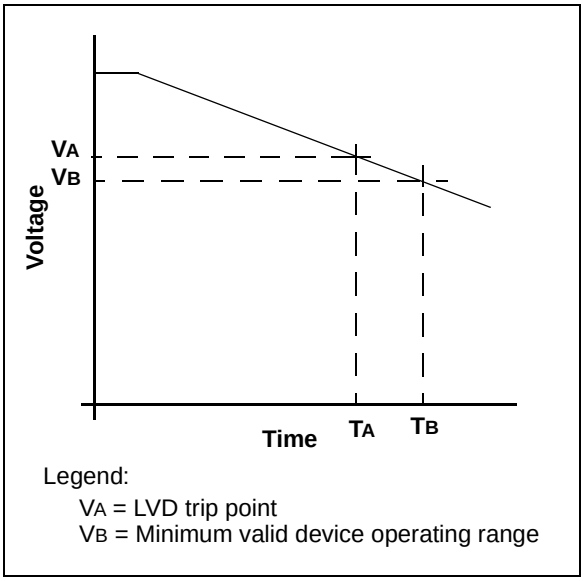
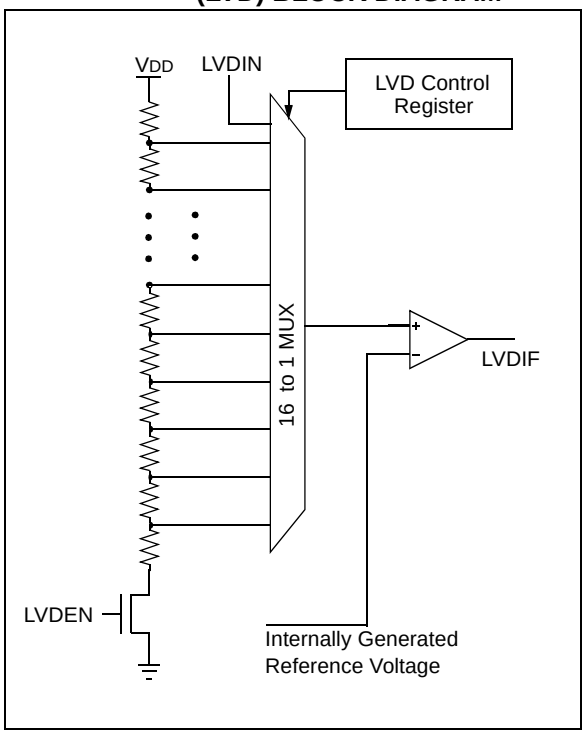


Figure 21-2 shows the block diagram for the LVD module. A comparator uses an internally generated reference voltage as the set point. When the selected tap output of the device voltage crosses the set point (is lower than), the LVDIF bit (PIR registers) is set.

Each node in the resister divider represents a “trip point” voltage. The “trip point” voltage is the minimum supply voltage level at which the device can operate before the LVD module asserts an interrupt. When the supply voltage is equal to the trip point, the voltage tapped off of the resistor array (or external LVDIN input pin) is equal to the voltage generated by the internal voltage reference module. The comparator then generates an interrupt signal setting the LVDIF bit. This voltage is software programmable to any one of 16 values (See Figure 21-2). The trip point is selected by programming the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON<3:0>).

FIGURE 21-2: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT (LVD) BLOCK DIAGRAM



21.1 Control Register

The Low Voltage Detect Control register (Register 21-1) controls the operation of the Low Voltage Detect circuitry.

REGISTER 21-1: LVDCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1
—	—	IRVST	LVDEN	LVDL3	LVDL2	LVDL1	LVDL0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5 **IRVST:** Internal Reference Voltage Stable Flag bit
1 = Indicates that the Low Voltage Detect logic will generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range
0 = Indicates that the Low Voltage Detect logic will not generate the interrupt flag at the specified voltage range and the LVD interrupt should not be enabled

bit 4 **LVDEN:** Low Voltage Detect Power Enable bit
1 = Enables LVD, powers up LVD circuit
0 = Disables LVD, powers down LVD circuit

bit 3-0 **LVDL3:LVDL0:** Low Voltage Detection Limit bits
1111 = External analog input is used (input comes from the LVDIN pin)
1110 = 4.5V min - 4.77V max.
1101 = 4.2V min - 4.45V max.
1100 = 4.0V min - 4.24V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
1011 = 3.8V min - 4.03V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
1010 = 3.6V min - 3.82V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
1001 = 3.5V min - 3.71V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
1000 = 3.3V min - 3.50V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
0111 = 3.0V min - 3.18V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
0110 = 2.8V min - 2.97V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
0101 = 2.7V min - 2.86V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
0100 = 2.5V min - 2.65V max.; Reserved on PIC18CXX8
0011 = Reserved on PIC18CXX8 and PIC18LCXX8
0010 = Reserved on PIC18CXX8 and PIC18LCXX8
0001 = Reserved on PIC18CXX8 and PIC18LCXX8
0000 = Reserved on PIC18CXX8 and PIC18LCXX8

Note: LVDL3:LVDL0 modes which result in a trip point below the valid operating voltage of the device are not tested.

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
- n = Value at POR	’1’ = Bit is set	’0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

21.2 Operation

Depending on the power source for the device voltage, the voltage normally decreases relatively slowly. This means that the LVD module does not need to be constantly operating. To decrease current consumption, the LVD circuitry only needs to be enabled for short periods, where the voltage is checked. After doing the check, the LVD module may be disabled.

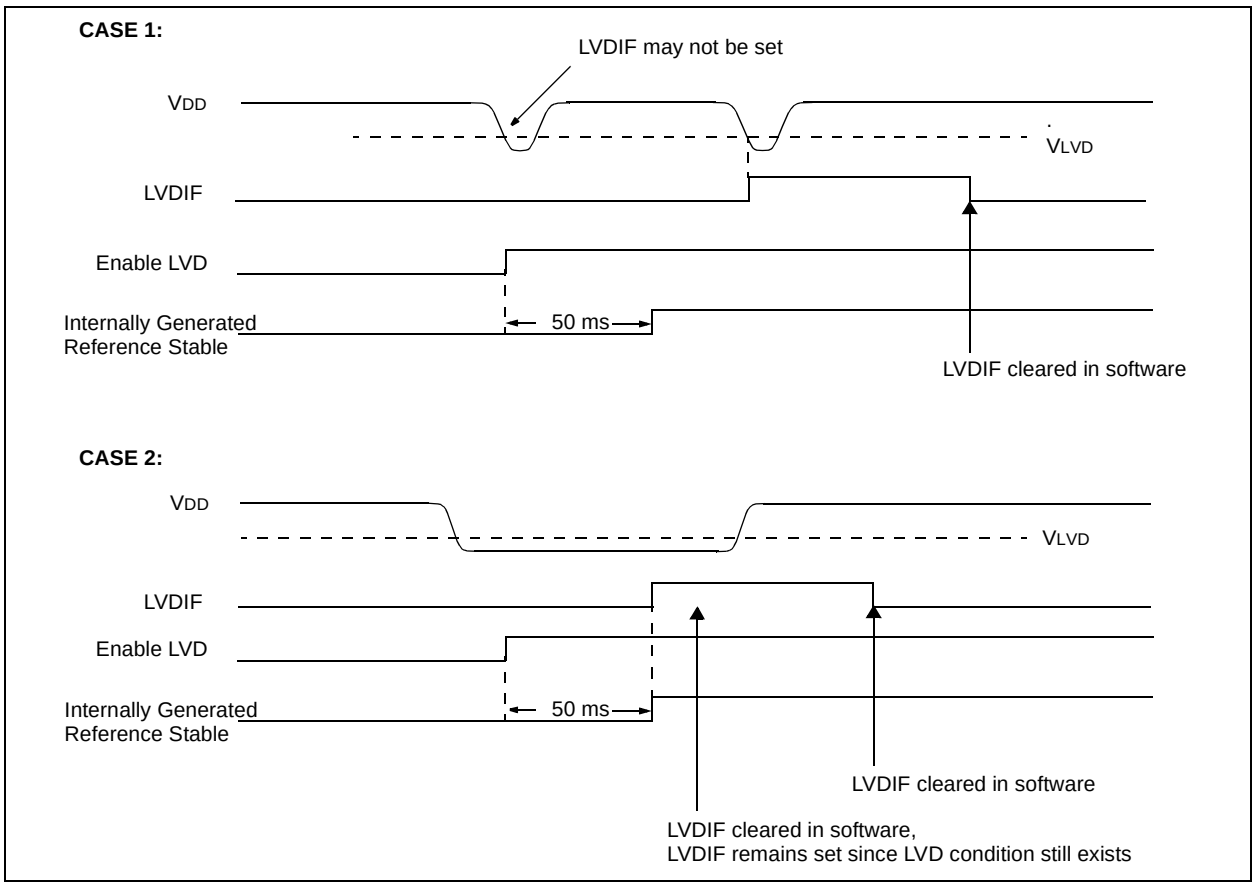
Each time that the LVD module is enabled, the circuitry requires some time to stabilize. After the circuitry has stabilized, all status flags may be cleared. The module will then indicate the proper state of the system.

The following steps are needed to setup the LVD module:

1. Write the value to the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits (LVDCON register), which selects the desired LVD Trip Point.
2. Ensure that LVD interrupts are disabled (the LVDIE bit is cleared or the GIE bit is cleared).
3. Enable the LVD module (set the LVDEN bit in the LVDCON register).
4. Wait for the LVD module to stabilize (the IRVST bit to become set).
5. Clear the LVD interrupt flag, which may have falsely become set, until the LVD module has stabilized (clear the LVDIF bit).
6. Enable the LVD interrupt (set the LVDIE and the GIE bits).

Figure 21-3 shows typical waveforms that the LVD module may be used to detect.

FIGURE 21-3: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT WAVEFORMS



21.2.1 REFERENCE VOLTAGE SET POINT

The Internal Reference Voltage of the LVD module may be used by other internal circuitry (the programmable Brown-out Reset). If these circuits are disabled (lower current consumption), the reference voltage circuit requires time to become stable before a low voltage condition can be reliably detected. This time is invariant of system clock speed. This start-up time is specified in electrical specification parameter #36. The low voltage interrupt flag will not be enabled until a stable reference voltage is reached. Refer to the waveform in Figure 21-3.

21.2.2 CURRENT CONSUMPTION

When the module is enabled, the LVD comparator and voltage divider are enabled and will consume static current. The voltage divider can be tapped from multiple places in the resistor array. Total current consumption, when enabled, is specified in electrical specification parameter #D022B.

21.3 External Analog Voltage Input

The LVD module has an additional feature that allows the user to supply the trip point voltage to the module from an external source (the LVDIN pin). The LVDIN pin is used as the trip point when the LVDL3:LVDL0 bits = '`1111`'. This state connects the LVDIN pin voltage to the comparator. The other comparator input is connected to an internal reference voltage source.

21.4 Operation During SLEEP

When enabled, the LVD circuitry continues to operate during SLEEP. If the device voltage crosses the trip point, the LVDIF bit will be set and the device will wake-up from SLEEP. Device execution will continue from the interrupt vector address if interrupts have been globally enabled.

21.5 Effects of a RESET

A device RESET forces all registers to their RESET state. This forces the LVD module to be turned off.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.0 SPECIAL FEATURES OF THE CPU

There are several features intended to maximize system reliability, minimize cost through elimination of external components, provide power saving operating modes and offer code protection:

- OSC Selection
- RESET
  - Power-on Reset (POR)
  - Power-up Timer (PWRT)
  - Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
  - Programmable Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- Interrupts
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- SLEEP
- Code Protection
- ID Locations
- In-circuit Serial Programming

PIC18CXX8 devices have a Watchdog Timer, which is permanently enabled via the configuration bits or it can be software-controlled. It runs off its own RC oscillator for added reliability. There are two timers that offer necessary delays on power-up. One is the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST), intended to keep the chip in RESET until the crystal oscillator is stable. The other is the Power-up Timer (PWRT), which provides a fixed delay on power-up only, designed to keep the part in RESET while the power supply stabilizes. With these two timers on-chip, most applications need no external RESET circuitry.

SLEEP mode is designed to offer a very low current Power-down mode. The user can wake-up from SLEEP through external RESET, Watchdog Timer Wake-up or through an interrupt. Several oscillator options are also made available to allow the part to fit the application. The RC oscillator option saves system cost, while the LP crystal option saves power. A set of configuration bits are used to select various options.

22.1 Configuration Bits

The configuration bits can be programmed (read as '0'), or left unprogrammed (read as '1'), to select various device configurations. These bits are mapped starting at program memory location 300000h.

The user will note that address 300000h is beyond the user program memory space. In fact, it belongs to the configuration memory space (300000h - 3FFFFFh), which can only be accessed using table reads and table writes.

TABLE 22-1: CONFIGURATION BITS AND DEVICE ID'S

Filename		Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Default/ Unprogrammed Value
300000h	CONFIG1L	CP	CP	CP	CP	CP	CP	CP	CP	1111 1111
300001h	CONFIG1H	r	r	$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$	—	—	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0	111- -111
300002h	CONFIG2L	—	—	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BODEN	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$	---- 1111
300003h	CONFIG2H	—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN	---- 1111
300006h	CONFIG4L	—	—	—	—	—	—	r	STVREN	---- --11
3FFFFEh	DEVID1	DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0	1111 1111
3FFFFFh	DEVID2	DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3	1111 1111

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented, q = value depends on condition, r = reserved.
Grayed cells are unimplemented, read as '0'.

REGISTER 22-1: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 1 LOW (CONFIG1L: BYTE ADDRESS 0x300000)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
CP	CP	CP	CP	CP	CP	CP	CP
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **CP:** Code Protection bits (apply when in Code Protected Microcontroller mode)
`1` = Program memory code protection off
`0` = All of program memory code protected

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 22-2: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 1 HIGH (CONFIG1H: BYTE ADDRESS 0x300001)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
Reserved	Reserved	$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$	—	—	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain this bit set

bit 5 **$\overline{\text{OSCSEN}}$**: Oscillator System Clock Switch Enable bit
`1` = Oscillator system clock switch option is disabled (Main oscillator is source)
`0` = Oscillator system clock switch option is enabled (Oscillator switching is enabled)

bit 4-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 2-0 **FOSC2:FOSC0**: Oscillator Selection bits
`111` = RC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as RA6
`110` = HS4 oscillator with PLL enabled/Clock frequency = (4 x Fosc)
`101` = EC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as RA6
`100` = EC oscillator w/ OSC2 configured as divide by 4 clock output
`011` = RC oscillator
`010` = HS oscillator
`001` = XT oscillator
`000` = LP oscillator

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

REGISTER 22-3: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 LOW (CONFIG2L: BYTE ADDRESS 0x300002)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	BORV1	BORV0	BOREN	$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-2 **BORV1:BORV0:** Brown-out Reset Voltage bits
`11` = V_{BOR} set to 2.5V
`10` = V_{BOR} set to 2.7V
`01` = V_{BOR} set to 4.2V
`00` = V_{BOR} set to 4.5V

bit 1 **BOREN:** Brown-out Reset Enable bit(1)
`1` = Brown-out Reset enabled
`0` = Brown-out Reset disabled

bit 0 **$\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$:** Power-up Timer Enable bit(1)
`1` = PWRT disabled
`0` = PWRT enabled

Note 1: Enabling Brown-out Reset automatically enables the Power-up Timer (PWRT), regardless of the value of bit $\overline{\text{PWRTEN}}$. Ensure the Power-up Timer is enabled any time Brown-out Reset is enabled.

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 22-4: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 2 HIGH (CONFIG2H: BYTE ADDRESS 0x300003)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS1	WDTPS0	WDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-1 **WDTPS2:WDTPS0:** Watchdog Timer Postscale Select bits
`000` = 1:128
`001` = 1:64
`010` = 1:32
`011` = 1:16
`100` = 1:8
`101` = 1:4
`110` = 1:2
`111` = 1:1

bit 0 **WDTEN:** Watchdog Timer Enable bit
`1` = WDT enabled
`0` = WDT disabled (control is placed on the SWDTEN bit)

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

REGISTER 22-5: CONFIGURATION REGISTER 4 LOW (CONFIG4L: BYTE ADDRESS 0x300006)

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/P-1	R/P-1
—	—	—	—	—	—	Reserved	STVREN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ’0’

bit 1 **Reserved:** Maintain this bit set

bit 0 **STVREN:** Stack Full/Underflow RESET Enable bit
1 = Stack Full/Underflow will cause RESET
0 = Stack Full/Underflow will not cause RESET

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
- n = Value when device is unprogrammed		u = Unchanged from programmed state

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.2 Watchdog Timer (WDT)

The Watchdog Timer is a free running on-chip RC oscillator, which does not require any external components. This RC oscillator is separate from the RC oscillator of the OSC1/CLKI pin. That means that the WDT will run, even if the clock on the OSC1/CLKI and OSC2/CLKO/RA6 pins of the device has been stopped; for example, by execution of a `SLEEP` instruction.

During normal operation, a WDT time-out generates a device RESET (Watchdog Timer Reset). If the device is in SLEEP mode, a WDT time-out causes the device to wake-up and continue with normal operation (Watchdog Timer Wake-up). The $\overline{TO}$ bit in the RCON register will be cleared upon a WDT time-out.

The Watchdog Timer is enabled/disabled by a device configuration bit. If the WDT is enabled, software execution may not disable this function. When the WDTEN configuration bit is cleared, the SWDTEN bit enables/disables the operation of the WDT.

The WDT time-out period values may be found in the Electrical Specifications section under parameter #31. Values for the WDT postscaler may be assigned using the configuration bits.

Note:	The `CLRWDT` and `SLEEP` instructions clear the WDT and the postscaler if assigned to the WDT, and prevent it from timing out and generating a device RESET condition.

Note:	When a `CLRWDT` instruction is executed and the prescaler is assigned to the WDT, the prescaler count will be cleared, but the prescaler assignment is not changed.

22.2.1 CONTROL REGISTER

Register 22-6 shows the WDTCON register. This is a readable and writable register, which contains a control bit that allows software to override the WDT enable configuration bit, only when the configuration bit has disabled the WDT.

REGISTER 22-6: WDTCON REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-1 **Unimplemented**: Read as ’0’

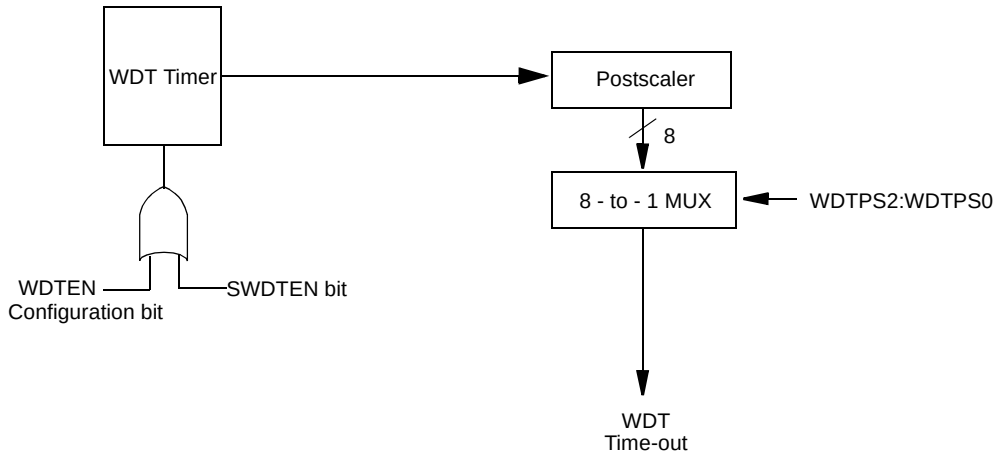
bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Controlled Watchdog Timer Enable bit
`1` = Watchdog Timer is on
`0` = Watchdog Timer is turned off if the WDTEN configuration bit in the configuration register = ’0’

Legend:	
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit
U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	- n = Value at POR

22.2.2 WDT POSTSCALER

The WDT has a postscaler that can extend the WDT Reset period. The postscaler is selected at the time of the device programming, by the value written to the CONFIG2H configuration register.

FIGURE 22-1: WATCHDOG TIMER BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: WDPS2:WDPS0 are bits in a configuration register.

TABLE 22-2: SUMMARY OF WATCHDOG TIMER REGISTERS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
CONFIG2H	—	—	—	—	WDTPS2	WDTPS2	WDTPS0	WDTEN
RCON	IPEN	LWRT	—	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$
WDTCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SWDTEN

Legend: Shaded cells are not used by the Watchdog Timer.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.3 Power-down Mode (SLEEP)

Power-down mode is entered by executing a `SLEEP` instruction.

Upon entering into Power-down mode, the following actions are performed:

1. Watchdog Timer is cleared and kept running.
2. $\overline{PD}$ bit in RCON register is cleared.
3. $\overline{TO}$ bit in RCON register is set.
4. Oscillator driver is turned off.
5. I/O ports maintain the status they had before the `SLEEP` instruction was executed.

To achieve lowest current consumption, follow these steps before switching to Power-down mode:

1. Place all I/O pins at either V_{DD} or V_{SS} and ensure no external circuitry is drawing current from I/O pin.
2. Power-down A/D and external clocks.
3. Pull all hi-impedance inputs to high or low externally.
4. Place T0CKI at V_{SS} or V_{DD}.
5. Current consumption by PORTB on-chip pull-ups should be taken into account and disabled if necessary.

The $\overline{MCLR}$ pin must be at a logic high level (V_{IHMC}).

22.3.1 WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The device can wake-up from SLEEP through one of the following events:

1. External RESET input on $\overline{MCLR}$ pin.
2. Watchdog Timer Wake-up (if WDT was enabled).
3. Interrupt from INT pin, RB port change or a Peripheral Interrupt.

The following peripheral interrupts can wake the device from SLEEP:

1. PSP read or write.
2. TMR1 interrupt. Timer1 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
3. TMR3 interrupt. Timer3 must be operating as an asynchronous counter.
4. CCP Capture mode interrupt.
5. Special event trigger (Timer1 in Asynchronous mode using an external clock).
6. MSSP (START/STOP) bit detect interrupt.
7. MSSP transmit or receive in Slave mode (SPI/I^2C).
8. USART RX or TX (Synchronous Slave mode).
9. A/D conversion (when A/D clock source is RC).
10. Activity on CAN bus receive line.

Other peripherals cannot generate interrupts, since during SLEEP, no on-chip clocks are present.

External $\overline{MCLR}$ Reset will cause a device RESET. All other events are considered a continuation of program execution and will cause a "wake-up". The $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ bits in the RCON register can be used to determine the cause of the device RESET. The $\overline{PD}$ bit, which is set on power-up, is cleared when `SLEEP` is invoked. The $\overline{TO}$ bit is cleared, if a WDT time-out occurred (and caused wake-up).

When the `SLEEP` instruction is being executed, the next instruction (PC + 2) is pre-fetched. For the device to wake-up through an interrupt event, the corresponding interrupt enable bit must be set (enabled). Wake-up is regardless of the state of the GIE bit. If the GIE bit is clear (disabled), the device continues execution at the instruction after the `SLEEP` instruction. If the GIE bit is set (enabled), the device executes the instruction after the `SLEEP` instruction and then branches to the interrupt address. In cases where the execution of the instruction following `SLEEP` is not desirable, the user should have a `NOP` after the `SLEEP` instruction.

22.3.2 WAKE-UP USING INTERRUPTS

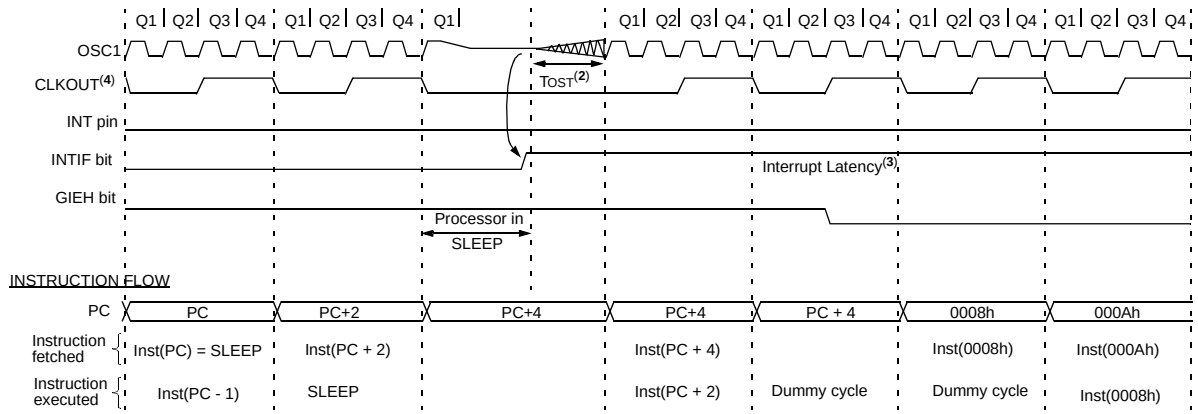
When global interrupts are disabled (GIE cleared) and any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and interrupt flag bit set, one of the following will occur:

- If an interrupt condition (interrupt flag bit and interrupt enable bits are set) occurs **before** the execution of a SLEEP instruction, the SLEEP instruction will complete as a NOP. Therefore, the WDT and WDT postscaler will not be cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ bit will not be set and $\overline{PD}$ bits will not be cleared.
- If the interrupt condition occurs **during or after** the execution of a SLEEP instruction, the device will immediately wake-up from sleep. The SLEEP instruction will be completely executed before the wake-up. Therefore, the WDT and WDT postscaler will be cleared, the $\overline{TO}$ bit will be set and the $\overline{PD}$ bit will be cleared.

Even if the flag bits were checked before executing a SLEEP instruction, it may be possible for flag bits to become set before the SLEEP instruction completes. To determine whether a SLEEP instruction executed, test the $\overline{PD}$ bit. If the $\overline{PD}$ bit is set, the SLEEP instruction was executed as a NOP.

To ensure that the WDT is cleared, a CLRWDT instruction should be executed before a SLEEP instruction.

FIGURE 22-2: WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP THROUGH INTERRUPT(1,2)



Note 1: XT, HS or LP oscillator mode assumed.
2: GIE set is assumed. In this case, after wake- up, the processor jumps to the interrupt routine. If GIE is cleared, execution will continue in-line.
3: TOST = 1024TOSC (drawing not to scale). This delay will not occur for RC and EC osc modes.
4: CLKOUT is not available in these oscillator modes, but shown here for timing reference.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

22.4 Program Verification/Code Protection

If the code protection bit(s) have not been programmed, the on-chip program memory can be read out for verification purposes.

Note:	Microchip Technology does not recommend code protecting windowed devices.

22.5 ID Locations

Five memory locations (200000h - 200004h) are designated as ID locations, where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are accessible during normal execution through the `TBLRD` instruction, or during program/verify. The ID locations can be read when the device is code protected.

22.6 In-Circuit Serial Programming

PIC18CXX8 microcontrollers can be serially programmed while in the end application circuit. This is simply done with two lines for clock and data, and three other lines for power, ground and the programming voltage. This allows customers to manufacture boards with unprogrammed devices, and then program the microcontroller just before shipping the product. This also allows the most recent firmware or a custom firmware to be programmed.

22.7 Device ID Bits

Device ID bits are located in program memory at 3FFFFEh and 3FFFFFh. The Device ID bits are used by programmers to retrieve part number and revision information about a device. These registers may also be accessed using a `TBLRD` instruction (Register 22-8 and Register 22-7).

REGISTER 22-7: DEVID1 ID REGISTER FOR THE PIC18CXX8 DEVICE (0x3FFFFE)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
DEV2	DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-5 **DEV2:DEV0**: Device ID bits
These bits are used with the DEV10:DEV3 bits in the Device ID register 2 to identify the part number

bit 4-0 **REV4:REV0**: Revision ID bits
These bits are used to indicate the revision of the device

Legend:	
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit
U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	- n = Unprogrammed Value (x = unknown)

REGISTER 22-8: DEVID2 ID REGISTER FOR THE PIC18CXX8 DEVICE (0x3FFFFF)

R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1	R/P-1
DEV10	DEV9	DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3
bit 7							bit 0

bit 7-0 **DEV10:DEV3**: Device ID bits
These bits are used with the DEV2:DEV0 bits in the Device ID register 1 to identify the part number

Legend:	
R = Readable bit	P = Programmable bit
U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	- n = Unprogrammed Value (x = unknown)

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

23.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

The PIC18CXX8 instruction set adds many enhancements to the previous PICmicro® instruction sets, while maintaining an easy migration from these PICmicro instruction sets.

Most instructions are a single program memory word (16-bits), but there are three instructions that require two program memory locations.

Each single word instruction is a 16-bit word divided into an OPCODE, which specifies the instruction type and one or more operands, which further specify the operation of the instruction.

The instruction set is highly orthogonal and is grouped into four basic categories:

- **Byte-oriented** operations
- **Bit-oriented** operations
- **Literal** operations
- **Control** operations

The PIC18CXX8 instruction set summary in Table 23-2 lists **byte-oriented**, **bit-oriented**, **literal** and **control** operations. Table 23-1 shows the opcode field descriptions.

Most **byte-oriented** instructions have three operands:

1. The file register (specified by the value of 'f')
2. The destination of the result (specified by the value of 'd')
3. The accessed memory (specified by the value of 'a')

'f' represents a file register designator and 'd' represents a destination designator. The file register designator specifies which file register is to be used by the instruction.

The destination designator specifies where the result of the operation is to be placed. If 'd' is zero, the result is placed in the WREG register. If 'd' is one, the result is placed in the file register specified in the instruction.

All **bit-oriented** instructions have three operands:

1. The file register (specified by the value of 'f')
2. The bit in the file register (specified by the value of 'b')
3. The accessed memory (specified by the value of 'a')

'b' represents a bit field designator which selects the number of the bit affected by the operation, while 'f' represents the number of the file in which the bit is located.

The **literal** instructions may use some of the following operands:

- A literal value to be loaded into a file register (specified by the value of 'k')
- The desired FSR register to load the literal value into (specified by the value of 'f')
- No operand required (specified by the value of '—')

The **control** instructions may use some of the following operands:

- A program memory address (specified by the value of 'n')
- The mode of the Call or Return instructions (specified by the value of 's')
- The mode of the Table Read and Table Write instructions (specified by the value of 'm')
- No operand required (specified by the value of '—')

All instructions are a single word, except for four double word instructions. These three instructions were made double word instructions so that all the required information is available in these 32-bits. In the second word, the 4-MSb's are 1's. If this second word is executed as an instruction (by itself), it will execute as a `NOP`.

All single word instructions are executed in a single instruction cycle, unless a conditional test is true or the program counter is changed as a result of the instruction. In these cases, the execution takes two instruction cycles with the additional instruction cycle(s) executed as a `NOP`.

The double word instructions execute in two instruction cycles.

One instruction cycle consists of four oscillator periods. Thus, for an oscillator frequency of 4 MHz, the normal instruction execution time is 1 µs. If a conditional test is true or the program counter is changed as a result of an instruction, the instruction execution time is 2 µs. Two word branch instructions (if true) would take 3 µs.

Figure 23-1 shows the general formats that the instructions can have.

All examples use the following format to represent a hexadecimal number:

```
0xhh
```

where h signifies a hexadecimal digit.

The Instruction Set Summary, shown in Table 23-2, lists the instructions recognized by the Microchip assembler (MPASM™).

Section 23.1 provides a description of each instruction.

TABLE 23-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
a	RAM access bit a = 0: RAM location in Access RAM (BSR register is ignored) a = 1: RAM bank is specified by BSR register
ACCESS	ACCESS = 0: RAM access bit symbol
BANKED	BANKED = 1: RAM access bit symbol
bbb	Bit address within an 8-bit file register (0 to 7)
BSR	Bank Select Register. Used to select the current RAM bank.
d	Destination select bit; d = 0: store result in WREG, d = 1: store result in file register f.
dest	Destination either the WREG register or the specified register file location
f	8-bit Register file address (0x00 to 0xFF)
f_s	12-bit Register file address (0x000 to 0xFFF). This is the source address.
f_d	12-bit Register file address (0x000 to 0xFFF). This is the destination address.
k	Literal field, constant data or label (may be either an 8-bit, 12-bit or a 20-bit value)
label	Label name
mm * *+ *- +*	The mode of the TBLPTR register for the Table Read and Table Write instructions Only used with Table Read and Table Write instructions: No Change to register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes) Post-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes) Post-Decrement register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes) Pre-Increment register (such as TBLPTR with Table reads and writes)
n	The relative address (2’s complement number) for relative branch instructions, or the direct address for Call/Branch and Return instructions
PRODH	Product of Multiply high byte (Register at address 0xFF4)
PRODL	Product of Multiply low byte (Register at address 0xFF3)
s	Fast Call / Return mode select bit. s = 0: do not update into/from shadow registers s = 1: certain registers loaded into/from shadow registers (Fast mode)
u	Unused or Unchanged (Register at address 0xFE8)
W	W = 0: Destination select bit symbol
WREG	Working register (accumulator) (Register at address 0xFE8)
x	Don't care (0 or 1) The assembler will generate code with x = 0. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools.
TBLPTR	21-bit Table Pointer (points to a Program Memory location) (Register at address 0xFF6)
TABLAT	8-bit Table Latch (Register at address 0xFF5)
TOS	Top-of-Stack
PC	Program Counter
PCL	Program Counter Low Byte (Register at address 0xFF9)
PCH	Program Counter High Byte
PCLATH	Program Counter High Byte Latch (Register at address 0xFFA)
PCLATU	Program Counter Upper Byte Latch (Register at address 0xFFB)
GIE	Global Interrupt Enable bit
WDT	Watchdog Timer
$\overline{TO}$	Time-out bit
$\overline{PD}$	Power-down bit
C, DC, Z, OV, N	ALU status bits Carry, Digit Carry, Zero, Overflow, Negative
[ ]	Optional
( )	Contents
→	Assigned to
< >	Register bit field
∈	In the set of
italics	User defined term (font is courier)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 23-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS

Byte-oriented file register operations

Example Instruction

15 – 10	9	8	7 – 0
OPCODE	d	a	f (FILE #)

ADDWF MYREG, W, B

d = 0 for result destination to be WREG register
d = 1 for result destination to be file register (f)
a = 0 to force Access Bank
a = 1 for BSR to select Bank
f = 8-bit file register address

Byte to Byte move operations (2-word)

15 – 12	11 – 0
OPCODE	f (Source FILE #)
1111	f (Destination FILE #)

MOVFF MYREG1, MYREG2

f = 12-bit file register address

Bit-oriented file register operations

15 – 12	11 – 9	8	7 – 0
OPCODE	b (BIT #)	a	f (FILE #)

BSF MYREG, bit, B

b = 3-bit position of bit in file register (f)
a = 0 to force Access Bank
a = 1 for BSR to select Bank
f = 8-bit file register address

Literal operations

15 – 8	7 – 0
OPCODE	k (literal)

MOVLW 0x7F

k = 8-bit immediate value

Control operations

CALL, GOTO and Branch operations

15 – 8	7 – 0
OPCODE	n<7:0> (literal)
1111	n<19:8> (literal)

GOTO Label

n = 20-bit immediate value

15 – 8	7	7 – 0
OPCODE	S	n<7:0> (literal)
1111		n<19:8> (literal)

CALL MYFUNC

S = Fast bit

15 – 11	10 – 0
OPCODE	n<10:0> (literal)

BRA MYFUNC

15 – 8	7 – 0
OPCODE	n<7:0> (literal)

BC MYFUNC

15 – 6	4 – 0
OPCODE	f	k (literal)
1111	0000	k (literal)

LFSR FSR0, 0x100

TABLE 23-2: PIC18CXX8 INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
BYTE-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
ADDWF	f [,d] [,a]	Add WREG and f	1	0010	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 6
ADDWFC	f [,d] [,a]	Add WREG and Carry bit to f	1	0010	00da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 6
ANDWF	f [,d] [,a]	AND WREG with f	1	0001	01da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1,2, 6
CLRF	f [,a]	Clear f	1	0110	101a	ffff	ffff	Z	2, 6
COMF	f [,d] [,a]	Complement f	1	0001	11da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2, 6
CPFSEQ	f [,a]	Compare f with WREG, skip =	1 (2 or 3)	0110	001a	ffff	ffff	None	4, 6
CPFSGT	f [,a]	Compare f with WREG, skip >	1 (2 or 3)	0110	010a	ffff	ffff	None	4, 6
CPFSLT	f [,a]	Compare f with WREG, skip <	1 (2 or 3)	0110	000a	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 6
DECF	f [,d] [,a]	Decrement f	1	0000	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4, 6
DECFSZ	f [,d] [,a]	Decrement f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0010	11da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 3, 4, 6
DCFSNZ	f [,d] [,a]	Decrement f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100	11da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 6
INCF	f [,d] [,a]	Increment f	1	0010	10da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 3, 4, 6
INCFSZ	f [,d] [,a]	Increment f, Skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0011	11da	ffff	ffff	None	4, 6
INFSNZ	f [,d] [,a]	Increment f, Skip if Not 0	1 (2 or 3)	0100	10da	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 6
IORWF	f [,d] [,a]	Inclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2, 6
MOVF	f [,d] [,a]	Move f	1	0101	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 6
MOVFF	f_s, f_d	Move f_s (source) to 1st word	2	1100	ffff	ffff	ffff	None	
		f_d (destination)2nd word		1111	ffff	ffff	ffff		
MOVWF	f [,a]	Move WREG to f	1	0110	111a	ffff	ffff	None	6
MULWF	f [,a]	Multiply WREG with f	1	0000	001a	ffff	ffff	None	6
NEGF	f [,a]	Negate f	1	0110	110a	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 6
RLCF	f [,d] [,a]	Rotate Left f through Carry	1	0011	01da	ffff	ffff	C, Z, N	6
RLNCF	f [,d] [,a]	Rotate Left f (No Carry)	1	0100	01da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	1, 2, 6
RRCF	f [,d] [,a]	Rotate Right f through Carry	1	0011	00da	ffff	ffff	C, Z, N	6
RRNCF	f [,d] [,a]	Rotate Right f (No Carry)	1	0100	00da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	6
SETF	f [,a]	Set f	1	0110	100a	ffff	ffff	None	6
SUBFWB	f [,d] [,a]	Subtract f from WREG with borrow	1	0101	01da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 6
SUBWF	f [,d] [,a]	Subtract WREG from f	1	0101	11da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	6
SUBWFB	f [,d] [,a]	Subtract WREG from f with borrow	1	0101	10da	ffff	ffff	C, DC, Z, OV, N	1, 2, 6
SWAPF	f [,d] [,a]	Swap nibbles in f	1	0011	10da	ffff	ffff	None	4, 6
TSTFSZ	f [,a]	Test f, skip if 0	1 (2 or 3)	0110	011a	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 6
XORWF	f [,d] [,a]	Exclusive OR WREG with f	1	0001	10da	ffff	ffff	Z, N	6
BIT-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
BCF	f, b [,a]	Bit Clear f	1	1001	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 6
BSF	f, b [,a]	Bit Set f	1	1000	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 6
BTFSC	f, b [,a]	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear	1 (2 or 3)	1011	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4, 6
BTFSS	f, b [,a]	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	1 (2 or 3)	1010	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	3, 4, 6
BTG	f [,d] [,a]	Bit Toggle f	1	0111	bbba	ffff	ffff	None	1, 2, 6

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is ’1’ for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a ’0’.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and, where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are 2 word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP`, unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16-bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the table write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

6: Microchip Assembler MASM automatically defaults destination bit ’d’ to ’1’, while access bit ’a’ defaults to ’1’ or ’0’ according to address of register being used.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 23-2: PIC18CXX8 INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
CONTROL OPERATIONS									
BC	n	Branch if Carry	1 (2)	1110	0010	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BN	n	Branch if Negative	1 (2)	1110	0110	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNC	n	Branch if Not Carry	1 (2)	1110	0011	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNN	n	Branch if Not Negative	1 (2)	1110	0111	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNOV	n	Branch if Not Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0101	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BNZ	n	Branch if Not Zero	2	1110	0001	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BOV	n	Branch if Overflow	1 (2)	1110	0100	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BRA	n	Branch Unconditionally	1 (2)	1101	0nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
BZ	n	Branch if Zero	1 (2)	1110	0000	nnnn	nnnn	None	
CALL	n, s	Call subroutine1st word	2	1110	110s	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
CLRWDT	—	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	0000	0000	0000	0100	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
DAW	—	Decimal Adjust WREG	1	0000	0000	0000	0111	C	
GOTO	n	Go to address1st word	2	1110	1111	kkkk	kkkk	None	
		2nd word		1111	kkkk	kkkk	kkkk		
NOP	—	No Operation	1	0000	0000	0000	0000	None	
NOP	—	No Operation **(Note 4)**	1	1111	xxxx	xxxx	xxxx	None	
POP	—	Pop top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0110	None	
PUSH	—	Push top of return stack (TOS)	1	0000	0000	0000	0101	None	
RCALL	n	Relative Call	2	1101	1nnn	nnnn	nnnn	None	
RESET		Software device RESET	1	0000	0000	1111	1111	All	
RETFIE	s	Return from interrupt enable	2	0000	0000	0001	000s	GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL	
RETLW	k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk	None	
RETURN	s	Return from Subroutine	2	0000	0000	0001	001s	None	
SLEEP	—	Go into Standby mode	1	0000	0000	0000	0011	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is '1' for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a '0'.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and, where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are 2 word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP`, unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16-bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the table write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

6: Microchip Assembler MASM automatically defaults destination bit ’d’ to ’1’, while access bit ’a’ defaults to ’1’ or ’0’ according to address of register being used.

TABLE 23-2: PIC18CXX8 INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	16-Bit Instruction Word MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
LITERAL OPERATIONS									
ADDLW	k	Add literal and WREG	1	0000	1111	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
ANDLW	k	AND literal with WREG	1	0000	1011	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
IORLW	k	Inclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000	1001	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
LFSR	f, k	Load FSR(f) with a 12-bit literal (k)	2	1110 1111	1110 0000	00ff kkkk	kkkk kkkk	None	
MOVLB	k	Move literal to BSR<3:0>	1	0000	0001	0000	kkkk	None	
MOVLW	k	Move literal to WREG	1	0000	1110	kkkk	kkkk	None	
MULLW	k	Multiply literal with WREG	1	0000	1101	kkkk	kkkk	None	
RETLW	k	Return with literal in WREG	2	0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk	None	
SUBLW	k	Subtract WREG from literal	1	0000	1000	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z, OV, N	
XORLW	k	Exclusive OR literal with WREG	1	0000	1010	kkkk	kkkk	Z, N	
DATA MEMORY ↔ PROGRAM MEMORY OPERATIONS									
TBLRD*		Table Read	2	0000	0000	0000	1000	None	
TBLRD*+		Table Read with post-increment		0000	0000	0000	1001	None	
TBLRD*-		Table Read with post-decrement		0000	0000	0000	1010	None	
TBLRD+*		Table Read with pre-increment		0000	0000	0000	1011	None	
TBLWT*		Table Write	2 (5)	0000	0000	0000	1100	None	
TBLWT*+		Table Write with post-increment		0000	0000	0000	1101	None	
TBLWT*-		Table Write with post-decrement		0000	0000	0000	1110	None	
TBLWT+*		Table Write with pre-increment		0000	0000	0000	1111	None	

Note 1: When a PORT register is modified as a function of itself (e.g., `MOVF PORTB, 1, 0`), the value used will be that value present on the pins themselves. For example, if the data latch is ’1’ for a pin configured as input and is driven low by an external device, the data will be written back with a ’0’.

2: If this instruction is executed on the TMR0 register (and, where applicable, d = 1), the prescaler will be cleared if assigned.

3: If Program Counter (PC) is modified or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

4: Some instructions are 2 word instructions. The second word of these instructions will be executed as a `NOP`, unless the first word of the instruction retrieves the information embedded in these 16-bits. This ensures that all program memory locations have a valid instruction.

5: If the table write starts the write cycle to internal memory, the write will continue until terminated.

6: Microchip Assembler MASM automatically defaults destination bit ’d’ to ’1’, while access bit ’a’ defaults to ’1’ or ’0’ according to address of register being used.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

23.1 Instruction Set

ADDLW	ADD literal to W
Syntax:	[*label*] ADDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(WREG) + k → WREG
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	0000 | 1111 | kkkk | kkkk
Description:	The contents of WREG are added to the 8-bit literal 'k' and the result is placed in WREG.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ADDLW 0x15`

Before Instruction
- WREG = 0x10
- N = ?
- OV = ?
- C = ?
- DC = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- WREG = 0x25
- N = 0
- OV = 0
- C = 0
- DC = 0
- Z = 0

ADDWF	ADD W to f
Syntax:	[*label*] ADDWF f [,d] [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) + (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	0010 | 01da | ffff | ffff
Description:	Add WREG to register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWF REG, W`

Before Instruction
- WREG = 0x17
- REG = 0xC2
- N = ?
- OV = ?
- C = ?
- DC = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- WREG = 0xD9
- REG = 0xC2
- N = 1
- OV = 0
- C = 0
- DC = 0
- Z = 0

ADDWFC	ADD WREG and Carry bit to f
Syntax:	[*label*] ADDWFC f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) + (f) + (C) → dest
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0010` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Add WREG, the Carry Flag and data memory location 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed in data memory location 'f'. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ADDWFC REG, W`

Before Instruction
- C = 1
- REG = 0x02
- WREG = 0x4D
- N = ?
- OV = ?
- DC = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- C = 0
- REG = 0x02
- WREG = 0x50
- N = 0
- OV = 0
- DC = 0
- Z = 0

ANDLW	AND literal with WREG
Syntax:	[*label*] ANDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(WREG) .AND. k → WREG
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1011` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of WREG are AND'ed with the 8-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in WREG.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `ANDLW 0x5F`

Before Instruction
- WREG = 0xA3
- N = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- WREG = 0x03
- N = 0
- Z = 0

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

ANDWF — AND WREG with f

Syntax:	[*label*] ANDWF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) .AND. (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	`0001` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of WREG are AND'ed with register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `ANDWF REG, W`

Before Instruction
- WREG = 0x17
- REG = 0xC2
- N = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- WREG = 0x02
- REG = 0xC2
- N = 0
- Z = 0

BC — Branch if Carry

Syntax:	[*label*] BC n
Operands:	$-128 \le n \le 127$
Operation:	if carry bit is '1' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0010` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Carry bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BC 5`

Before Instruction
- PC = address `(HERE)`

After Instruction
- If Carry = 1;
  - PC = address `(HERE+12)`
- If Carry = 0;
  - PC = address `(HERE+2)`

BCF	Bit Clear f
Syntax:	[*label*] BCF f, b [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $0 \le b \le 7$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$0 \rightarrow f<b>$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1001 | bbba | ffff | ffff
Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is cleared. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' = 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BCF FLAG_REG, 7`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0xC7

After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x47

BN	Branch if Negative
Syntax:	[*label*] BN n
Operands:	$-128 \le n \le 127$
Operation:	if negative bit is '1' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 0110 | nnnn | nnnn
Description:	If the Negative bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BN Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Negative = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Negative = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

BNC	**Branch if Not Carry**
Syntax:	[*label*] BNC n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if carry bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 0011 | nnnn | nnnn
Description:	If the Carry bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNC Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Carry = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Carry = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

BNN	**Branch if Not Negative**
Syntax:	[*label*] BNN n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if negative bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 0111 | nnnn | nnnn
Description:	If the Negative bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNN Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Negative = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Negative = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

BNOV	Branch if Not Overflow
Syntax:	[*label*] BNOV n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if overflow bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 0101 | nnnn | nnnn
Description:	If the Overflow bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNOV Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Overflow = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

BNZ	Branch if Not Zero
Syntax:	[*label*] BNZ n
Operands:	-128 ≤ n ≤ 127
Operation:	if zero bit is '0' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 0001 | nnnn | nnnn
Description:	If the Zero bit is '0', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BNZ Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Zero = 0;
PC = address (Jump)
If Zero = 1;
PC = address (HERE+2)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

BRA	Unconditional Branch
Syntax:	[*label*] BRA n
Operands:	$-1024 \le n \le 1023$
Operation:	$(PC) + 2 + 2n \rightarrow PC$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1101` `0nnn` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	Add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE BRA Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (`HERE`)

After Instruction
PC = address (`Jump`)

BSF	Bit Set f
Syntax:	[*label*] BSF f, b [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $0 \le b \le 7$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$1 \rightarrow f<b>$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1000` `bbba` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Bit 'b' in register 'f' is set. If 'a' is 0 Access Bank will be selected, over-riding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BSF FLAG_REG, 7, 1`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x0A

After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x8A

BTFSC — Bit Test File, Skip if Clear

Syntax: [*label*] BTFSC f, b [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b \le 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: skip if (f<b>) = 0

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1011	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: If bit 'b' in register 'f' is 0, then the next instruction is skipped.

If bit 'b' is 0, then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution is discarded, and a NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    BTFSC   FLAG, 1, ACCESS
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (TRUE)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (FALSE)

BTFSS — Bit Test File, Skip if Set

Syntax: [*label*] BTFSS f, b [,a]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$0 \le b < 7$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: skip if (f<b>) = 1

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1010	bbba	ffff	ffff

Description: If bit 'b' in register 'f' is 1 then the next instruction is skipped.

If bit 'b' is 1, then the next instruction fetched during the current instruction execution, is discarded and an NOP is executed instead, making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1(2)
Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    BTFSS   FLAG, 1, ACCESS
FALSE   :
TRUE    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If FLAG<1> = 0;
PC = address (FALSE)
If FLAG<1> = 1;
PC = address (TRUE)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

BTG — Bit Toggle f

Syntax:	[*label*] BTG f, b [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $0 \le b < 7$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\overline{f<b>}) \rightarrow f<b>$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0111` `bbba` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Bit 'b' in data memory location 'f' is inverted. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `BTG PORTC, 4`

Before Instruction:
PORTC = `0111 0101` [0x75]

After Instruction:
PORTC = `0110 0101` [0x65]

BOV — Branch if Overflow

Syntax:	[*label*] BOV n
Operands:	$-128 \le n \le 127$
Operation:	if overflow bit is '1' $(PC) + 2 + 2n \rightarrow PC$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1110` `0100` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	If the Overflow bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:
If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BOV Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address `(HERE)`

After Instruction
If Overflow = 1;
PC = address `(Jump)`
If Overflow = 0;
PC = address `(HERE+2)`

BZ — Branch if Zero

Syntax:	[*label*] BZ n
Operands:	$-128 \le n \le 127$
Operation:	if Zero bit is '1' (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 | 0000 | nnnn | nnnn
Description:	If the Zero bit is '1', then the program will branch. The 2's complement number '2n' is added to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is then a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2)

Q Cycle Activity:

If Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If No Jump:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n'	Process Data	No operation

Example: `HERE BZ Jump`

Before Instruction
PC = address (HERE)

After Instruction
If Zero = 1;
PC = address (Jump)
If Zero = 0;
PC = address (HERE+2)

CALL — Subroutine Call

Syntax:	[*label*] CALL k [,s]
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 1048575$ $s \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(PC) + 4 → TOS, k → PC<20:1>, if s = 1 (WREG) → WS, (STATUS) → STATUSS, (BSR) → BSRS
Status Affected:	None
Encoding: 1st word (k<7:0>) 2nd word(k<19:8>)	1110 | 110s | $k_7$kkk | kkkk$_0$ 1111 | k_{19}kkk | kkkk | kkkk$_8$
Description:	Subroutine call of entire 2M byte memory range. First, return address (PC+ 4) is pushed onto the return stack. If 's' = 1, the WREG, STATUS and BSR registers are also pushed into their respective shadow registers, WS, STATUSS and BSRS. If 's' = 0, no update occurs (default). Then the 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. CALL is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	2
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>,	Push PC to stack	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE CALL THERE, FAST`

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
PC = Address (THERE)
TOS = Address (HERE + 4)
WS = WREG
BSRS = BSR
STATUSS = STATUS

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

CLRF	Clear f
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	000h → f 1 → Z
Status Affected:	Z
Encoding:	0110 101a ffff ffff
Description:	Clears the contents of the specified register. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `CLRF FLAG_REG`

Before Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x5A
Z = ?

After Instruction
FLAG_REG = 0x00
Z = 0

CLRWDT	Clear Watchdog Timer
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRWDT
Operands:	None
Operation:	000h → WDT, 000h → WDT postscaler, 1 → $\overline{TO}$, 1 → $\overline{PD}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0100
Description:	`CLRWDT` instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the postscaler of the WDT. Status bits $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ are set.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	No operation

Example: `CLRWDT`

Before Instruction
WDT counter = ?
WDT postscaler = ?
$\overline{TO}$ = ?
$\overline{PD}$ = ?

After Instruction
WDT counter = 0x00
WDT postscaler = 0
$\overline{TO}$ = 1
$\overline{PD}$ = 1

COMF — Complement f

Syntax:	[*label*] COMF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\overline{f}) \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	0001 | 11da | ffff | ffff
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are complemented. If 'd' is 0 the result is stored in W. If 'd' is 1 the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `COMF REG`

Before Instruction
- REG = 0x13
- N = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- REG = 0x13
- WREG = 0xEC
- N = 1
- Z = 0

CPFSEQ — Compare f with WREG, skip if f = WREG

Syntax:	[*label*] CPFSEQ f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (WREG), skip if (f) = (WREG) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0110 | 001a | ffff | ffff
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If 'f' = WREG, then the fetched instruction is discarded and an NOP is executed instead making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:
```
HERE     CPFSEQ REG
NEQUAL   :
EQUAL    :
```

Before Instruction
- PC Address = HERE
- WREG = ?
- REG = ?

After Instruction
- If REG = WREG;
  - PC = Address (EQUAL)
- If REG ≠ WREG;
  - PC = Address (NEQUAL)

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

CPFSGT — Compare f with WREG, skip if f > WREG

Syntax:	[*label*] CPFSGT f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (WREG), skip if (f) > (WREG) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0110 010a ffff ffff
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of the WREG by performing an unsigned subtraction. If the contents of 'f' are greater than the contents of **,** then the fetched instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE       CPFSGT REG
NGREATER   :
GREATER    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
WREG = ?
After Instruction
If REG > WREG;
PC = Address (GREATER)
If REG ≤ WREG;
PC = Address (NGREATER)

CPFSLT — Compare f with WREG, skip if f < WREG

Syntax:	[*label*] CPFSLT f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (WREG), skip if (f) < (WREG) (unsigned comparison)
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0110 000a ffff ffff
Description:	Compares the contents of data memory location 'f' to the contents of W by performing an unsigned subtraction. If the contents of 'f' are less than the contents of WREG, then the fetched instruction is discarded and a NOP is executed instead making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE     CPFSLT REG
NLESS    :
LESS     :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)
WREG = ?
After Instruction
If REG < WREG;
PC = Address (LESS)
If REG ≥ WREG;
PC = Address (NLESS)

DAW — Decimal Adjust WREG Register

Syntax: [*label*] DAW

Operands: None

Operation: If [WREG<3:0> >9] or [DC = 1] then
(WREG<3:0>) + 6 → W<3:0>;
else
(WREG<3:0>) → W<3:0>;

If [WREG<7:4> >9] or [C = 1] then
(WREG<7:4>) + 6 → WREG<7:4>;
else
(WREG<7:4>) → WREG<7:4>;

Status Affected: C

Encoding:

0000	0000	0000	0111

Description: DAW adjusts the eight bit value in WREG resulting from the earlier addition of two variables (each in packed BCD format) and produces a correct packed BCD result.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register WREG	Process Data	Write WREG

Example1: `DAW`

Before Instruction
WREG = 0xA5
C = 0
DC = 0

After Instruction
WREG = 0x05
C = 1
DC = 0

Example 2:

Before Instruction
WREG = 0xCE
C = 0
DC = 0

After Instruction
WREG = 0x34
C = 1
DC = 0

DECF — Decrement f

Syntax: [*label*] DECF f [,d [,a]]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – 1 → dest

Status Affected: C,DC,N,OV,Z

Encoding:

0000	01da	ffff	ffff

Description: Decrement register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `DECF CNT`

Before Instruction
CNT = 0x01
Z = 0

After Instruction
CNT = 0x00
Z = 1

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

DECFSZ — Decrement f, skip if 0

Syntax:	[*label*] DECFSZ f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – 1 → dest, skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0010` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a `NOP` is executed instead making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE        DECFSZ    CNT
            GOTO      LOOP
CONTINUE
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
CNT = CNT - 1
If CNT = 0;
PC = Address (CONTINUE)
If CNT ≠ 0;
PC = Address (HERE+2)

DCFSNZ — Decrement f, skip if not 0

Syntax:	[*label*] DCFSNZ f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – 1 → dest, skip if result ≠ 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0100` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are decremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is not 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a `NOP` is executed instead making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    DCFSNZ   TEMP
ZERO    :
NZERO   :
```

Before Instruction
TEMP = ?

After Instruction
TEMP = TEMP - 1,
If TEMP = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)
If TEMP ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)

GOTO — Unconditional Branch

Syntax: [*label*] GOTO k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 1048575$

Operation: $k \rightarrow PC<20:1>$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1st word (k<7:0>)	1110	1111	$k_7$kkk	kkkk$_0$
2nd word(k<19:8>)	1111	k_{19}kkk	kkkk	kkkk$_8$

Description: GOTO allows an unconditional branch anywhere within entire 2M byte memory range. The 20-bit value 'k' is loaded into PC<20:1>. GOTO is always a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'<7:0>,	No operation	Read literal 'k'<19:8>, Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `GOTO THERE`

After Instruction
PC = Address (THERE)

INCF — Increment f

Syntax: [*label*] INCF f [,d [,a]]

Operands: $0 \le f \le 255$
$d \in [0,1]$
$a \in [0,1]$

Operation: $(f) + 1 \rightarrow dest$

Status Affected: C,DC,N,OV,Z

Encoding:

0010	10da	ffff	ffff

Description: The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `INCF CNT`

Before Instruction
CNT = 0xFF
Z = 0
C = ?
DC = ?

After Instruction
CNT = 0x00
Z = 1
C = 1
DC = 1

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

INCFSZ — Increment f, skip if 0

Syntax:	[*label*] INCFSZ f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest, skip if result = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0011` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a `NOP` is executed instead making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    INCFSZ   CNT
NZERO   :
ZERO    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
CNT = CNT + 1
If CNT = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)
If CNT ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)

INFSNZ — Increment f, skip if not 0

Syntax:	[*label*] INFSNZ f [, d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → dest, skip if result ≠ 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0100` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are incremented. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If the result is not 0, the next instruction, which is already fetched, is discarded, and a `NOP` is executed instead making it a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) **Note:** 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction.

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    INFSNZ   REG
ZERO
NZERO
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
REG = REG + 1
If REG ≠ 0;
PC = Address (NZERO)
If REG = 0;
PC = Address (ZERO)

IORLW — Inclusive OR literal with WREG

Syntax:	[*label*] IORLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(WREG) .OR. k → WREG
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	`0000` `1001` `kkkk` `kkkk`
Description:	The contents of WREG are OR'ed with the eight bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in WREG.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `IORLW 0x35`

Before Instruction
- WREG = 0x9A
- N = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- WREG = 0xBF
- N = 1
- Z = 0

IORWF — Inclusive OR WREG with f

Syntax:	[*label*] IORWF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) .OR. (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	`0001` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Inclusive OR W with register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, over-riding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `IORWF RESULT, W`

Before Instruction
- RESULT = 0x13
- WREG = 0x91
- N = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- RESULT = 0x13
- WREG = 0x93
- N = 1
- Z = 0

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

LFSR	**Load FSR**
Syntax:	[*label*] LFSR f,k
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 2$ $0 \le k \le 4095$
Operation:	$k \rightarrow FSRf$
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	1110 1111 | 1110 0000 | 00ff $k_7$kkk | k_{11}kkk kkkk
Description:	The 12-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the file select register pointed to by 'f'
Words:	2
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k' MSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' MSB to FSRfH
Decode	Read literal 'k' LSB	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to FSRfL

Example: `LFSR FSR2, 0x3AB`

After Instruction

FSR2H = 0x03
FSR2L = 0xAB

MOVF	**Move f**
Syntax:	[*label*] MOVF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$f \rightarrow dest$
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	0101 | 00da | ffff | ffff
Description:	The contents of register 'f' is moved to a destination dependent upon the status of 'd'. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256 byte Bank. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write W

Example: `MOVF REG, W`

Before Instruction

REG = 0x22
WREG = 0xFF
N = ?
Z = ?

After Instruction

REG = 0x22
WREG = 0x22
N = 0
Z = 0

MOVFF — Move f to f

Syntax: [*label*] MOVFF f_s,f_d

Operands: $0 \le f_s \le 4095$
$0 \le f_d \le 4095$

Operation: $(f_s) \rightarrow f_d$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

1st word (source)	1100	ffff	ffff	$ffff_s$
2nd word (destin.)	1111	ffff	ffff	$ffff_d$

Description: The contents of source register 'f_s' are moved to destination register 'f_d'. Location of source 'f_s' can be anywhere in the 4096 byte data space (000h to FFFh), and location of destination 'f_d' can also be anywhere from 000h to FFFh.

Either source or destination can be WREG (a useful special situation).

`MOVFF` is particularly useful for transferring a data memory location to a peripheral register (such as the transmit buffer or an I/O port).

The `MOVFF` instruction cannot use the PCL, TOSU, TOSH or TOSL as the destination register.

Words: 2

Cycles: 2 (3)

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f' (src)	Process Data	No operation
Decode	No operation No dummy read	No operation	Write register 'f' (dest)

Example: `MOVFF REG1, REG2`

Before Instruction
REG1 = 0x33
REG2 = 0x11

After Instruction
REG1 = 0x33,
REG2 = 0x33

MOVLB — Move literal to low nibble in BSR

Syntax: [*label*] MOVLB k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: $k \rightarrow BSR$

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0001	kkkk	kkkk

Description: The 8-bit literal 'k' is loaded into the Bank Select Register (BSR).

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write literal 'k' to BSR

Example: `MOVLB 0x05`

Before Instruction
BSR register = 0x02

After Instruction
BSR register = 0x05

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

MOVLW — Move literal to WREG

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	k → WREG
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 | 1110 | kkkk | kkkk
Description:	The eight bit literal 'k' is loaded into WREG.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example: `MOVLW 0x5A`

After Instruction
WREG = 0x5A

MOVWF — Move WREG to f

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVWF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) → f
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0110 | 111a | ffff | ffff
Description:	Move data from WREG to register 'f'. Location 'f' can be anywhere in the 256 byte Bank. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `MOVWF REG`

Before Instruction
WREG = 0x4F
REG = 0xFF

After Instruction
WREG = 0x4F
REG = 0x4F

MULLW — Multiply Literal with WREG

Syntax:	[*label*] MULLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(WREG) x k → PRODH:PRODL
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 | 1101 | kkkk | kkkk
Description:	An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of WREG and the 8-bit literal 'k'. The 16-bit result is placed in PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. WREG is unchanged. None of the status flags are affected. Note that neither overflow nor carry is possible in this operation. A zero result is possible but not detected.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULLW 0xC4`

Before Instruction
- WREG = 0xE2
- PRODH = ?
- PRODL = ?

After Instruction
- WREG = 0xE2
- PRODH = 0xAD
- PRODL = 0x08

MULWF — Multiply WREG with f

Syntax:	[*label*] MULWF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) x (f) → PRODH:PRODL
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 | 001a | ffff | ffff
Description:	An unsigned multiplication is carried out between the contents of WREG and the register file location 'f'. The 16-bit result is stored in the PRODH:PRODL register pair. PRODH contains the high byte. Both WREG and 'f' are unchanged. None of the status flags are affected. Note that neither overflow nor carry is possible in this operation. A zero result is possible but not detected. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write registers PRODH: PRODL

Example: `MULWF REG`

Before Instruction
- WREG = 0xC4
- REG = 0xB5
- PRODH = ?
- PRODL = ?

After Instruction
- WREG = 0xC4
- REG = 0xB5
- PRODH = 0x8A
- PRODL = 0x94

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

NEGF	Negate f
Syntax:	[*label*] NEGF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(\overline{f}) + 1 \rightarrow f$
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0110` `110a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Location 'f' is negated using two's complement. The result is placed in the data memory location 'f'. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `NEGF REG`

Before Instruction

```
REG  =  0011 1010 [0x3A]
N    =  ?
OV   =  ?
C    =  ?
DC   =  ?
Z    =  ?
```

After Instruction

```
REG  =  1100 0110 [0xC6]
N    =  1
OV   =  0
C    =  0
DC   =  0
Z    =  0
```

NOP	No Operation
Syntax:	[*label*] NOP
Operands:	None
Operation:	No operation
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0000 1111` `0000 xxxx` `0000 xxxx` `0000 xxxx`
Description:	No operation.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

None.

POP	Pop Top of Return Stack
Syntax:	[*label*] POP
Operands:	None
Operation:	(TOS) → bit bucket
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0110
Description:	The TOS value is pulled off the return stack and is discarded. The TOS value then becomes the previous value that was pushed onto the return stack. This instruction is provided to enable the user to properly manage the return stack to incorporate a software stack.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Pop TOS value	No operation

Example:

```
POP
GOTO      NEW
```

Before Instruction

TOS	=	0031A2h
Stack (1 level down)	=	014332h

After Instruction

TOS	=	014332h
PC	=	NEW

PUSH	Push Top of Return Stack
Syntax:	[*label*] PUSH
Operands:	None
Operation:	(PC+2) → TOS
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0101
Description:	The PC+2 is pushed onto the top of the return stack. The previous TOS value is pushed down on the stack. This instruction allows implementing a software stack by modifying TOS, and then push it onto the return stack.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Push PC+2 onto return stack	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
PUSH
```

Before Instruction

TOS	=	00345Ah
PC	=	000124h

After Instruction

PC	=	000126h
TOS	=	000126h
Stack (1 level down)	=	00345Ah

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

RCALL	Relative Call
Syntax:	[*label*] RCALL n
Operands:	$-1024 \le n \le 1023$
Operation:	(PC) + 2 → TOS, (PC) + 2 + 2n → PC
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`1101` `1nnn` `nnnn` `nnnn`
Description:	Subroutine call with a jump up to 1K from the current location. First, return address (PC+2) is pushed onto the stack. Then, add the 2's complement number '2n' to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC+2+2n. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'n' Push PC to stack	Process Data	Write to PC
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `HERE` `RCALL` Jump

Before Instruction
PC = Address (`HERE`)

After Instruction
PC = Address (`Jump`)
TOS = Address (`HERE+2`)

RESET	Reset
Syntax:	[*label*] RESET
Operands:	None
Operation:	Reset all registers and flags that are affected by a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset.
Status Affected:	All
Encoding:	`0000` `0000` `1111` `1111`
Description:	This instruction provides a way to execute a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset in software.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Start reset	No operation	No operation

Example: `RESET`

After Instruction
Registers = Reset Value
Flags* = Reset Value

RETFIE — Return from Interrupt

Syntax: [*label*] RETFIE [s]

Operands: s ∈ [0,1]

Operation: (TOS) → PC,
1 → GIE/GIEH or PEIE/GIEL,
if s = 1
(WS) → W,
(STATUSS) → STATUS,
(BSRS) → BSR,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged.

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	0000	0001	000s

Description: Return from Interrupt. Stack is popped and Top-of-Stack (TOS) is loaded into the PC. Interrupts are enabled by setting the either the high or low priority global interrupt enable bit. If 's' = 1, the contents of the shadow registers WS, STATUSS and BSRS are loaded into their corresponding registers, WREG, STATUS and BSR. If 's' = 0, no update of these registers occurs (default).

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	Pop PC from stack Set GIEH or GIEL
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETFIE 1`

After Interrupt

PC	=	TOS
WREG	=	WS
BSR	=	BSRS
STATUS	=	STATUSS
GIE/GIEH, PEIE/GIEL	=	1

RETLW — Return Literal to WREG

Syntax: [*label*] RETLW k

Operands: 0 ≤ k ≤ 255

Operation: k → W,
(TOS) → PC,
PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged

Status Affected: None

Encoding:

0000	1100	kkkk	kkkk

Description: W is loaded with the eight bit literal 'k'. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). The high address latch (PCLATH) remains unchanged.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Pop PC from stack, write to W
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
   CALL TABLE  ; WREG contains table
               ;  offset value
               ;  WREG now has
               ;  table value
   :
TABLE
   ADDWF PCL   ; WREG = offset
   RETLW k0    ; Begin table
   RETLW k1    ;
   :
   :
   RETLW kn    ; End of table
```

Before Instruction
WREG = 0x07

After Instruction
WREG = value of kn

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

RETURN	Return from Subroutine
Syntax:	[*label*] RETURN [s]
Operands:	s ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(TOS) → PC, if s = 1 (WS) → W, (STATUSS) → STATUS, (BSRS) → BSR, PCLATU, PCLATH are unchanged
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 | 0000 | 0001 | 001s
Description:	Return from subroutine. The stack is popped and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. If 's' = 1, the contents of the shadow registers WS, STATUSS and BSRS are loaded into their corresponding registers, WREG, STATUS and BSR. If 's' = 0, no update of these registers occurs (default).
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	Pop PC from stack
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example: `RETURN`

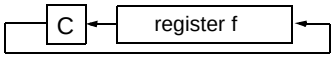
After Call
PC = TOS

`RETURN FAST`

Before Instruction
WRG = 0x04
STATUS = 0x00
BSR = 0x00

After Instruction
WREG = 0x04
STATUS = 0x00
BSR = 0x00
PC = TOS

RLCF	Rotate Left f through Carry
Syntax:	[*label*] RLCF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 255 d ∈ [0,1] a ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f<n>) → dest<n+1>, (f<7>) → C, (C) → dest<0>
Status Affected:	C,N,Z
Encoding:	0011 | 01da | ffff | ffff
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry Flag. If 'd' is 0 the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1 the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.



Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

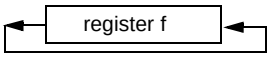
Example: `RLCF REG, W`

Before Instruction
REG = 1110 0110
C = 0
N = ?
Z = ?

After Instruction
REG = 1110 0110
WREG = 1100 1100
C = 1
N = 1
Z = 0

RLNCF — Rotate Left f (no carry)

Syntax:	[*label*] RLNCF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f<n>) → dest<n+1>, (f<7>) → dest<0>
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	`0100` `01da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left. If 'd' is 0 the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.



Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

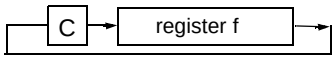
Example: `RLNCF REG`

Before Instruction
- REG = `1010 1011`
- N = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- REG = `0101 0111`
- N = 0
- Z = 0

RRCF — Rotate Right f through Carry

Syntax:	[*label*] RRCF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f<n>) → dest<n-1>, (f<0>) → C, (C) → dest<7>
Status Affected:	C,N,Z
Encoding:	`0011` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry Flag. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.



Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `RRCF REG, W`

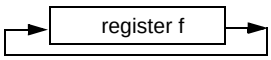
Before Instruction
- REG = `1110 0110`
- C = 0
- N = ?
- Z = ?

After Instruction
- REG = `1110 0110`
- WREG = `0111 0011`
- C = 0
- N = 0
- Z = 0

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

RRNCF — Rotate Right f (no carry)

Syntax:	[*label*] RRNCF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f<n>) → dest<n-1>, (f<0>) → dest<7>
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	`0100` `00da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the right. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.



Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example 1: `RRNCF REG`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  1101 0111
N    =  ?
Z    =  ?
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  1110 1011
N    =  1
Z    =  0
```

Example 2: `RRNCF REG, 0, 0`

Before Instruction
```
WREG =  ?
REG  =  1101 0111
N    =  ?
Z    =  ?
```
After Instruction
```
WREG =  1110 1011
REG  =  1101 0111
N    =  1
Z    =  0
```

SETF — Set f

Syntax:	[*label*] SETF f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	FFh → f
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0110` `100a` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The contents of the specified register are set to FFh. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write register 'f'

Example: `SETF REG`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  0x5A
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0xFF
```

SLEEP — Enter SLEEP mode

Syntax:	[*label*] SLEEP
Operands:	None
Operation:	00h → WDT, 0 → WDT postscaler, 1 → $\overline{TO}$, 0 → $\overline{PD}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 0011
Description:	The power-down status bit ($\overline{PD}$) is cleared. The time-out status bit ($\overline{TO}$) is set. Watchdog Timer and its postscaler are cleared. The processor is put into SLEEP mode with the oscillator stopped.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	Process Data	Go to sleep

Example: `SLEEP`

Before Instruction
$\overline{TO}$ = ?
$\overline{PD}$ = ?

After Instruction
$\overline{TO}$ = 1 †
$\overline{PD}$ = 0

† If WDT causes wake-up, this bit is cleared.

SUBFWB — Subtract f from WREG with borrow

Syntax:	[*label*] SUBFWB f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) – (f) – ($\overline{C}$) → dest
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	0101 01da ffff ffff
Description:	Subtract register 'f' and carry flag (borrow) from WREG (2's complement method). If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored in register 'f' (default) . If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

SUBFWB (Cont.)

Example 1: `SUBFWB REG`

Before Instruction
REG = 3
WREG = 2
C = 1

After Instruction
REG = 0xFF
WREG = 2
C = 0
Z = 0
N = 1 ; result is negative

Example 2: `SUBFWB REG`

Before Instruction
REG = 2
WREG = 5
C = 1

After Instruction
REG = 2
WREG = 3
C = 1
Z = 0
N = 0 ; result is positive

Example 3: `SUBFWB REG`

Before Instruction
REG = 1
WREG = 2
C = 0

After Instruction
REG = 0
WREG = 2
C = 1
Z = 1 ; result is zero
N = 0

SUBLW Subtract WREG from literal

Syntax: [*label*] SUBLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: k – (WREG) → WREG

Status Affected: N,OV, C, DC, Z

Encoding:

0000	1000	kkkk	kkkk

Description: WREG is subtracted from the eight bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in WREG.

Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to W

Example 1: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
WREG = 1
C = ?

After Instruction
WREG = 1
C = 1 ; result is positive
Z = 0
N = 0

Example 2: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
WREG = 2
C = ?

After Instruction
WREG = 0
C = 1 ; result is zero
Z = 1
N = 0

Example 3: `SUBLW 0x02`

Before Instruction
WREG = 3
C = ?

After Instruction
WREG = 0xFF ; (2's complement)
C = 0 ; result is negative
Z = 0
N = 1

SUBWF — Subtract WREG from f

Syntax:	[*label*] SUBWF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (WREG) → dest
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	`0101` `11da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Subtract WREG from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

SUBWF — Subtract WREG from f (cont'd)

Example 1: `SUBWF REG`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  3
WREG =  2
C    =  ?
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  1
WREG =  2
C    =  1    ; result is positive
Z    =  0
N    =  0
```

Example 2: `SUBWF REG, W`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  2
WREG =  2
C    =  ?
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  2
WREG =  0
C    =  1    ; result is zero
Z    =  1
N    =  0
```

Example 3: `SUBWF REG`

Before Instruction
```
REG  =  1
WREG =  2
C    =  ?
```
After Instruction
```
REG  =  0xFF   ;(2's complement)
WREG =  2
C    =  0    ; result is negative
Z    =  0
N    =  1
```

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

SUBWFB	Subtract WREG from f with Borrow
Syntax:	[*label*] SUBWFB f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) – (WREG) – ($\overline{C}$) → dest
Status Affected:	N,OV, C, DC, Z
Encoding:	0101 | 10da | ffff | ffff
Description:	Subtract WREG and the carry flag (borrow) from register 'f' (2's complement method). If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

SUBWFB — Subtract WREG from f with Borrow (cont'd)

Example 1: `SUBWFB REG`

Before Instruction
```
REG   =  0x19   (0001 1001)
WREG  =  0x0D   (0000 1101)
C     =  1
```
After Instruction
```
REG   =  0x0C   (0000 1011)
WREG  =  0x0D   (0000 1101)
C     =  1
Z     =  0
N     =  0      ; result is positive
```

Example 2: `SUBWFB REG, W`

Before Instruction
```
REG   =  0x1B   (0001 1011)
WREG  =  0x1A   (0001 1010)
C     =  0
```
After Instruction
```
REG   =  0x1B   (0001 1011)
WREG  =  0x00
C     =  1
Z     =  1      ; result is zero
N     =  0
```

Example 3: `SUBWFB REG`

Before Instruction
```
REG   =  0x03   (0000 0011)
WREG  =  0x0E   (0000 1101)
C     =  1
```
After Instruction
```
REG   =  0xF5   (1111 0100) [2's comp]
WREG  =  0x0E   (0000 1101)
C     =  0
Z     =  0
N     =  1      ; result is negative
```

SWAPF	**Swap nibbles in f**
Syntax:	[*label*] SWAPF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f<3:0>) → dest<7:4>, (f<7:4>) → dest<3:0>
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	`0011` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	The upper and lower nibbles of register 'f' are exchanged. If 'd' is 0, the result is placed in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is placed in register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `SWAPF REG`

Before Instruction
REG = 0x53

After Instruction
REG = 0x35

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TBLRD	Table Read
Syntax:	[*label*] TBLRD (*; *+; *-; +*)
Operands:	None
Operation:	if TBLRD *, (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; TBLPTR - No Change; if TBLRD *+, (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; (TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR; if TBLRD *-, (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT; (TBLPTR) -1 → TBLPTR; if TBLRD +*, (TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR; (Prog Mem (TBLPTR)) → TABLAT;
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 10nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*
Description:	This instruction is used to read the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). To address the program memory, a pointer called Table Pointer (TBLPTR) is used. The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the program memory. TBLPTR has a 2 Mbyte address range. TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word The `TBLRD` instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows: • no change • post-increment • post-decrement • pre-increment
Words:	1
Cycles:	2

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read Program Memory)	No operation	No operation (Write TABLAT)

TBLRD — Table Read (cont'd)

Example 1: `TBLRD *+ ;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x55
TBLPTR	=	0x00A356
MEMORY(0x00A356)	=	0x34

After Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x00A357

Example 2: `TBLRD +* ;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0xAA
TBLPTR	=	0x01A357
MEMORY(0x01A357)	=	0x12
MEMORY(0x01A358)	=	0x34

After Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x01A358

TBLWT	Table Write
Syntax:	[*label*] TBLWT (*; *+; *-; +*)
Operands:	None
Operation:	if TBLWT*, (TABLAT) → Prog Mem (TBLPTR) or Holding Register; TBLPTR - No Change; if TBLWT*+, (TABLAT) → Prog Mem (TBLPTR) or Holding Register; (TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR; if TBLWT*-, (TABLAT) → Prog Mem (TBLPTR) or Holding Register; (TBLPTR) -1 → TBLPTR; if TBLWT+*, (TBLPTR) +1 → TBLPTR; (TABLAT) → Prog Mem (TBLPTR) or Holding Register;
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0000 0000 0000 11nn nn=0 * =1 *+ =2 *- =3 +*
Description:	This instruction is used to program the contents of Program Memory (P.M.). The TBLPTR (a 21-bit pointer) points to each byte in the program memory. TBLPTR has a 2 MBtye address range. The LSb of the TBLPTR selects which byte of the program memory location to access. TBLPTR[0] = 0: Least Significant Byte of Program Memory Word TBLPTR[0] = 1: Most Significant Byte of Program Memory Word The `TBLWT` instruction can modify the value of TBLPTR as follows: • no change • post-increment • post-decrement • pre-increment
Words:	1
Cycles:	2 (many if long write is to on-chip EPROM program memory)

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation (Read TABLAT)	No operation	No operation (Write to Holding Register or Memory)

TBLWT Table Write (Continued)

Example 1: `TBLWT *+;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x55
TBLPTR	=	0x00A356
MEMORY(0x00A356)	=	0xFF

After Instructions (table write completion)

TABLAT	=	0x55
TBLPTR	=	0x00A357
MEMORY(0x00A356)	=	0x55

Example 2: `TBLWT +*;`

Before Instruction

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x01389A
MEMORY(0x01389A)	=	0xFF
MEMORY(0x01389B)	=	0xFF

After Instruction (table write completion)

TABLAT	=	0x34
TBLPTR	=	0x01389B
MEMORY(0x01389A)	=	0xFF
MEMORY(0x01389B)	=	0x34

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TSTFSZ — Test f, skip if 0

Syntax:	[*label*] TSTFSZ f [,a]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	skip if f = 0
Status Affected:	None
Encoding:	0110 | 011a | ffff | ffff
Description:	If 'f' = 0, the next instruction, fetched during the current instruction execution, is discarded and a NOP is executed making this a two-cycle instruction. If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1(2) Note: 3 cycles if skip and followed by a 2-word instruction

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	No operation

If skip:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

If skip and followed by 2-word instruction:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation
No operation	No operation	No operation	No operation

Example:

```
HERE    TSTFSZ  CNT
NZERO   :
ZERO    :
```

Before Instruction
PC = Address (HERE)

After Instruction
If CNT = 0x00,
PC = Address (ZERO)
If CNT ≠ 0x00,
PC = Address (NZERO)

XORLW — Exclusive OR literal with WREG

Syntax:	[*label*] XORLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(WREG) .XOR. k → WREG
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	0000 | 1010 | kkkk | kkkk
Description:	The contents of WREG are XOR'ed with the 8-bit literal 'k'. The result is placed in WREG.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read literal 'k'	Process Data	Write to WREG

Example: `XORLW 0xAF`

Before Instruction
WREG = 0xB5
N = ?
Z = ?

After Instruction
WREG = 0x1A
N = 0
Z = 0

XORWF	**Exclusive OR WREG with f**
Syntax:	[*label*] XORWF f [,d [,a]]
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 255$ $d \in [0,1]$ $a \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(WREG) .XOR. (f) → dest
Status Affected:	N,Z
Encoding:	`0001` `10da` `ffff` `ffff`
Description:	Exclusive OR the contents of WREG with register 'f'. If 'd' is 0, the result is stored in WREG. If 'd' is 1, the result is stored back in the register 'f' (default). If 'a' is 0, the Access Bank will be selected, overriding the BSR value. If 'a' is 1, the Bank will be selected as per the BSR value.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1

Q Cycle Activity:

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Decode	Read register 'f'	Process Data	Write to destination

Example: `XORWF REG`

Before Instruction

REG = 0xAF
WREG = 0xB5
N = ?
Z = ?

After Instruction

REG = 0x1A
WREG = 0xB5
N = 0
Z = 0

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

24.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PICmicro® microcontrollers are supported with a full range of hardware and software development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Assemblers/Compilers/Linkers
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers
  - MPLINK™ Linker/MPLIB™ Librarian
- Simulators
  - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB ICE 2000 In-Circuit Emulator
  - ICEPIC™ In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debugger
  - MPLAB ICD for PIC16F877
- Device Programmers
  - PRO MATE® II Universal Device Programmer
  - PICSTART® Plus Entry-Level Development Programmer
- Low Cost Demonstration Boards
  - PICDEM™ 1 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 2 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 3 Demonstration Board
  - PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board
  - KEELOQ® Demonstration Board

24.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8-bit microcontroller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows®-based application which contains:

- Multiple functionality
  - editor
  - simulator
  - programmer (sold separately)
  - emulator (sold separately)
- A full featured editor
- A project manager
- Customizable tool bar and key mapping
- A status bar
- On-line help

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either assembly or ‘C’)
- One touch assemble (or compile) and download to PICmicro tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
  - source files
  - absolute listing file
  - object code

The ability to use MPLAB IDE with Microchip’s MPLAB SIM simulator, allows a consistent platform and the ability to easily switch from the cost effective simulator to the full featured emulator with minimal retraining.

24.2 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM assembler is a full featured universal macro assembler for all PICmicro MCU’s. It can produce absolute code directly in the form of HEX files for device programmers, or it can generate relocatable objects for the MPLINK object linker.

The MPASM assembler has a command line interface and a Windows shell and can be used as a stand-alone application on a Windows 3.x, or greater, system. The MPASM assembler generates relocatable object files, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, an absolute LST file, which contains source lines and generated machine code, and a COD file for debugging.

The MPASM assembler features include:

- MPASM assembler and MPLINK object linker are integrated into MPLAB IDE projects.
- MPASM assembler allows user defined macros to be created for streamlined assembly.
- MPASM assembler allows conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files.
- MPASM assembler directives allow complete control over the assembly process.

24.3 MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C Compilers

The MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 Code Development Systems are complete ANSI ‘C’ compilers and integrated development environments for Microchip’s PIC17CXXX and PIC18CXXX family of microcontrollers, respectively. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities and ease of use not found with other compilers.

For easier source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is compatible with the MPLAB IDE memory display.

24.4 MPLINK Linker/MPLIB Librarian

The MPLINK object linker is a relocatable linker for the MPASM assembler and the MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C compilers. It can link relocatable objects from assembly or C source files, along with pre-compiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB object librarian is a librarian for pre-compiled code to be used with the MPLINK object linker. When a routine from a library is called from another source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications. The MPLIB object librarian manages the creation and modification of library files.

The MPLINK object linker features include:

- MPLINK object linker works with MPASM assembler and MPLAB C17 and MPLAB C18 C compilers.
- MPLINK object linker allows all memory areas to be defined as sections to provide link-time flexibility.

The MPLIB object librarian features include:

- MPLIB object librarian makes linking easier because single libraries can be included instead of many smaller files.
- MPLIB object librarian helps keep code maintainable by grouping related modules together.
- MPLIB object librarian commands allow libraries to be created and modules to be added, listed, replaced, deleted or extracted.

24.5 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM software simulator allows code development in a PC host environment by simulating the PICmicro series microcontrollers on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a file, or user-defined key press, to any of the pins. The execution can be performed in single step, execute until break, or trace mode.

The MPLAB SIM simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C17 and the MPLAB C18 C compilers and the MPASM assembler. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the laboratory environment, making it an excellent multi-project software development tool.

24.6 MPLAB ICE High Performance Universal In-Circuit Emulator with MPLAB IDE

The MPLAB ICE universal in-circuit emulator is intended to provide the product development engineer with a complete microcontroller design tool set for PICmicro microcontrollers (MCUs). Software control of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator is provided by the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE), which allows editing, “make” and download and source debugging from a single environment.

Interchangeable processor modules allow the system to be easily reconfigured for emulation of different processors. The universal architecture of the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator allows expansion to support new PICmicro microcontrollers.

The MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator system has been designed as a real-time emulation system, with advanced features that are generally found on more expensive development tools. The PC platform and Microsoft® Windows 3.x/95/98 environment were chosen to best make these features available to you, the end user.

The MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator is available in two versions: MPLAB ICE 1000 and MPLAB ICE 2000. The MPLAB ICE 1000 is a basic, low cost emulator system with simple trace capabilities. The MPLAB ICE 2000 is a full featured emulator system with enhanced trace, trigger and data monitoring features. Both systems use the same processor modules and will operate across the full operating speed range of the PICmicro MCU.

24.7 ICEPIC In-Circuit Emulator

The ICEPIC low cost, in-circuit emulator is a solution for the Microchip Technology PIC16C5X, PIC16C6X, PIC16C7X and PIC16CXXX families of 8-bit One-Time-Programmable (OTP) microcontrollers. The modular system can support different subsets of PIC16C5X or PIC16CXXX products through the use of interchangeable personality modules, or daughter boards. The emulator is capable of emulating without target application circuitry being present.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

24.8 MPLAB ICD In-Circuit Debugger

Microchip's In-Circuit Debugger, MPLAB ICD, is a powerful, low cost, run-time development tool. This tool is based on the FLASH PIC16F877 and can be used to develop this and other PICmicro microcontrollers from the PIC16CXXX family. The MPLAB ICD utilizes the in-circuit debugging capability built into the PIC16F87X. This feature, along with Microchip's In-Circuit Serial Programming™ protocol, offers cost effective in-circuit FLASH programming and debugging from the graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment. This enables a designer to develop and debug source code by watching variables, single-stepping and setting break points. Running at full speed enables testing hardware in real-time. The MPLAB ICD is also a programmer for the FLASH PIC16F87X family.

24.9 PRO MATE II Universal Device Programmer

The PRO MATE II universal device programmer is a full featured programmer, capable of operating in stand-alone mode, as well as PC-hosted mode. The PRO MATE II device programmer is CE compliant.

The PRO MATE II device programmer has programmable V_{DD} and V_{PP} supplies, which allow it to verify programmed memory at V_{DD} min and V_{DD} max for maximum reliability. It has an LCD display for instructions and error messages, keys to enter commands and a modular detachable socket assembly to support various package types. In stand-alone mode, the PRO MATE II device programmer can read, verify, or program PICmicro devices. It can also set code-protect bits in this mode.

24.10 PICSTART Plus Entry Level Development Programmer

The PICSTART Plus development programmer is an easy-to-use, low cost, prototype programmer. It connects to the PC via one of the COM (RS-232) ports. MPLAB Integrated Development Environment software makes using the programmer simple and efficient.

The PICSTART Plus development programmer supports all PICmicro devices with up to 40 pins. Larger pin count devices, such as the PIC16C92X and PIC17C76X, may be supported with an adapter socket. The PICSTART Plus development programmer is CE compliant.

24.11 PICDEM 1 Low Cost PICmicro Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 1 demonstration board is a simple board which demonstrates the capabilities of several of Microchip's microcontrollers. The microcontrollers supported are: PIC16C5X (PIC16C54 to PIC16C58A), PIC16C61, PIC16C62X, PIC16C71, PIC16C8X, PIC17C42, PIC17C43 and PIC17C44. All necessary hardware and software is included to run basic demo programs. The user can program the sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 1 demonstration board on a PRO MATE II device programmer, or a PICSTART Plus development programmer, and easily test firmware. The user can also connect the PICDEM 1 demonstration board to the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator and download the firmware to the emulator for testing. A prototype area is available for the user to build some additional hardware and connect it to the microcontroller socket(s). Some of the features include an RS-232 interface, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, push button switches and eight LEDs connected to PORTB.

24.12 PICDEM 2 Low Cost PIC16CXX Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 2 demonstration board is a simple demonstration board that supports the PIC16C62, PIC16C64, PIC16C65, PIC16C73 and PIC16C74 microcontrollers. All the necessary hardware and software is included to run the basic demonstration programs. The user can program the sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 2 demonstration board on a PRO MATE II device programmer, or a PICSTART Plus development programmer and easily test firmware. The MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator may also be used with the PICDEM 2 demonstration board to test firmware. A prototype area has been provided to the user for adding additional hardware and connecting it to the microcontroller socket(s). Some of the features include a RS-232 interface, push button switches, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, a Serial EEPROM to demonstrate usage of the I^2C™ bus and separate headers for connection to an LCD module and a keypad.

24.13 PICDEM 3 Low Cost PIC16CXXX Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 3 demonstration board is a simple demonstration board that supports the PIC16C923 and PIC16C924 in the PLCC package. It will also support future 44-pin PLCC microcontrollers with an LCD Module. All the necessary hardware and software is included to run the basic demonstration programs. The user can program the sample microcontrollers provided with the PICDEM 3 demonstration board on a PRO MATE II device programmer, or a PICSTART Plus development programmer with an adapter socket, and easily test firmware. The MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator may also be used with the PICDEM 3 demonstration board to test firmware. A prototype area has been provided to the user for adding hardware and connecting it to the microcontroller socket(s). Some of the features include an RS-232 interface, push button switches, a potentiometer for simulated analog input, a thermistor and separate headers for connection to an external LCD module and a keypad. Also provided on the PICDEM 3 demonstration board is an LCD panel, with 4 commons and 12 segments, that is capable of displaying time, temperature and day of the week. The PICDEM 3 demonstration board provides an additional RS-232 interface and Windows 3.1 software for showing the demultiplexed LCD signals on a PC. A simple serial interface allows the user to construct a hardware demultiplexer for the LCD signals.

24.14 PICDEM 17 Demonstration Board

The PICDEM 17 demonstration board is an evaluation board that demonstrates the capabilities of several Microchip microcontrollers, including PIC17C752, PIC17C756, PIC17C762 and PIC17C766. All necessary hardware is included to run basic demo programs, which are supplied on a 3.5-inch disk. A programmed sample is included and the user may erase it and program it with the other sample programs using the PRO MATE II device programmer, or the PICSTART Plus development programmer, and easily debug and test the sample code. In addition, the PICDEM 17 demonstration board supports down-loading of programs to and executing out of external FLASH memory on board. The PICDEM 17 demonstration board is also usable with the MPLAB ICE in-circuit emulator, or the PICMASTER emulator and all of the sample programs can be run and modified using either emulator. Additionally, a generous prototype area is available for user hardware.

24.15 KEELOQ Evaluation and Programming Tools

KEELOQ evaluation and programming tools support Microchip's HCS Secure Data Products. The HCS evaluation kit includes an LCD display to show changing codes, a decoder to decode transmissions and a programming interface to program test transmitters.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 24-1: DEVELOPMENT TOOLS FROM MICROCHIP

		PIC12CXXX	PIC14000	PIC16C5X	PIC16C6X	PIC16CXXX	PIC16F62X	PIC16C7X	PIC16C7XX	PIC16C8X	PIC16F8XX	PIC16C9XX	PIC17C4X	PIC17C7XX	PIC18CXX2	24CXX/ 25CXX/ 93CXX	HCSXXX	MCRFXXX	MCP2510
Software Tools	MPLAB® Integrated Development Environment	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
	MPLAB® C17 C Compiler												✓	✓					
	MPLAB® C18 C Compiler														✓				
	MPASM™ Assembler/ MPLINK™ Object Linker	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Emulators	MPLAB® ICE In-Circuit Emulator	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
	ICEPIC™ In-Circuit Emulator	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓							
Debugger	MPLAB® ICD In-Circuit Debugger				✓*			✓*			✓								
Programmers	PICSTART® Plus Entry Level Development Programmer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				
	PRO MATE® II Universal Device Programmer	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓**	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		
Demo Boards and Eval Kits	PICDEM™ 1 Demonstration Board			✓		✓		✓†		✓			✓						
	PICDEM™ 2 Demonstration Board				✓†			✓†							✓				
	PICDEM™ 3 Demonstration Board											✓							
	PICDEM™ 14A Demonstration Board		✓																
	PICDEM™ 17 Demonstration Board													✓					
	KEELOQ® Evaluation Kit																✓		
	KEELOQ® Transponder Kit																✓		
	microID™ Programmer's Kit																	✓	
	125 kHz microID™ Developer's Kit																	✓	
	125 kHz Anticollision microID™ Developer's Kit																	✓	
	13.56 MHz Anticollision microID™ Developer's Kit																	✓	
	MCP2510 CAN Developer's Kit																		✓

* Contact the Microchip Technology Inc. web site at www.microchip.com for information on how to use the MPLAB® ICD In-Circuit Debugger (DV164001) with PIC16C62, 63, 64, 65, 72, 73, 74, 76, 77.
** Contact Microchip Technology Inc. for availability date.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

25.0 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Absolute Maximum Ratings (†)

Ambient temperature under bias ..... -55°C to +125°C
Storage temperature ..... -65°C to +150°C
Voltage on any pin with respect to V_{SS} (except V_{DD}, $\overline{MCLR}$, and RA4) ..... -0.3V to (V_{DD} + 0.3V)
Voltage on V_{DD} with respect to V_{SS} ..... -0.3V to +7.5V
Voltage on $\overline{MCLR}$ with respect to V_{SS} **(Note 2)** ..... 0V to +13.25V
Voltage on RA4 with respect to Vss ..... 0V to +8.5V
Total power dissipation **(Note 1)** 1.0W
Maximum current out of V_{SS} pin ..... 300 mA
Maximum current into V_{DD} pin ..... 250 mA
Input clamp current, I_{IK} (V_I < 0 or V_I > V_{DD}) ..... ±20 mA
Output clamp current, I_{OK} (V_O < 0 or V_O > V_{DD}) ..... ±20 mA
Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin ..... 25 mA
Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin ..... 25 mA
Maximum current sunk by all ports (combined) ..... 200 mA
Maximum current sourced by all ports (combined) ..... 200 mA

Note 1: Power dissipation is calculated as follows:
$P_{dis} = V_{DD} \times \{I_{DD} - \sum I_{OH}\} + \sum \{(V_{DD}-V_{OH}) \times I_{OH}\} + \sum(V_{OL} \times I_{OL})$

2: Voltage spikes below V_{SS} at the $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$ pin, inducing currents greater than 80 mA, may cause latch-up. Thus, a series resistor of 50-100Ω should be used when applying a “low” level to the $\overline{MCLR}/V_{PP}$ pin, rather than pulling this pin directly to V_{SS}.

† NOTICE: Stresses above those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

FIGURE 25-1: PIC18CXX8 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)

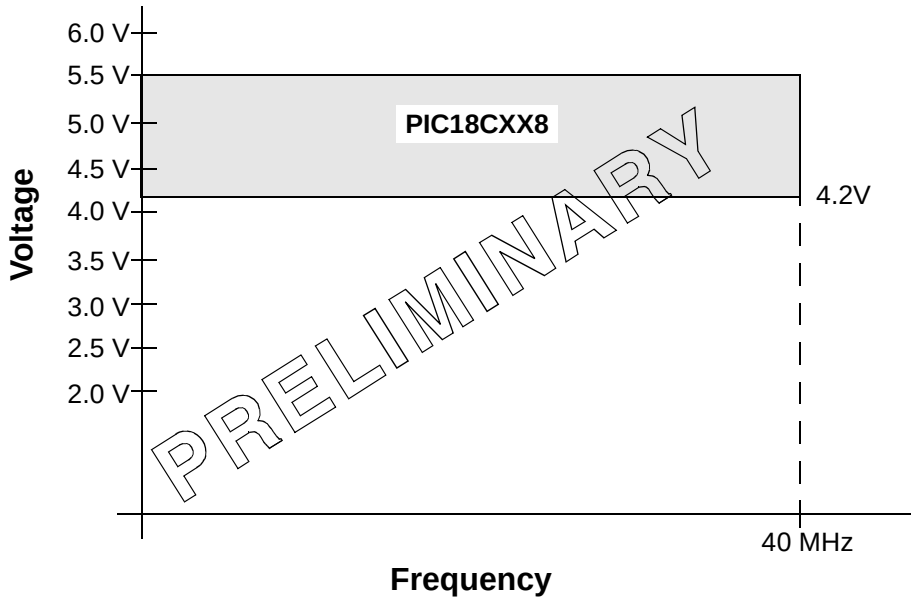
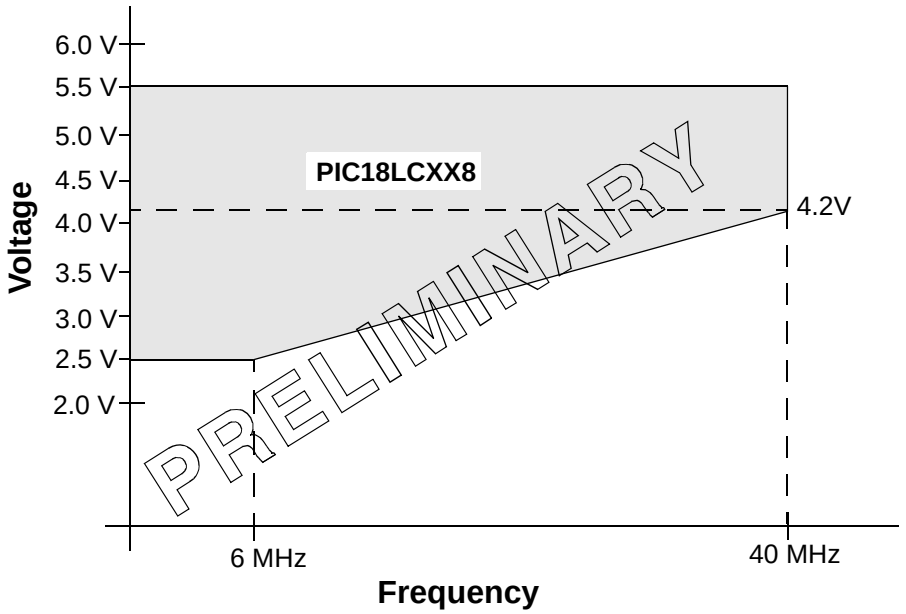


FIGURE 25-2: PIC18LCXX8 VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY GRAPH (INDUSTRIAL)



F_{MAX} = (20.0 MHz/V) ($V_{DDAPPMIN}$ - 2.5 V) + 6 MHz

Note: $V_{DDAPPMIN}$ is the minimum voltage of the PICmicro® device in the application.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

25.1 DC Characteristics

PIC18LCXX8 (Industrial)							Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial	
PIC18CXX8 (Industrial, Extended)							**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended	
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic/ Device**		**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D001	VDD	**Supply Voltage**						
		PIC18LCXX8		2.5	—	5.5	V	HS, XT, RC and LP osc mode
D001		PIC18CXX8		4.2	—	5.5	V	
D002	VDR	**RAM Data Retention Voltage(1)**		1.5	—	—	V	
D003	VPOR	**VDD Start Voltage** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal		—	—	0.7	V	See section on Power-on Reset for details
D004	SVDD	**VDD Rise Rate** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal		0.05	—	—	V/ms	See section on Power-on Reset for details
D005	VBOR	**Brown-out Reset Voltage**						
		PIC18LCXX8	BORV1:BORV0 = 11	2.5	—	2.66	V	
			BORV1:BORV0 = 10	2.7	—	2.86	V	
			BORV1:BORV0 = 01	4.2	—	4.46	V	
			BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.5	—	4.78	V	
D005		PIC18CXX8	BORV1:BORV0 = 1x	N.A.	—	N.A.	V	Not in operating voltage range of device
			BORV1:BORV0 = 01	4.2	—	4.46	V	
			BORV1:BORV0 = 00	4.5	—	4.78	V	

Legend: Rows are shaded for improved readability.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in SLEEP mode or during a device RESET without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail to rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in SLEEP mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in SLEEP mode, with all I/O pins in hi-impedance state and tied to VDD or VSS, and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, ...).

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kOhm.

PRELIMINARY

25.1 DC Characteristics (cont'd)

PIC18LCXX8 (Industrial)			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18CXX8 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic/ Device**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D010	IDD	**Supply Current(2,4)**					
		PIC18LCXX8	—	—	4	mA	XT, RC, RCIO osc configurations FOSC = 4 MHz, VDD = 2.5V
D010		PIC18CXX8	—	—	TBD	mA	XT, RC, RCIO osc configurations FOSC = 4 MHz, VDD = 4.2V
D010A		PIC18LCXX8	—	—	48	µA	LP osc configuration FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 2.5V
D010A		PIC18CXX8	—	—	TBD	µA	LP osc configuration FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 4.2V
D010C		PIC18LCXX8	—	—	45	mA	EC, ECIO osc configurations, Fosc = 40 MHz, VDD = 5.5V
D010C		PIC18CXX8	—	—	45	mA	EC, ECIO osc configurations, Fosc = 40 MHz, VDD = 5.5V
D013		PIC18LCXX8	— — —	— — —	TBD 50 50	mA mA mA	HS osc configurations Fosc = 6 MHz, VDD = 2.5V Fosc = 25 MHz, VDD = 5.5V HS + PLL osc configuration Fosc = 10 MHz, VDD = 5.5V
D013		PIC18CXX8	— —	— —	50 50	mA mA	HS osc configurations Fosc = 25 MHz, VDD = 5.5V HS + PLL osc configuration Fosc = 10 MHz, VDD = 5.5V
D014		PIC18LCXX8	— —	— —	48 TBD	µA µA	Timer1 osc configuration FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 2.5V FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 2.5V, 25°C
D014		PIC18CXX8	— —	— —	TBD TBD	µA µA	OSCB osc configuration FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 4.2V FOSC = 32 kHz, VDD = 4.2V, 25°C

Legend: Rows are shaded for improved readability.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in SLEEP mode or during a device RESET without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern, and temperature also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail to rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in SLEEP mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in SLEEP mode, with all I/O pins in hi-impedance state and tied to VDD and VSS, and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, ...).

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kOhm.

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

25.1 DC Characteristics (cont'd)

PIC18LCXX8 (Industrial)			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial				
PIC18CXX8 (Industrial, Extended)			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic/ Device**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D020	IPD	**Power-down Current(3)**					
		PIC18LCXX8	—	<2.5	5	μA	VDD = 2.5V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	—	36	μA	VDD = 5.5V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 2.5V, 25°C
D020		PIC18CXX8	—	<1	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
			—	—	36	μA	VDD = 5.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D020A			—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, 25°C
D021B			—	TBD	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
			—	—	42		VDD = 5.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D022	ΔIWDT	**Module Differential Current**					
		PIC18LCXX8	—	—	12	μA	VDD = 2.5V
		Watchdog Timer	—	—	25	μA	VDD = 5.5V
			—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 2.5V, 25°C
D022		PIC18CXX8	—	—	25	μA	VDD = 5.5V, -40°C to +85°C
		Watchdog Timer	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 5.5V, -40°C to +125°C
			—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, 25°C
D022A	ΔIBOR	PIC18LCXX8	—	—	50	μA	VDD = 5.5V
		Brown-out Reset	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 2.5V, 25°C
D022A		PIC18CXX8	—	—	50	μA	VDD = 5.5V, -40°C to +85°C
		Brown-out Reset	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 5.5V, -40°C to +125°
			—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, 25°C
D022B	ΔILVD	PIC18LCXX8	—	—	50	μA	VDD = 2.5V
		Low Voltage Detect	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 2.5V, 25°C
D022B		PIC18CXX8	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
		Low Voltage Detect	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
			—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, 25°C
D025	ΔIOSCB	PIC18LCXX8	—	—	3	μA	VDD = 2.5V
		Timer1 Oscillator	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 2.5V, 25°C
D025		PIC18CXX8	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +85°C
		Timer1 Oscillator	—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, -40°C to +125°C
			—	—	TBD	μA	VDD = 4.2V, 25°C

Legend: Rows are shaded for improved readability.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in SLEEP mode or during a device RESET without losing RAM data.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern, and temperature also have an impact on the current consumption.
The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are:
OSC1 = external square wave, from rail to rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD
MCLR = VDD; WDT enabled/disabled as specified.

3: The power-down current in SLEEP mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in SLEEP mode, with all I/O pins in hi-impedance state and tied to VDD and VSS, and all features that add delta current disabled (such as WDT, Timer1 Oscillator, BOR, ...).

4: For RC osc configuration, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be estimated by the formula Ir = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kOhm.

PRELIMINARY

25.2 DC Characteristics: PIC18CXX8 (Industrial, Extended) and PIC18LCXX8 (Industrial)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended			
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic/ Device**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VIL	**Input Low Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D030		with TTL buffer	VSS	0.15VDD	V	VDD < 4.5V
D030A			—	0.8	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D031		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	VSS	0.2VDD	V	
		RC3 and RC4	VSS	0.3VDD	V	
D032		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	VSS	0.2VDD	V	
D032A		OSC1 (in XT, HS and LP modes) and T1OSI	VSS	0.3VDD	V	
D033		OSC1(in RC mode)(1)	VSS	0.2VDD	V	
	VIH	**Input High Voltage**				
		I/O ports:				
D040		with TTL buffer	0.25VDD + 0.8V	VDD	V	VDD < 4.5V
D040A			2.0	VDD	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D041		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	0.8VDD	VDD	V	
		RC3 and RC4	0.7VDD	VDD	V	
D042		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	0.8VDD	VDD	V	
D042A		OSC1 (in XT, HS and LP modes) and T1OSI	0.7VDD	VDD	V	
D043		OSC1 (RC mode)(1)	0.9VDD	VDD	V	
	VHYS	**Hysteresis of Schmitt Trigger Inputs**				
D050			TBD	TBD	V	
	IIL	**Input Leakage Current(2,3)**				
D060		I/O ports	—	±1	µA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, Pin at hi-impedance
D061		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	—	±5	µA	Vss ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
D063		OSC1	—	±5	µA	Vss ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD
	IPU	**Weak Pull-up Current**				
D070	IPURB	PORTB weak pull-up current	50	400	µA	VDD = 5V, VPIN = VSS

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

25.2 DC Characteristics: PIC18CXX8 (Industrial, Extended) and PIC18LCXX8 (Industrial) (cont'd)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended			
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic/ Device**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VOL	**Output Low Voltage**				
D080		I/O ports	—	0.6	V	IOL = 8.5 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D080A			—	0.6	V	IOL = 7.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D083		OSC2/CLKO (RC mode)	—	0.6	V	IOL = 1.6 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D083A			—	0.6	V	IOL = 1.2 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
	VOH	**Output High Voltage(3)**				
D090		I/O ports	VDD - 0.7	—	V	IOH = -3.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D090A			VDD - 0.7	—	V	IOH = -2.5 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
D092		OSC2/CLKO (RC mode)	VDD - 0.7	—	V	IOH = -1.3 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +85°C
D092A			VDD - 0.7	—	V	IOH = -1.0 mA, VDD = 4.5V, -40°C to +125°C
	VOD	**Open-drain High Voltage**				
D150			—	7.5	V	RA4 pin
		Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins				
D101	CIO	All I/O pins and OSC2 (in RC mode)	—	50	pF	To meet the AC Timing Specifications
D102	CB	SCL, SDA	—	400	pF	In I^2C mode

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKI pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended that the PICmicro device be driven with an external clock while in RC mode.

2: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

3: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-3: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

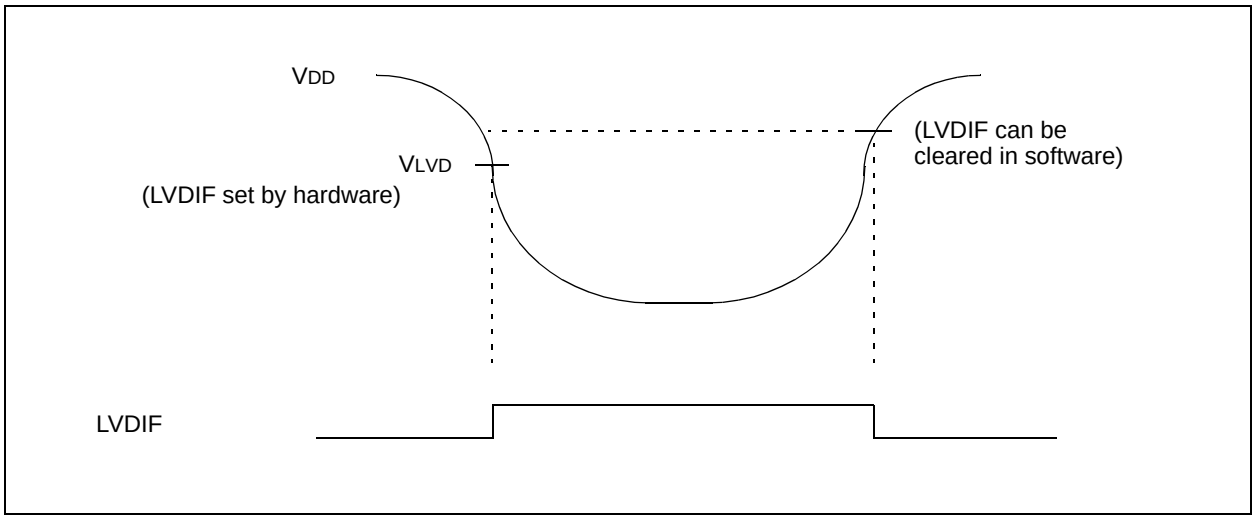


TABLE 25-1: LOW VOLTAGE DETECT CHARACTERISTICS

			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic/**		**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D420	VLVD	LVD Voltage	LVDL<3:0> = 0100	2.5	2.66	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0101	2.7	2.86	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0110	2.8	2.98	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 0111	3.0	3.2	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1000	3.3	3.52	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1001	3.5	3.72	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1010	3.6	3.84	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1011	3.8	4.04	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1100	4.0	4.26	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1101	4.2	4.46	V	
			LVDL<3:0> = 1110	4.5	4.78	V	

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 25-2: EPROM PROGRAMMING REQUIREMENTS

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +40°C			
Param. No.	**Sym**	**Characteristic**	**Min**	**Max**	**Units**	**Conditions**
		Internal Program Memory Programming Specs (Note 1)				
D110	VPP	Voltage on $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin	12.75	13.25	V	**(Note 2)**
D111	VDDP	Supply voltage during programming	4.75	5.25	V	
D112	IPP	Current into $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin	—	50	mA	
D113	IDDP	Supply current during programming	—	30	mA	
D114	TPROG	Programming pulse width	100	1000	µs	Terminated via internal/external interrupt or a RESET
D115	TERASE	EPROM erase time				
		Device operation ≤ 3V	4	—	hrs	
		Device operation ≥ 3V	TBD	—	hrs	

Note 1: These specifications are for the programming of the on-chip program memory EPROM through the use of the table write instructions. The complete programming specifications can be found in: PIC18CXX8 Programming Specifications (Literature number DS39028).

2: The $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin may be kept in this range at times other than programming, but is not recommended.

PRELIMINARY

25.3 AC (Timing) Characteristics

25.3.1 TIMING PARAMETER SYMBOLOGY

The timing parameter symbols have been created following one of the following formats:

1. TppS2ppS
2. TppS
3. TCC:ST (I²C specifications only)
4. Ts (I²C specifications only)

T			
F	Frequency	T	Time

Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:

pp			
cc	CCP1	osc	OSC1
ck	CLKO	rd	$\overline{RD}$
cs	$\overline{CS}$	rw	$\overline{RD}$ or $\overline{WR}$
di	SDI	sc	SCK
do	SDO	ss	$\overline{SS}$
dt	Data-in	t0	T0CKI
io	I/O port	t1	T1CKI
mc	$\overline{MCLR}$	wr	$\overline{WR}$

Uppercase letters and their meanings:

S			
F	Fall	P	Period
H	High	R	Rise
I	Invalid (Hi-impedance)	V	Valid
L	Low	Z	Hi-impedance
I²C only			
AA	output access	High	High
BUF	Bus free	Low	Low

TCC:ST (I²C specifications only)

CC			
HD	Hold	SU	Setup
ST			
DAT	DATA input hold	STO	STOP condition
STA	START condition		

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

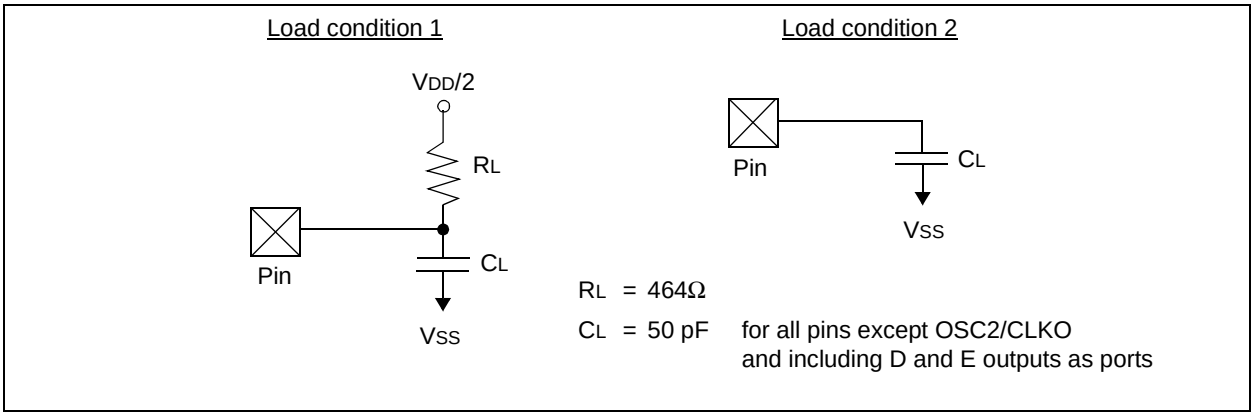
25.3.2 TIMING CONDITIONS

The temperature and voltages specified in Table 25-3 apply to all timing specifications, unless otherwise noted. Figure 25-4 specifies the load conditions for the timing specifications.

TABLE 25-3: TEMPERATURE AND VOLTAGE SPECIFICATIONS - AC

AC CHARACTERISTICS	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended Operating voltage VDD range as described in DC spec Section 25.1. LC parts operate for industrial temperatures only.

FIGURE 25-4: LOAD CONDITIONS FOR DEVICE TIMING SPECIFICATIONS



25.3.3 TIMING DIAGRAMS AND SPECIFICATIONS

FIGURE 25-5: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING

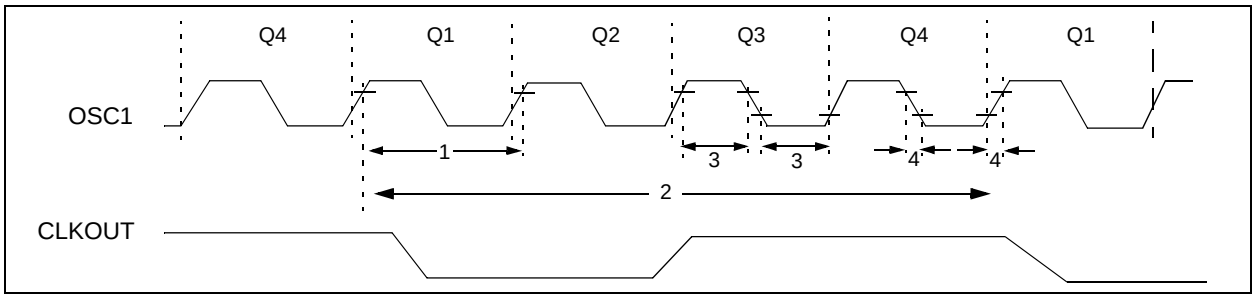


TABLE 25-4: EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
1A	Fosc	External CLKIN Frequency(1)	DC	40	MHz	XT osc
			DC	40	MHz	HS osc
			4	10	MHz	HS + PLL osc
			DC	40	kHz	LP osc
			DC	40	MHz	EC
		Oscillator Frequency(1)	DC	4	MHz	RC osc
			0.1	4	MHz	XT osc
			4	25	MHz	HS osc
			4	10	MHz	HS + PLL osc
			5	200	kHz	LP osc mode
1	Tosc	External CLKIN Period(1)	250	—	ns	XT and RC osc
			40	—	ns	HS osc
			100	—	ns	HS + PLL osc
			5	—	µs	LP osc
			5	—	ns	EC
		Oscillator Period(1)	250	—	ns	RC osc
			250	10,000	ns	XT osc
			100	10,000	ns	HS osc
			40	100	ns	HS + PLL osc
			5	—	µs	LP osc
2	TCY	Instruction Cycle Time(1)	100	—	ns	TCY = 4/FOSC
3	TosL, TosH	External Clock in (OSC1) High or Low Time	30	—	ns	XT osc
			2.5	—	ns	LP osc
			10	—	µs	HS osc
4	TosR, TosF	External Clock in (OSC1) Rise or Fall Time	—	20	ns	XT osc
			—	50	ns	LP osc
			—	7.5	ns	HS osc

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time-base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at "Min." values with an external clock applied to the OSC1/CLKI pin. When an external clock input is used, the "Max." cycle time limit is "DC" (no clock) for all devices.

PRELIMINARY

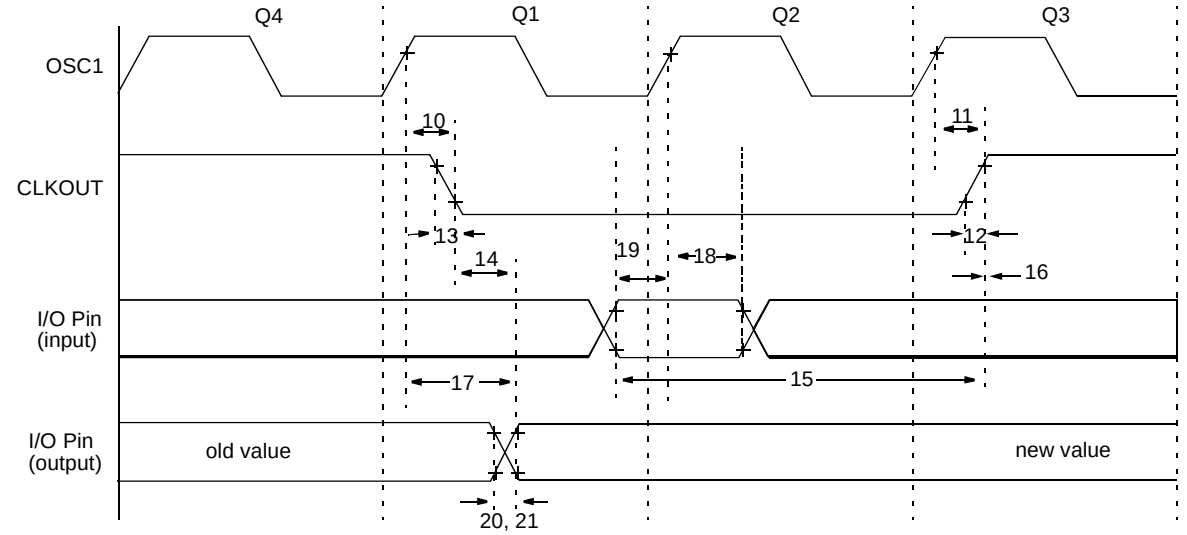
 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 25-5: PLL CLOCK TIMING SPECIFICATION (V_{DD} = 4.2V - 5.5V)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
7	T_{PLL}	PLL Start-up Time (Lock Time)	—	2	ms	
	Δ_{CLK}	CLKOUT Stability (Jitter) using PLL	-2	+2	%	

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-6: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-6: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
10	TosH2ckL	OSC1↑ to CLKOUT↓		—	75	200	ns	(1)
11	TosH2ckH	OSC1↑ to CLKOUT↑		—	75	200	ns	(1)
12	TckR	CLKOUT rise time		—	35	100	ns	(1)
13	TckF	CLKOUT fall time		—	35	100	ns	(1)
14	TckL2ioV	CLKOUT ↓ to Port out valid		—	—	0.5TCY + 20	ns	(1)
15	TioV2ckH	Port in valid before CLKOUT ↑		0.25TCY + 25	—	—	ns	(1)
16	TckH2ioI	Port in hold after CLKOUT ↑		0	—	—	ns	(1)
17	TosH2ioV	OSC1↑ (Q1 cycle) to Port out valid		—	50	150	ns	
18	TosH2ioI	OSC1↑ (Q2 cycle) to Port input invalid (I/O in hold time)	PIC18**C**XX8	100	—	—	ns	
18A			PIC18**LC**XX8	200	—	—	ns	
19	TioV2osH	Port input valid to OSC1↑ (I/O in setup time)		0	—	—	ns	
20	TioR	Port output rise time	PIC18**C**XX8	—	10	25	ns	
20A			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	—	60	ns	
21	TioF	Port output fall time	PIC18**C**XX8	—	10	25	ns	
21A			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	—	60	ns	
22††	TINP	INT pin high or low time		TCY	—	—	ns	
23††	TRBP	RB7:RB4 change INT high or low time		TCY	—	—	ns	
24††	TRCP	RC7:RC4 change INT high or low time		20	—	—	ns	

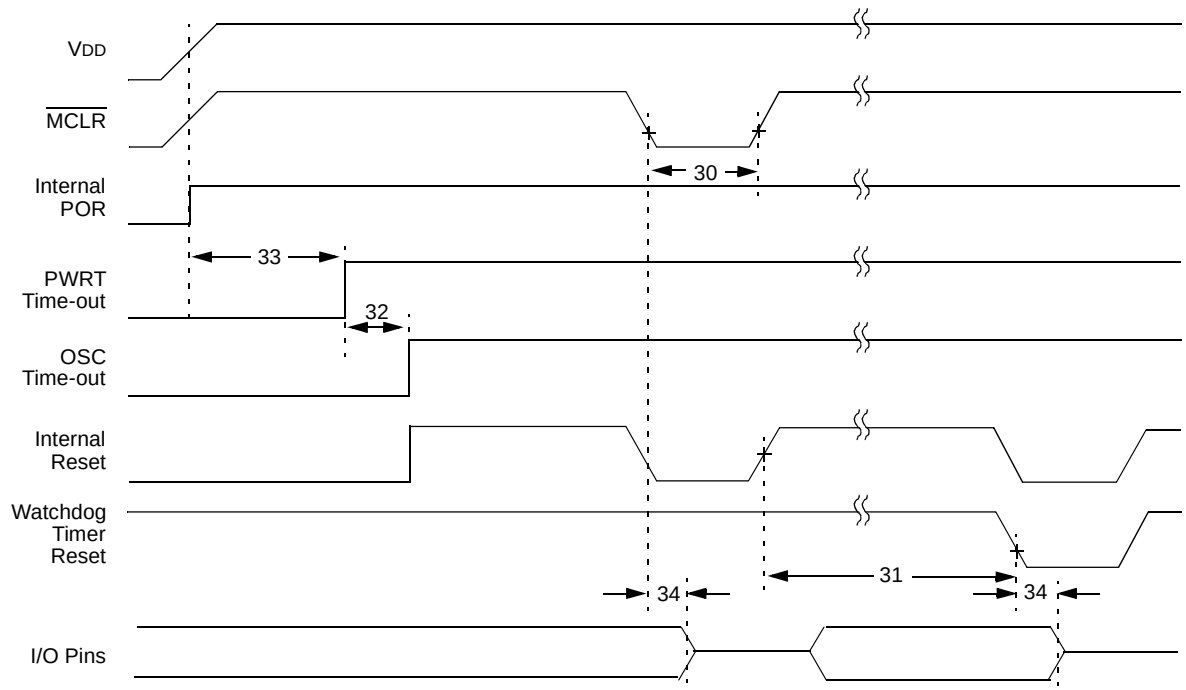
†† These parameters are asynchronous events, not related to any internal clock edges.

Note 1: Measurements are taken in RC mode where CLKO pin output is 4 x TOSC.

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 25-7: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

FIGURE 25-8: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING

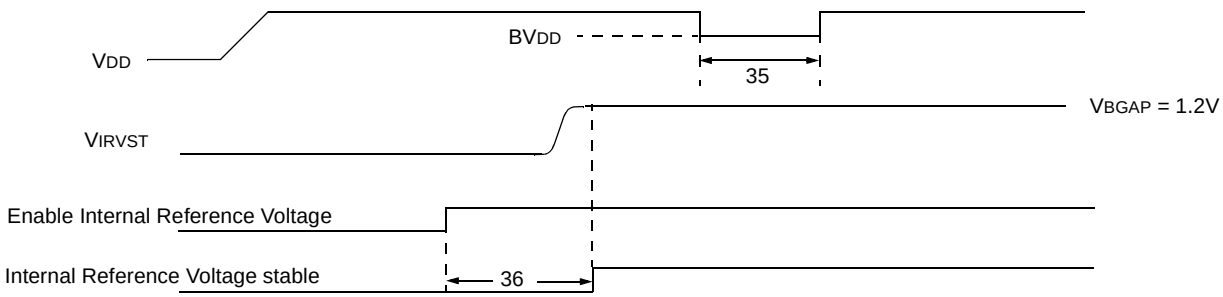
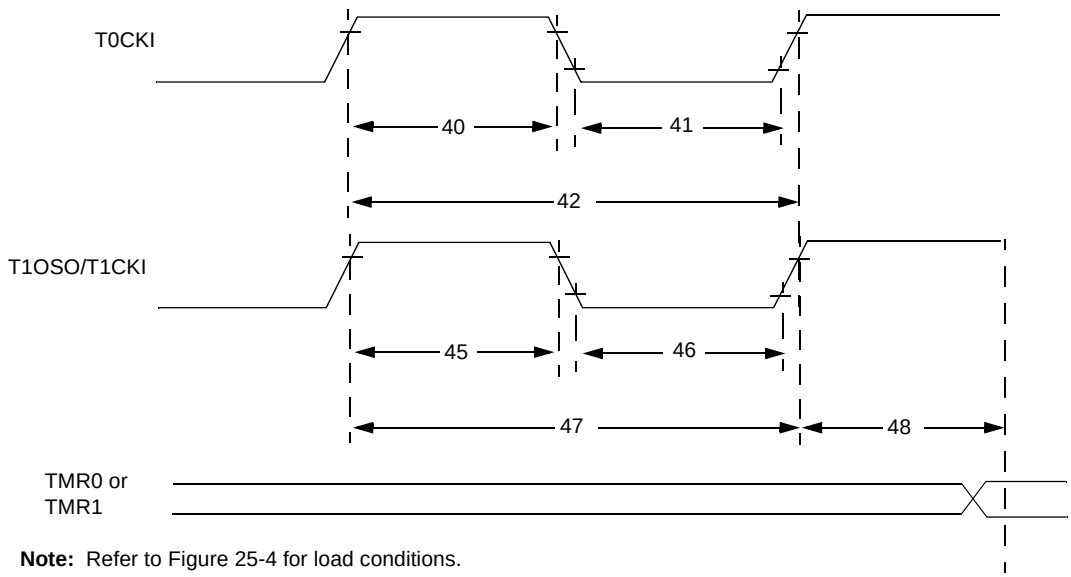


TABLE 25-7: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
30	TmcL	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Pulse Width (low)	2	—	—	µs	
31	TWDT	Watchdog Timer Time-out Period (No Prescaler)	7	18	33	ms	
32	TOST	Oscillation Start-up Timer Period	1024TOSC	—	1024TOSC	—	TOSC = OSC1 period
33	TPWRT	Power up Timer Period	28	72	132	ms	
34	TIOZ	I/O Hi-impedance from $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Low or Watchdog Timer Reset	—	2	—	µs	
35	TBOR	Brown-out Reset Pulse Width	200	—	—	µs	VDD ≤ BVDD (See D005)
36	TIVRST	Time for Internal Reference Voltage to become stable	—	20	50	µs	

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-9: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

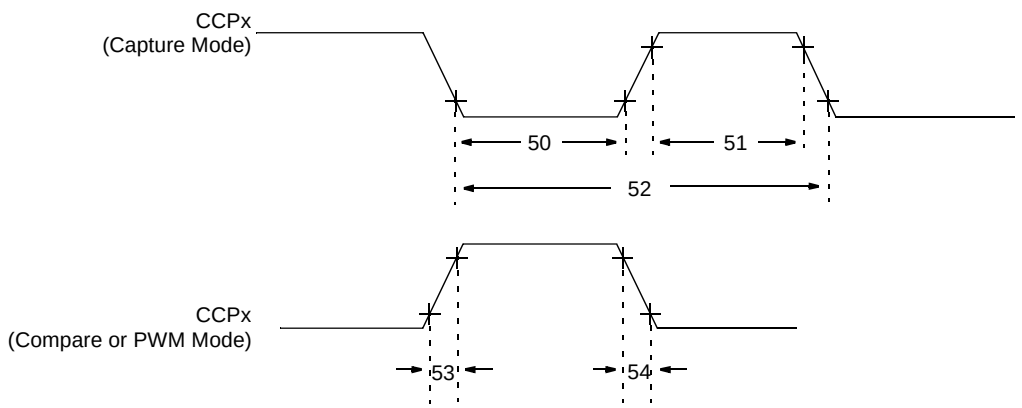
TABLE 25-8: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Max	Units	Conditions
40	Tt0H	T0CKI High Pulse Width		No Prescaler	0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
				With Prescaler	10	—	ns	
41	Tt0L	T0CKI Low Pulse Width		No Prescaler	0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
				With Prescaler	10	—	ns	
42	Tt0P	T0CKI Period		No Prescaler	TCY + 10	—	ns	
				With Prescaler	Greater of: 20 ns or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4,..., 256)
45	Tt1H	T1CKI High Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18**C**XX8	10	—	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	25	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC18**C**XX8	30	—	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	50	—	ns	
46	Tt1L	T1CKI Low Time	Synchronous, no prescaler		0.5TCY + 5	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with prescaler	PIC18**C**XX8	10	—	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	25	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	PIC18**C**XX8	30	—	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	TBD	TBD	ns	
47	Tt1P	T1CKI Input Period	Synchronous		Greater of: 20 ns or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
			Asynchronous		60	—	ns	
	Ft1	T1CKI oscillator input frequency range			DC	50	kHz	
48	Tcke2tmrl	Delay from external T1CKI clock edge to timer increment			2Tosc	7Tosc	—	

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 25-10: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM TIMINGS (CCP1 AND CCP2)



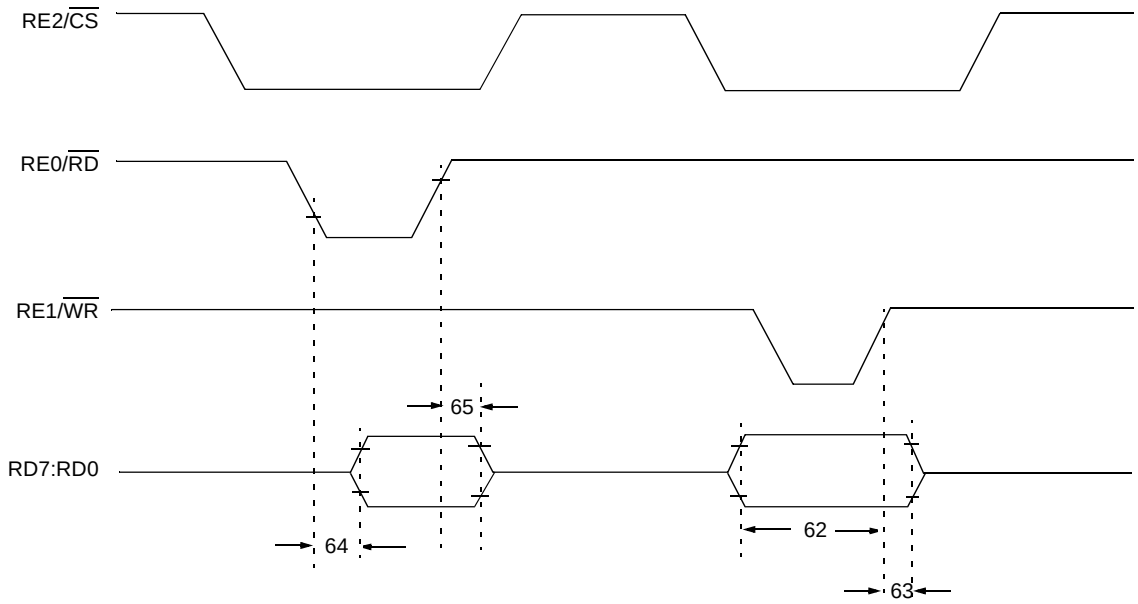
Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-9: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM REQUIREMENTS (CCP1 AND CCP2)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic			Min	Max	Units	Conditions
50	TccL	CCPx input low time	No Prescaler		0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	PIC18**C**XX8	10	—	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	20	—	ns	
51	TccH	CCPx input high time	No Prescaler		0.5TCY + 20	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	PIC18**C**XX8	10	—	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	20	—	ns	
52	TccP	CCPx input period			3TCY + 40 / N	—	ns	N = prescale value (1,4 or 16)
53	TccR	CCPx output fall time		PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	
54	TccF	CCPx output fall time		PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
				PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-11: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT TIMING (PIC18C658 AND PIC18C858)



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

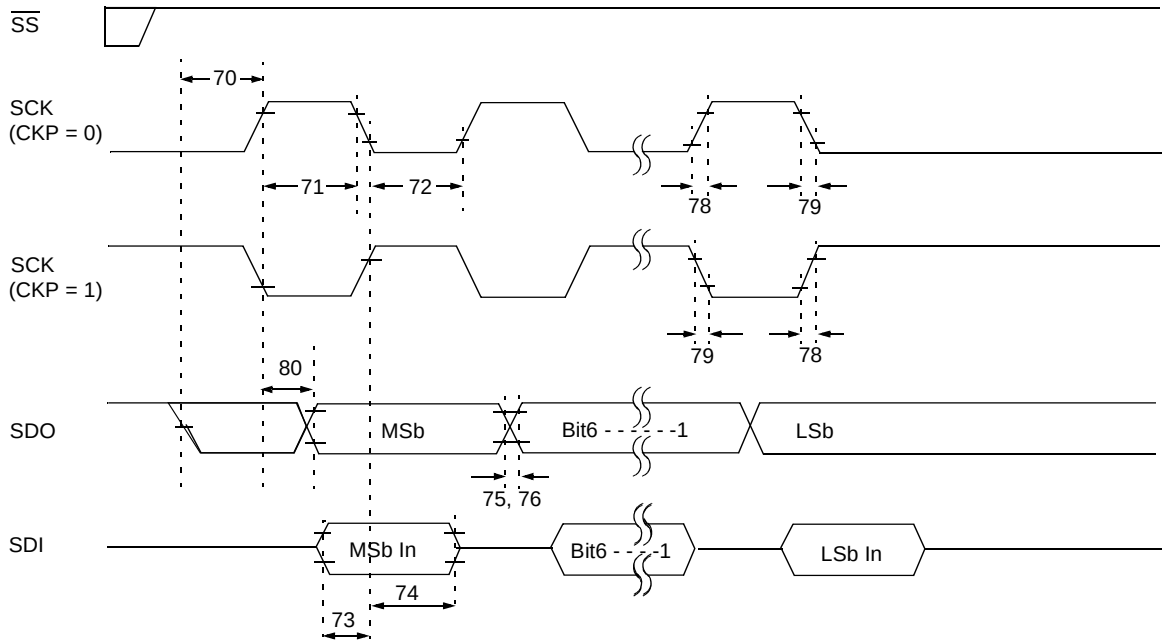
TABLE 25-10: PARALLEL SLAVE PORT REQUIREMENTS (PIC18C658 AND PIC18C858)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
62	TdtV2wrH	Data-in valid before $\overline{WR}$↑ or $\overline{CS}$↑ (setup time)		20 25	— —	ns ns	 Extended Temp range
63	TwrH2dtI	$\overline{WR}$↑ or $\overline{CS}$↑ to data-in invalid (hold time)	PIC18**C**XX8	20	—	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	35	—	ns	
64	TrdL2dtV	$\overline{RD}$↓ and $\overline{CS}$↓ to data-out valid		— —	80 90	ns ns	 Extended Temp range
65	TrdH2dtI	$\overline{RD}$↑ or $\overline{CS}$↓ to data-out invalid		10	30	ns	
66	TibfINH	Inhibit the IBF flag bit being cleared from $\overline{WR}$↑ or $\overline{CS}$↑		—	3TCY	ns	

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 25-12: EXAMPLE SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

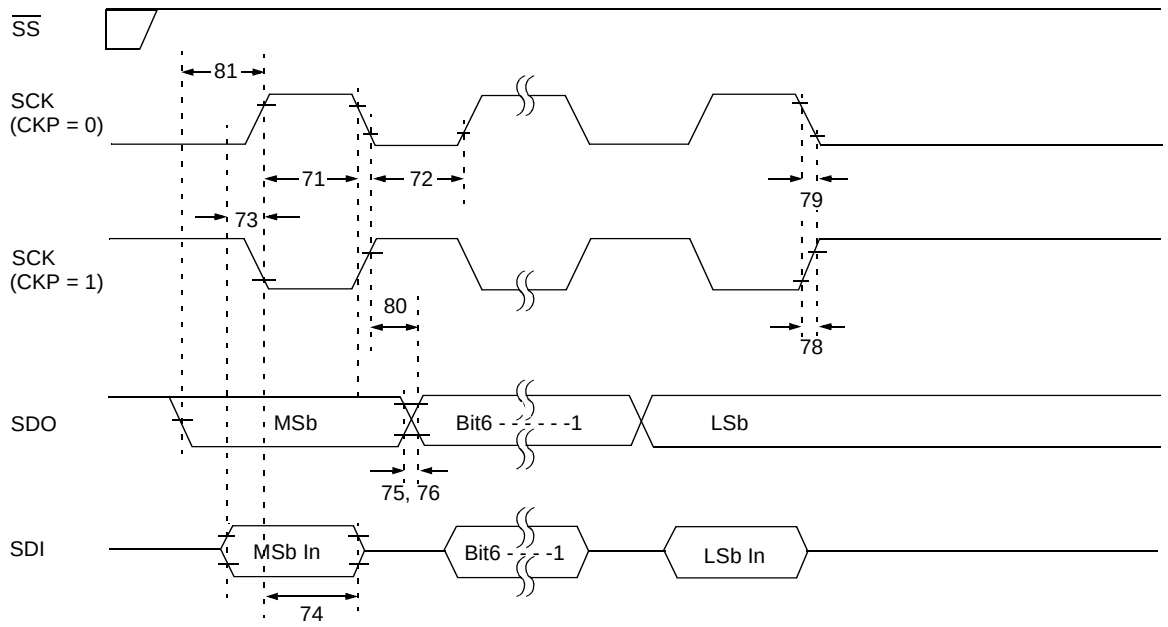
TABLE 25-11: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE, CKE = 0)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$↓ to SCK↓ or SCK↑ input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the 1st clock edge of Byte2		1.5TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time		—	25	ns	
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18**C**XX8	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	100	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of parameter # 73A.
2: Only if parameter #s 71A and 72A are used.

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-13: EXAMPLE SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-12: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (MASTER MODE, CKE = 1)

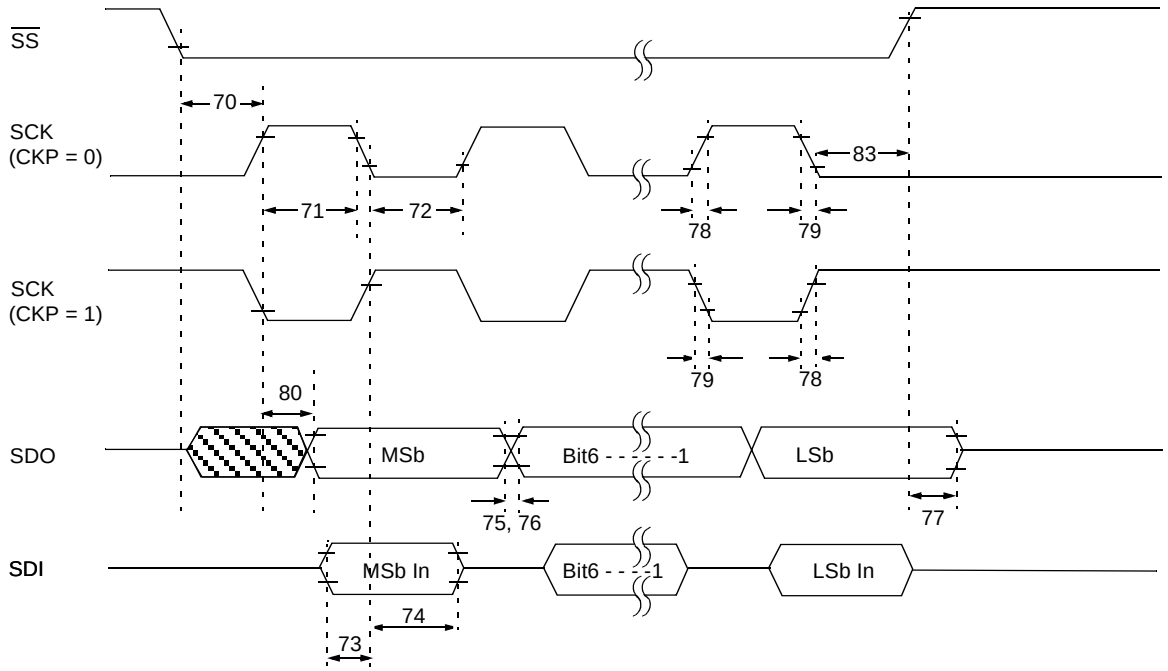
Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the 1st clock edge of Byte2		1.5TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time		—	25	ns	
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18**C**XX8	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	100	ns	
81	TdoV2scH, TdoV2scL	SDO data output setup to SCK edge		TCY	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of parameter # 73A.
2: Only if parameter #s 71A and 72A are used.

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 25-14: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

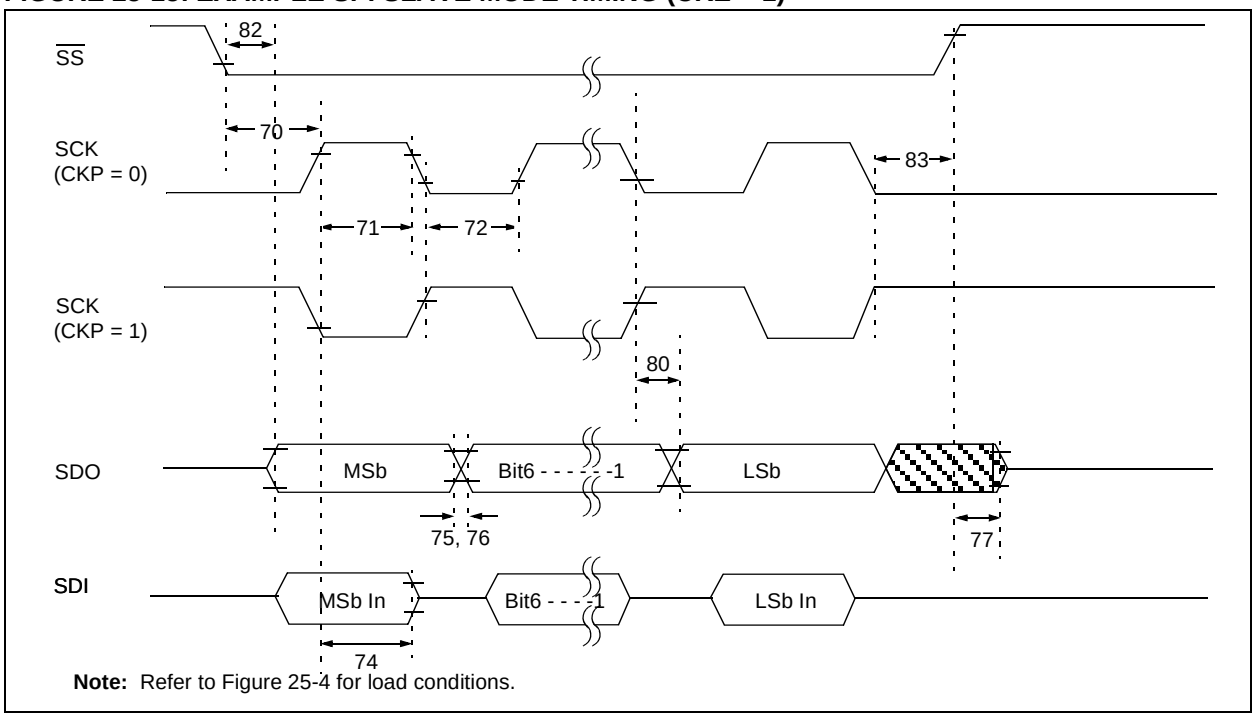
TABLE 25-13: EXAMPLE SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0))

Parm. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$↓ to SCK↓ or SCK↑ input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the 1st clock edge of Byte2		1.5TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8		45	ns	
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time		—	25	ns	
77	TssH2doZ	$\overline{SS}$↑ to SDO output hi-impedance		10	50	ns	
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8		45	ns	
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18**C**XX8	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8		100	ns	
83	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ after SCK edge		1.5TCY + 40	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of parameter # 73A.
2: Only if parameter #s 71A and 72A are used.

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-15: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-14: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE REQUIREMENTS (CKE = 1)

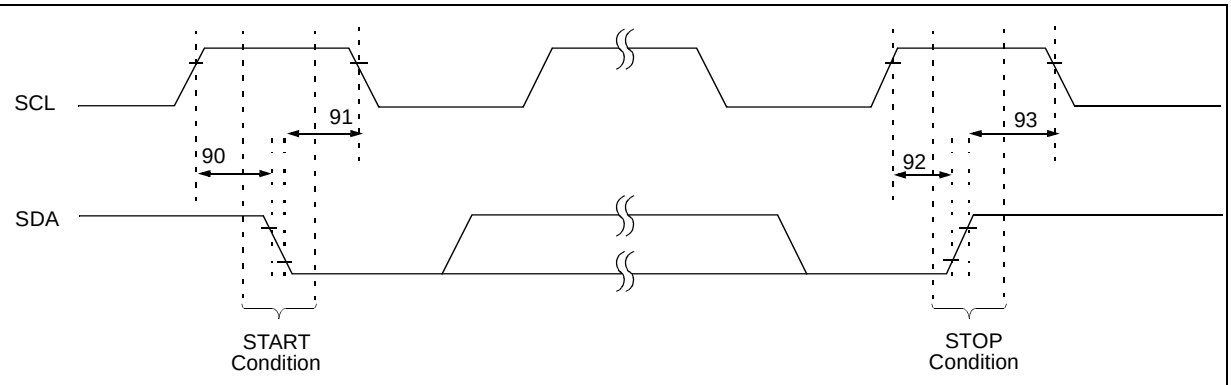
Parm. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
70	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$↓ to SCK↓ or SCK↑ input		TCY	—	ns	
71	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
71A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
72	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)	Continuous	1.25TCY + 30	—	ns	
72A			Single Byte	40	—	ns	**(Note 1)**
73A	TB2B	Last clock edge of Byte1 to the 1st clock edge of Byte2		1.5TCY + 40	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
74	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	ns	
75	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	
76	TdoF	SDO data output fall time		—	25	ns	
77	TssH2doZ	$\overline{SS}$↑ to SDO output hi-impedance		10	50	ns	
78	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	PIC18**C**XX8	—	25	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	45	ns	
79	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)		—	25	ns	
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	PIC18**C**XX8	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	100	ns	
82	TssL2doV	SDO data output valid after $\overline{SS}$↓ edge	PIC18**C**XX8	—	50	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	100	ns	
83	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ after SCK edge		1.5TCY + 40	—	ns	

Note 1: Requires the use of parameter # 73A.
2: Only if parameter #s 71A and 72A are used.

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 25-16: I²C BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING



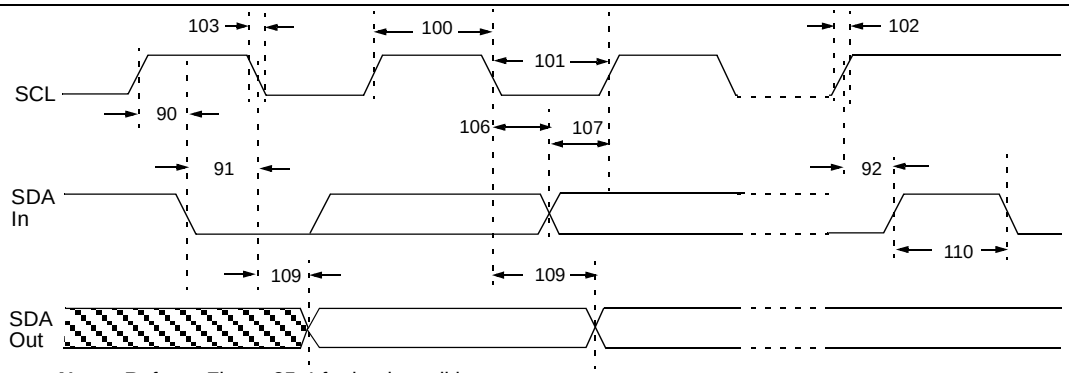
Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-15: I²C BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)

Parm. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
90	TSU:STA	START condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	4700	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	600	—		
91	THD:STA	START condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	4000	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	600	—		
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	4700	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	600	—		
93	THD:STO	STOP condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	4000	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	600	—		

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-17: I²C BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-16: I²C BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS (SLAVE MODE)

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100	THIGH	Clock high time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	µs	PIC18CXX8 must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	PIC18CXX8 must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP Module	1.5TCY	—		
101	TLOW	Clock low time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	PIC18CXX8 must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	µs	PIC18CXX8 must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP module	1.5TCY	—	ns	
102	TR	SDA and SCL rise time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1Cb	300	ns	Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
103	TF	SDA and SCL fall time	100 kHz mode	—	300	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1Cb	300	ns	Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
90	TSU:STA	START condition setup time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	Only relevant for repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
91	THD:STA	START condition hold time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	µs	After this period the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
106	THD:DAT	Data input hold time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	µs	
107	TSU:DAT	Data input setup time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition setup time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	µs	
109	TAA	Output valid from clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	**(Note 1)**
			400 kHz mode	—	—	ns	
110	TBUF	Bus free time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	µs	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	µs	
D102	Cb	Bus capacitive loading		—	400	pF	

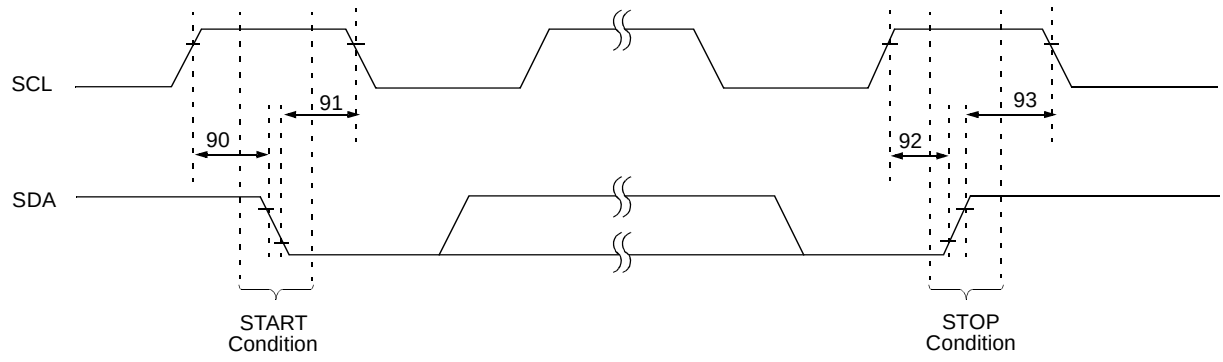
Note 1: As a transmitter, the device must provide this internal minimum delay time to bridge the undefined region (min. 300 ns) of the falling edge of SCL to avoid unintended generation of START or STOP conditions.

2: A fast mode I²C bus device can be used in a standard mode I²C bus system, but the requirement tsu;DAT ≥ 250 ns must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line.
Before the SCL line is released, TR max. + tsu;DAT = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (according to the standard mode I²C bus specification).

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 25-18: MASTER SSP I²C BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING WAVEFORMS



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

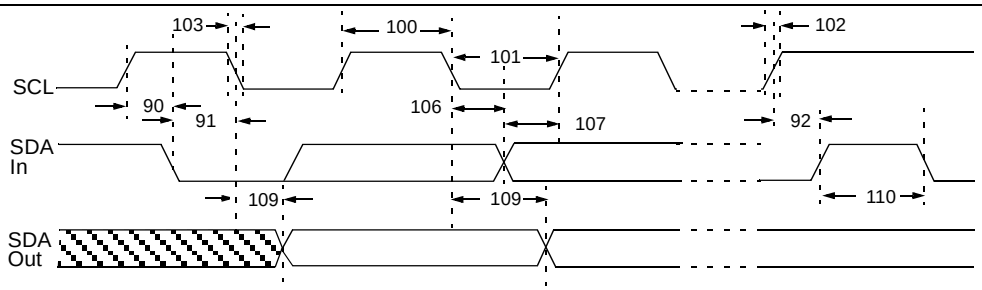
TABLE 25-17: MASTER SSP I²C BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
90	TSU:STA	START condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
91	THD:STA	START condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition Setup time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
93	THD:STO	STOP condition Hold time	100 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(Tosc)(BRG + 1)	—		

Note 1: Maximum pin capacitance = 10 pF for all I²C pins.

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-19: MASTER SSP I²C BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-18: MASTER SSP I²C BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
100	THIGH	Clock high time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
101	TLOW	Clock low time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
102	TR	SDA and SCL rise time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1Cb	300	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	300	ns	
103	TF	SDA and SCL fall time	100 kHz mode	—	300	ns	Cb is specified to be from 10 to 400 pF
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1Cb	300	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	100	ns	
90	TSU:STA	START condition setup time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	Only relevant for Repeated START condition
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
91	THD:STA	START condition hold time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	After this period the first clock pulse is generated
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
106	THD:DAT	Data input hold time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	TBD	—	ns	
107	TSU:DAT	Data input setup time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	**(Note 2)**
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	TBD	—	ns	
92	TSU:STO	STOP condition setup time	100 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			400 kHz mode	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	2(TOSC)(BRG + 1)	—	ms	
109	TAA	Output valid from clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	
			400 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			1 MHz mode(1)	—	—	ns	
110	TBUF	Bus free time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	ms	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	ms	
			1 MHz mode(1)	TBD	—	ms	
D102	Cb	Bus capacitive loading		—	400	pF	

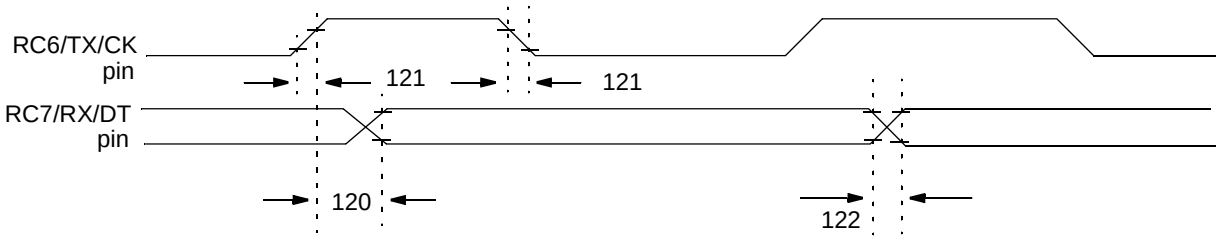
Note 1: Maximum pin capacitance = 10 pF for all I²C pins.

2: A fast mode I²C bus device can be used in a standard mode I²C bus system, but parameter #107 ≥ 250 ns must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the LOW period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line. Before the SCL line is released, parameter #102+ parameter #107 = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (for 100 kHz mode).

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

FIGURE 25-20: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING



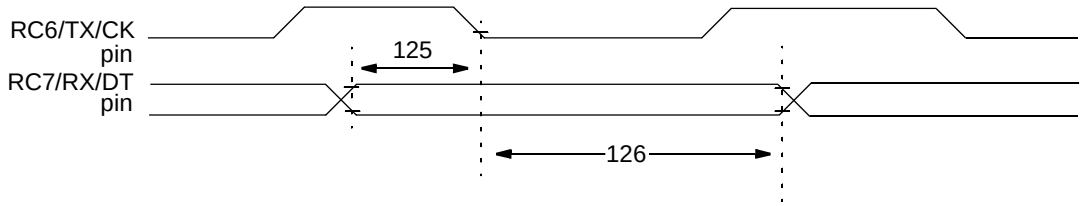
Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-19: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
120	TckH2dtV	SYNC XMIT (Master & Slave) Clock high to data-out valid	PIC18**C**XX8	—	40	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	100	ns	
121	Tckrf	Clock out rise time and fall time (Master mode)	PIC18**C**XX8	—	20	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	50	ns	
122	Tdtrf	Data-out rise time and fall time	PIC18**C**XX8	—	20	ns	
			PIC18**LC**XX8	—	50	ns	

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-21: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 25-4 for load conditions.

TABLE 25-20: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Max	Units	Conditions
125	TdtV2ckl	SYNC RCV (Master & Slave) Data-hold before CK ↓ (DT hold time)	10	—	ns	
126	TckL2dtl	Data-hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)	15	—	ns	

PRELIMINARY

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

TABLE 25-21: A/D CONVERTER CHARACTERISTICS: PIC18CXX8 (INDUSTRIAL, EXTENDED)
PIC18LCXX8 (INDUSTRIAL)

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic	Min	Typ	Max	Units	Conditions
A01	N_R	Resolution	—	—	10	bit	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} \geq 3.0V$
			—	—	TBD	bit	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} < 3.0V$
A03	E_{IL}	Integral linearity error	—	—	<±1	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} \geq 3.0V$
			—	—	TBD	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} < 3.0V$
A04	E_{DL}	Differential linearity error	—	—	<±1	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} \geq 3.0V$
			—	—	TBD	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} < 3.0V$
A05	E_{FS}	Full scale error	—	—	<±1	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} \geq 3.0V$
			—	—	TBD	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} < 3.0V$
A06	E_{OFF}	Offset error	—	—	<±1	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} \geq 3.0V$
			—	—	TBD	LSb	$V_{REF} = V_{DD} < 3.0V$
A10	—	Monotonicity		guaranteed(3)		—	$V_{SS} \leq V_{AIN} \leq V_{REF}$
A20	V_{REF}	Reference voltage (V_{REFH} - V_{REFL})	0V	—	—	V	
A20A			3V	—	—	V	For 10-bit resolution
A21	V_{REFH}	Reference voltage High	AV_{SS}	—	AV_{DD} + 0.3V	V	
A22	V_{REFL}	Reference voltage Low	AV_{SS} - 0.3V	—	AV_{DD}	V	
A25	V_{AIN}	Analog input voltage	AV_{SS} - 0.3V	—	V_{REF} + 0.3V	V	
A30	Z_{AIN}	Recommended impedance of analog voltage source	—	—	10.0	kΩ	
A40	I_{AD}	A/D conversion current (V_{DD}) PIC18**C**XX8	—	180	—	μA	Average current consumption when A/D is on(1).
		A/D conversion current (V_{DD}) PIC18**LC**XXX	—	90	—	μA	
A50	I_{REF}	V_{REF} input current(2)	10	—	1000	μA	During V_{AIN} acquisition. Based on differential of V_{HOLD} to V_{AIN}. To charge C_{HOLD} see Section 18.0.
			—	—	10	μA	During A/D conversion cycle.

Note 1: When A/D is off, it will not consume any current other than minor leakage current. The power-down current spec includes any such leakage from the A/D module.

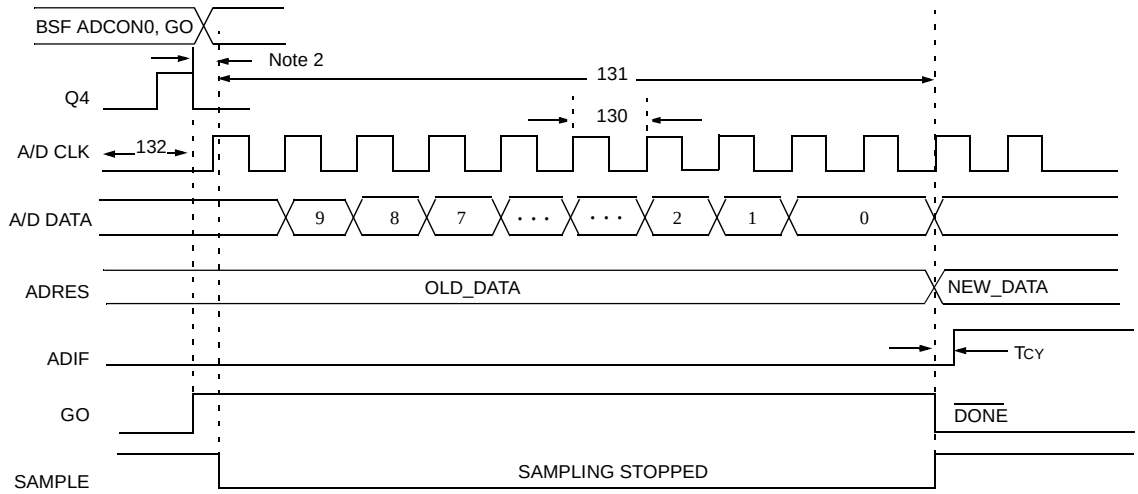
V_{REF} current is from RA2/AN2/V_{REF}- and RA3/AN3/V_{REF}+ pins or AV_{DD} and AV_{SS} pins, whichever is selected as reference input.

2: $V_{SS} \leq V_{AIN} \leq V_{REF}$

3: The A/D conversion result either increases or remains constant as the analog input increases.

PRELIMINARY

FIGURE 25-22: A/D CONVERSION TIMING



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts.This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.
2: This is a minimal RC delay (typically 100 ns), which also disconnects the holding capacitor from the analog input.

TABLE 25-22: A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min	Max	Units	Conditions
130	TAD	A/D clock period	PIC18**C**XX8	1.6	20(5)	µs	TOSC based, VREF ≥ 3.0V
			PIC18**LC**XX8	3.0	20(5)	µs	TOSC based, VREF full range
			PIC18**C**XX8	2.0	6.0	µs	A/D RC mode
			PIC18**LC**XX8	3.0	9.0	µs	A/D RC mode
131	TCNV	Conversion time (not including acquisition time)(1)		11	12	TAD	
132	TACQ	Acquisition time(3)		15 10	— —	µs µs	-40°C ≤ Temp ≤ 125°C 0°C ≤ Temp ≤ 125°C
135	TSWC	Switching time from convert → sample		—	**(Note 4)**		
136	TAMP	Amplifier settling time (Note 2)		1	—	µs	This may be used if the “new” input voltage has not changed by more than 1 LSb (i.e., 5 mV @ 5.12V) from the last sampled voltage (as stated on CHOLD).

PRELIMINARY

Note 1: ADRES register may be read on the following TCY cycle.
2: See Section 18.0 for minimum conditions, when input voltage has changed more than 1 LSb.
3: The time for the holding capacitor to acquire the “New” input voltage, when the voltage changes full scale after the conversion (AVDD to AVSS, or AVSS to AVDD). The source impedance (*RS*) on the input channels is 50 Ω.
4: On the next Q4 cycle of the device clock.
5: The time of the A/D clock period is dependent on the device frequency and the TAD clock divider.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

26.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND TABLES

Graphs and Tables are not available at this time.

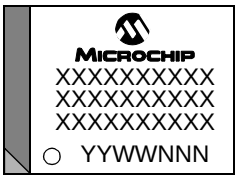
NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

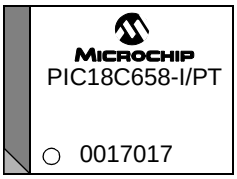
27.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

27.1 Package Marking Information

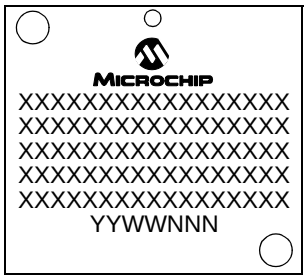
64-Lead TQFP



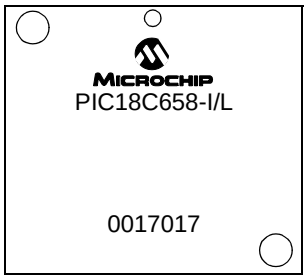
Example



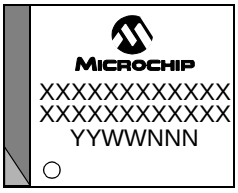
68-Lead PLCC



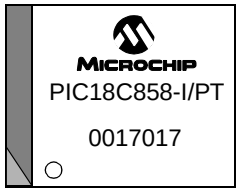
Example



80-Lead TQFP



Example



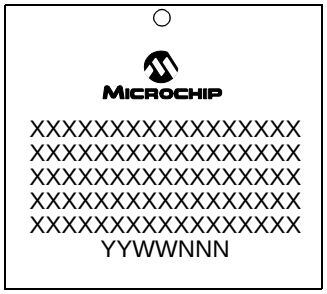
Legend:	XX...X	Customer specific information*
	YY	Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)
	WW	Week code (week of January 1 is week ‘01’)
	NNN	Alphanumeric traceability code

Note: In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line thus limiting the number of available characters for customer specific information.

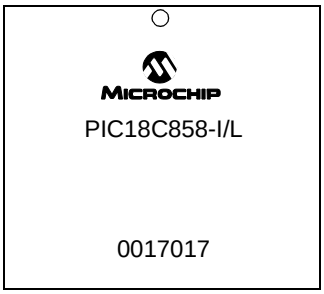
* Standard OTP marking consists of Microchip part number, year code, week code and traceability code. For OTP marking beyond this, certain price adders apply. Please check with your Microchip Sales Office. For QTP devices, any special marking adders are included in QTP price.

Package Marking Information (Cont'd)

84-Lead PLCC

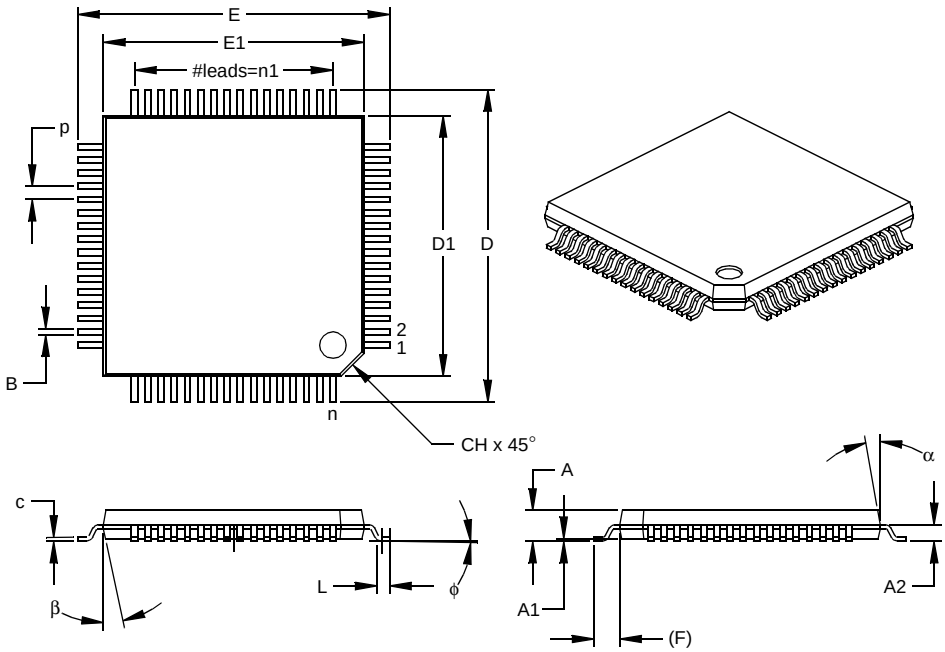


Example



 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

64-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) 10x10x1 mm Body, 1.0/0.10 mm Lead Form (TQFP)

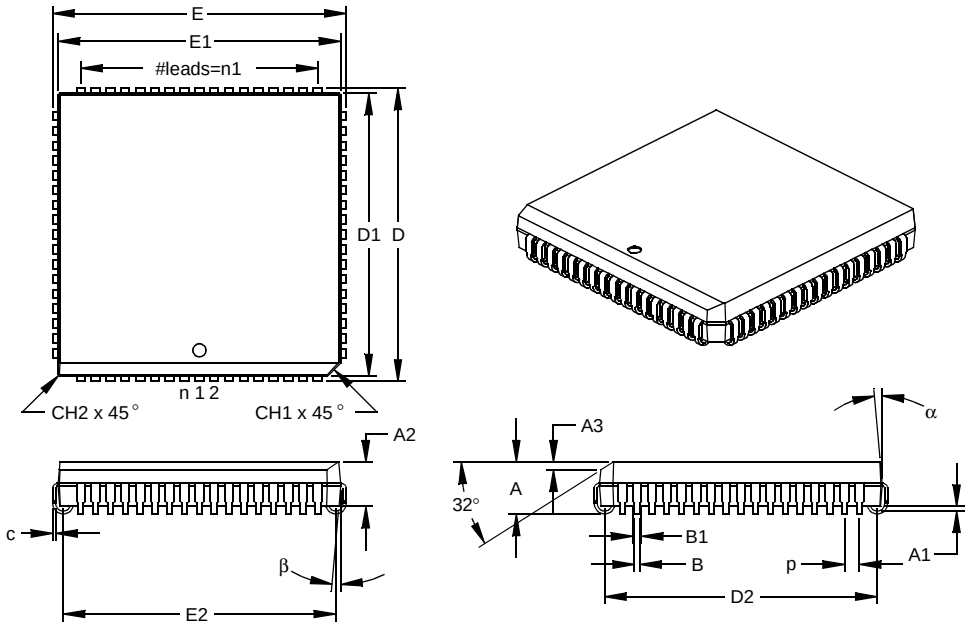


Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		64			64	
Pitch	p		.020			0.50	
Pins per Side	n1		16			16	
Overall Height	A	.039	.043	.047	1.00	1.10	1.20
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.037	.039	.041	0.95	1.00	1.05
Standoff §	A1	.002	.006	.010	0.05	0.15	0.25
Foot Length	L	.018	.024	.030	0.45	0.60	0.75
Footprint (Reference)	(F)		.039			1.00	
Foot Angle	φ	0	3.5	7	0	3.5	7
Overall Width	E	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Overall Length	D	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Molded Package Width	E1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Molded Package Length	D1	.390	.394	.398	9.90	10.00	10.10
Lead Thickness	c	.005	.007	.009	0.13	0.18	0.23
Lead Width	B	.007	.009	.011	0.17	0.22	0.27
Pin 1 Corner Chamfer	CH	.025	.035	.045	0.64	0.89	1.14
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:
Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-026
Drawing No. C04-085

68-Lead Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier (L) – Square (PLCC)

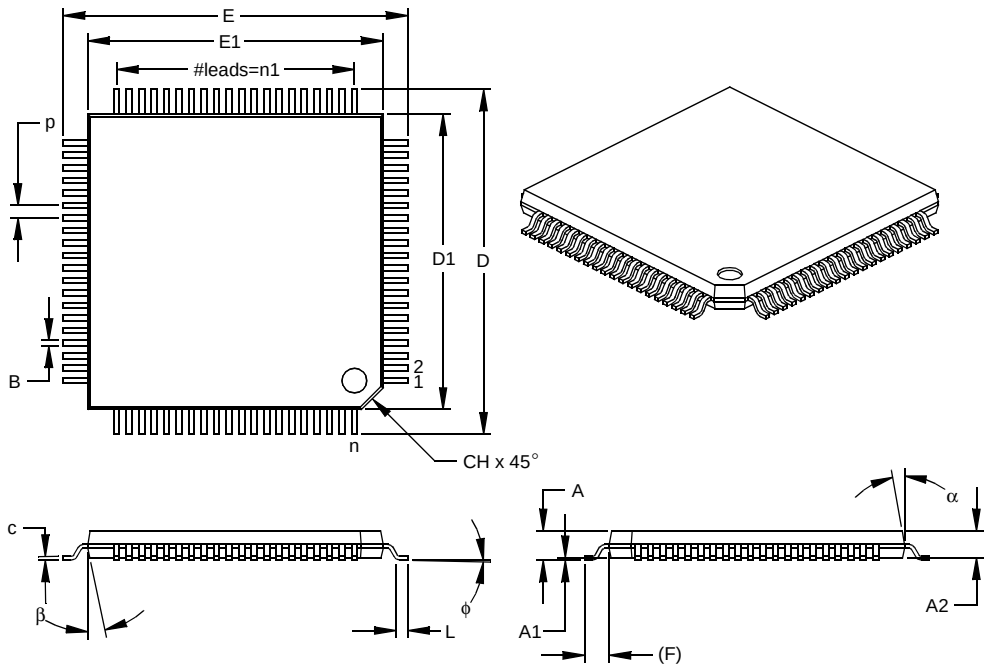


Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		68			68	
Pitch	p		.050			1.27	
Pins per Side	n1		17			17	
Overall Height	A	.165	.173	.180	4.19	4.39	4.57
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.145	.153	.160	3.68	3.87	4.06
Standoff §	A1	.020	.028	.035	0.51	0.71	0.89
Side 1 Chamfer Height	A3	.024	.029	.034	0.61	0.74	0.86
Corner Chamfer 1	CH1	.040	.045	.050	1.02	1.14	1.27
Corner Chamfer (others)	CH2	.000	.005	.010	0.00	0.13	0.25
Overall Width	E	.985	.990	.995	25.02	25.15	25.27
Overall Length	D	.985	.990	.995	25.02	25.15	25.27
Molded Package Width	E1	.950	.954	.958	24.13	24.23	24.33
Molded Package Length	D1	.950	.954	.958	24.13	24.23	24.33
Footprint Width	E2	.890	.920	.930	22.61	23.37	23.62
Footprint Length	D2	.890	.920	.930	22.61	23.37	23.62
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.011	.013	0.20	0.27	0.33
Upper Lead Width	B1	.026	.029	.032	0.66	0.74	0.81
Lower Lead Width	B	.013	.020	.021	0.33	0.51	0.53
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	5	10	0	5	10
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	5	10	0	5	10

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic
Notes:
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-047
Drawing No. C04-049

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

80-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) 12x12x1 mm Body, 1.0/0.10 mm Lead Form (TQFP)

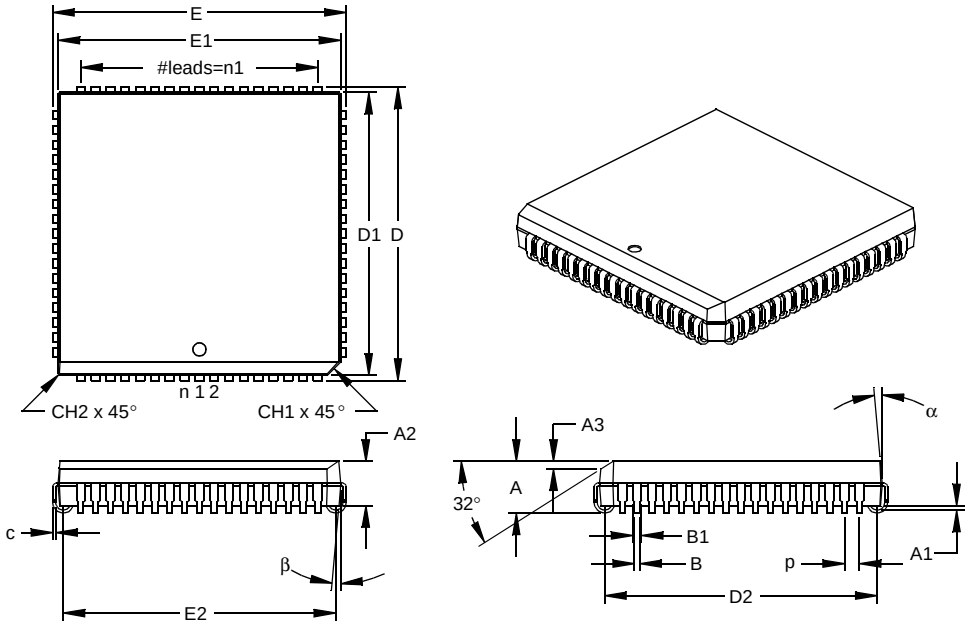


Units		INCHES			MILLIMETERS*		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		80			80	
Pitch	p		.020			0.50	
Pins per Side	n1		20			20	
Overall Height	A	.039	.043	.047	1.00	1.10	1.20
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.037	.039	.041	0.95	1.00	1.05
Standoff §	A1	.002	.004	.006	0.05	0.10	0.15
Foot Length	L	.018	.024	.030	0.45	0.60	0.75
Footprint (Reference)	(F)		.039			1.00	
Foot Angle	φ	0	3.5	7	0	3.5	7
Overall Width	E	.541	.551	.561	13.75	14.00	14.25
Overall Length	D	.541	.551	.561	13.75	14.00	14.25
Molded Package Width	E1	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Molded Package Length	D1	.463	.472	.482	11.75	12.00	12.25
Lead Thickness	c	.004	.006	.008	0.09	0.15	0.20
Lead Width	B	.007	.009	.011	0.17	0.22	0.27
Pin 1 Corner Chamfer	CH	.025	.035	.045	0.64	0.89	1.14
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	5	10	15	5	10	15
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	5	10	15	5	10	15

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic

Notes:
Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MS-026
Drawing No. C04-092

84-Lead Plastic Leaded Chip Carrier (L) – Square (PLCC)



Units		INCHES*			MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	n		68			68	
Pitch	p		.050			1.27	
Pins per Side	n1		17			17	
Overall Height	A	.165	.173	.180	4.19	4.39	4.57
Molded Package Thickness	A2	.145	.153	.160	3.68	3.87	4.06
Standoff §	A1	.020	.028	.035	0.51	0.71	0.89
Side 1 Chamfer Height	A3	.024	.029	.034	0.61	0.74	0.86
Corner Chamfer 1	CH1	.040	.045	.050	1.02	1.14	1.27
Corner Chamfer (others)	CH2	.000	.005	.010	0.00	0.13	0.25
Overall Width	E	.985	.990	.995	25.02	25.15	25.27
Overall Length	D	.985	.990	.995	25.02	25.15	25.27
Molded Package Width	E1	.950	.954	.958	24.13	24.23	24.33
Molded Package Length	D1	.950	.954	.958	24.13	24.23	24.33
Footprint Width	E2	.890	.920	.930	22.61	23.37	23.62
Footprint Length	D2	.890	.920	.930	22.61	23.37	23.62
Lead Thickness	c	.008	.011	.013	0.20	0.27	0.33
Upper Lead Width	B1	.026	.029	.032	0.66	0.74	0.81
Lower Lead Width	B	.013	.020	.021	0.33	0.51	0.53
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	0	5	10	0	5	10
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	0	5	10	0	5	10

* Controlling Parameter
§ Significant Characteristic
Notes:
Dimensions D and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed .010” (0.254mm) per side.
JEDEC Equivalent: MO-047
Drawing No. C04-093

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

APPENDIX A: DATA SHEET REVISION HISTORY

Revision A

This is a new data sheet.

APPENDIX B: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

The differences between the PIC18CXX8 devices listed in this data sheet are shown in Table B-1.

TABLE B-1: DEVICE DIFFERENCES

Feature		PIC18C658	PIC18C858
Program Memory (Bytes)		32K	32K
Data Memory (Bytes)		1.5K	1.5K
A/D Channels		12	16
Parallel Slave Port (PSP)		Yes	Yes
External Memory Capability		No	No
Package Types	TQFP	64-pin	80-pin
	PLCC	68-pin	84-pin
	JCERPACK	68-pin	84-pin

APPENDIX C: DEVICE MIGRATIONS

This section is intended to describe the functional and electrical specification differences when migrating between functionally similar devices (such as from a PIC16C74A to a PIC16C74B).

Not Applicable

APPENDIX D: MIGRATING FROM OTHER PICMICRO DEVICES

This discusses some of the issues in migrating from other PICmicro devices to the PIC18CXXX family of devices.

D.1 PIC16CXXX to PIC18CXXX

See application note AN716.

D.2 PIC17CXXX to PIC18CXXX

See application note AN726.

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

APPENDIX E: DEVELOPMENT TOOL VERSION REQUIREMENTS

This lists the minimum requirements (software/firmware) of the specified development tool to support the devices listed in this data sheet.

MPLAB-IDE: version 5.11

MPLAB-SIM: version 7.10

MPLAB-ICE 2000:

PIC18CXX8 Processor Module:
Part Number - PCM 18XB0

PIC18CXX8 Device Adapter:

Socket	Part Number
64-pin TQFP	DVD18P2640
68-pin PLCC	DVD18XL680
80-pin TQFP	DVD18PQ800
84-pin PLCC	DVD18XL840

MPLAB-ICD: Not Available

PROMATE II: version 5.20

PICSTART Plus: version 2.20

MPASM: version 2.50

MPLAB-C18: version 1.00

CAN-TOOL: Not available at time of printing.

Note: Please read all associated README.TXT files that are supplied with the development tools. These "read me" files will discuss product support and any known limitations.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

INDEX

A

A/D 227
- A/D Converter Flag (ADIF Bit) 230
- A/D Converter Interrupt, Configuring 231
- ADCON0 Register 227, 229
- ADCON1 Register 227, 228
- ADCON2 Register 227
- ADRES Register 227, 230
- Analog Port Pins, Configuring 233
- Block Diagram 230
- Block Diagram, Analog Input Model 231
- Configuring the Module 231
- Conversion Clock (TAD) 233
- Conversion Status (GO/DONE Bit) 230
- Conversions 234
- Converter Characteristics 339
- converter characteristics 318
- Effects of a RESET 250
- Equations 232
- Operation During SLEEP 250
- Sampling Requirements 232
- Sampling Time 232
- Special Event Trigger (CCP) 130, 234
- Timing Diagram 340

Absolute Maximum Ratings 311
Acknowledge Error 223
ADCON0 Register 227, 229
- GO/DONE Bit 230

ADCON1 Register 227, 228
ADCON2 Register 227
ADDLW 267
ADDWF 267
ADDWFC 268
ADRES Register 227, 230
AKS 156
Analog-to-Digital Converter. *See* A/D
ANDLW 268
ANDWF 269
Assembler
- MPASM Assembler 305

B

Baud Rate Generator 153
BCF 270
BF 156
Bit Error 223
Bit Timing 218
Bit Timing Configuration Registers 222
Block Diagrams
- Baud Rate Generator 153
- Comparator I/O Operating Modes 238
- PORTK 108
- SSP (SPI Mode) 141
- Timer3 124

BOR. *See* Brown-out Reset
BRG 153
Brown-out Reset (BOR) 30, 251
- Timing Diagram 325

BSF 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 275, 276, 291
BTFSC 274
BTFSS 274
BTG 275
Bus Activity Wake-up Interrupt 225
Bus Collision During a RESTART Condition 165
Bus Collision During a START Condition 163
Bus Collision During a STOP Condition 166
Bus Off 226

C

CALL 276
CAN Buffers and Protocol Engine Block Diagram 184
Capture (CCP Module) 128
- Block Diagram 129
- CCP Pin Configuration 128
- CCPR1H:CCPR1L Registers 128
- Changing Between Capture Prescalers 129
- Software Interrupt 129
- Timer1 Mode Selection 128

Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) 127
- Capture Mode. *See* Capture
- CCP1 128
  - CCPR1H Register 128
  - CCPR1L Register 128
- CCP2 128
  - CCPR2H Register 128
  - CCPR2L Register 128
- Compare Mode. *See* Compare
- Interaction of Two CCP Modules 128
- PWM Mode. *See* PWM
- Timer Resources 128
- Timing Diagram 327

Clocking Scheme 45
CLRF 277, 295
CLRWDT 277
Code Examples
- Loading the SSPBUF Register 142

Code Protection 251, 259
COMF 278
Comparator Interrupts 241
Comparator Operation 239
Comparator Reference 239
Compare (CCP Module) 130
- Block Diagram 130
- CCP Pin Configuration 130
- CCPR1H:CCPR1L Registers 130
- Software Interrupt 130
- Special Event Trigger 119, 125, 130, 234
- Timer1 Mode Selection 130

Configuration Bits 251
Configuration Mode 210
Configuring the Voltage Reference 243
CPFSEQ 278
CPFSGT 279
CPFSLT 279
CRC Error 223
CVRCON Register 243

D

Data Memory 48
General Purpose Registers 48
Special Function Registers 48
DAW 280
DC Characteristics 313, 314, 315, 316, 317
DECF 280
DECFSNZ 281
DECFSZ 281
Device Differences 349
Device Functionality 184
Direct Addressing 62

E

Electrical Characteristics 311
Errata 7
Error Detection 223
Error Interrupt 226
Error Modes 224
Error Modes and Error Counters 223
Error States 223

F

Filter/Mask Truth Table 216
Firmware Instructions 261
Form Error 223

G

General Call Address Sequence 150
General Call Address Support 150
GOTO 282

H

Hard Synchronization 220

I

I/O Ports 89
I^2C (SSP Module) 147
ACK Pulse 147, 148, 149
Addressing 148
Block Diagram 147
Read/Write Bit Information (R/W Bit) 148, 149
Reception 149
Serial Clock (RC3/SCK/SCL) 149
Slave Mode 147
Timing Diagram, Data 334
Timing Diagram, Start/Stop Bits 333
Transmission 149
I^2C Master Mode Reception 156
I^2C Master Mode Restart Condition 155
I^2C Module
Acknowledge Sequence timing 159
Baud Rate Generator 153
BRG Block Diagram 153
BRG Reset due to SDA Collision 164
BRG Timing 153
Bus Collision
Acknowledge 162
Restart Condition 165
Restart Condition Timing (Case1) 165
Restart Condition Timing (Case2) 165
START Condition 163
Start Condition Timing 163, 164
STOP Condition 166
STOP Condition Timing (Case1) 166
STOP Condition Timing (Case2) 166
Transmit Timing 162
Bus Collision timing 162
Clock Arbitration 161
Clock Arbitration Timing (Master Transmit) 161
General Call Address Support 150
Master Mode 7-bit Reception timing 158
Master Mode Operation 152
Master Mode Start Condition 154
Master Mode Transmission 156
Master Mode Transmit Sequence 152
Multi-Master Mode 162
Repeat START Condition timing 155
STOP Condition Receive or Transmit timing 160
STOP Condition timing 159
Waveforms for 7-bit Reception 149
Waveforms for 7-bit Transmission 149
ID Locations 251, 259
INCF 282
INCFSNZ 283
INCFSZ 283
In-Circuit Serial Programming (ICSP) 251, 259
Indirect Addressing 62
FSR Register 61
Information Processing Time 219
Initiating Message Transmission 211
Instruction Cycle 45
Instruction Flow/Pipelining 46
Instruction Format 263
Instruction Set 261
ADDLW 267
ADDWF 267
ADDWFC 268
ANDLW 268
ANDWF 269
BCF 270
BSF 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 275, 276, 291
BTFSC 274
BTFSS 274
BTG 275
CALL 276
CLRF 277, 295
CLRWDT 277
COMF 278
CPFSEQ 278
CPFSGT 279
CPFSLT 279
DAW 280
DECF 280
DECFSNZ 281
DECFSZ 281
GOTO 282
INCF 282
INCFSNZ 283
INCFSZ 283
IORLW 284
IORWF 284
MOVFP 286
MOVLB 285
MOVLR 285, 286
MOVLW 287
MOVWF 287
MULLW 288
MULWF 288
NEGW 289
NOP 289
RETFIE 291, 292
RETLW 292

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

RETURN 293
RLCF 293
RLNCF 294
RRCF 294
RRNCF 295
SLEEP 296
SUBLW 297
SUBWF 297, 298
SUBWFB 299
SWAPF 300
TABLRD 301
TABLWT 302
TSTFSZ 303
XORLW 303
XORWF 304
Summary Table 264
INT Interrupt (RB0/INT). *See* Interrupt Sources
INTCON Register
RBIF Bit 91
Inter-Integrated Circuit. *See* I^2C
Interrupt Acknowledge 226
Interrupt Sources 75, 251
A/D Conversion Complete 231
Capture Complete (CCP) 129
Compare Complete (CCP) 130
Interrupt-on-Change (RB7:RB4) 91
RB0/INT Pin, External 88
SSP Receive/Transmit Complete 135
TMR0 Overflow 116
TMR1 Overflow 117, 119
TMR2 to PR2 Match 122
TMR2 to PR2 Match (PWM) 121, 132
TMR3 Overflow 123, 125
USART Receive/Transmit Complete 167
Interrupts 225
Interrupts, Enable Bits
CCP1 Enable (CCP1IE Bit) 129
Interrupts, Flag Bits
A/D Converter Flag (ADIF Bit) 230
CCP1 Flag (CCP1IF Bit) 128, 129, 130
Interrupt on Change (RB7:RB4) Flag (RBIF Bit) 91
IORLW 284
IORWF 284

K

KEELOQ Evaluation and Programming Tools 308

L

Lengthening a Bit Period 221
Listen Only Mode 210
Loopback Mode 211

M

Memory Organization
Data Memory 48
Program Memory 41
Message Acceptance Filter 217
Message Acceptance Filters and Masks 216
Message Reception 213
Message Reception Flowchart 215
MOVFP 286
MOVLB 285
MOVLR 285, 286
MOVLW 287
MOVWF 287
MPLAB Integrated Development
Environment Software 305
MULLW 288
Multi-Master Mode 162
Multiply Examples
16 x 16 Routine 72
16 x 16 Signed Routine 73
8 x 8 Routine 72
8 x 8 Signed Routine 72
MULWF 288

N

NEGW 289
NOP 289
Normal Mode 210

O

OPTION_REG Register 64
PS2:PS0 Bits 115
PSA Bit 115
T0CS Bit 115
T0SE Bit 115
OSCCON 25
OSCCON Register 25
Oscillator Configuration 21, 251
HS 21
HS + PLL 21
LP 21
RC 21, 23
RCIO 21
XT 21
Oscillator Tolerance 222
Oscillator, Timer1 ..... 117, 119, 123
Oscillator, Timer3 125
Oscillator, WDT 255
Overview 183

P

Packaging 343
Parallel Slave Port (PSP) 95, 109
Block Diagram 109
RE0/$\overline{RD}$ 109
RE1/$\overline{WR}$ 109
RE2/$\overline{CS}$ 109
Read Waveforms 111
Select (PSPMODE Bit) 95, 109
Timing Diagram 328
Write Waveforms 111
Phase Buffer Segments 219
PICDEM 1 Low Cost PICmicro Demo Board 307
PICDEM 2 Low Cost PIC16CXX Demo Board 307
PICDEM 3 Low Cost PIC16CXXX Demo Board 308
PICSTART Plus Entry Level Development System 307
Pin Functions
AVDD 20
AVSS 20
$\overline{MCLR}$/VPP 12
OSC1/CLKI 12
OSC2/CLKO 12
RA0/AN0 13
RA1/AN1 13
RA2/AN2/VREF- 13
RA3/AN3/VREF+ 13
RA4/T0CKI 13
RA5/AN4/$\overline{SS}$/LVDIN 13
RA6 13
RB0/INT0 14

RB1/INT1 14
RB2/INT2 14
RB3/INT3 14
RB4 14
RB5 14
RB6 14
RB7 14
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI 15
RC1/T1OSI 15
RC2/CCP1 15
RC3/SCK/SCL 15
RC4/SDI/SDA 15
RC5/SDO 15
RC6/TX/CK 15
RC7/RX/DT 15
RD0/AD0 16
RD0/PSP0 16
RD1/AD1 16
RD1/PSP1 16
RD2/AD2 16
RD2/PSP2 16
RD3/AD3 16
RD3/PSP3 16
RD4/AD4 16
RD4/PSP4 16
RD5/AD5 16
RD5/PSP5 16
RD6/AD6 16
RD6/PSP6 16
RD7/AD7 16
RD7/PSP7 16
RE0/ALE 17
RE0/$\overline{\text{RD}}$ 17
RE1/$\overline{\text{OE}}$ 17
RE1/$\overline{\text{WR}}$ 17
RE2/$\overline{\text{CS}}$ 17
RE2/$\overline{\text{WRL}}$ 17
RE3/WRH 17
RE4 17
RE5 17
RE6 17
RE7/CCP2 17
RF0/AN5 18
RF1/AN6 18
RF2/AN7 18
RF3/AN8 18
RF4/AN9 18
RF5/AN10 18
RF6/AN11 18
RF7 18
RG0/CANTX1 19
RG1/CANTX2 19
RG2/CANRX 19
RG3 19
RG4 19
RH0/A16 19
RH1/A17 19
RH2/A18 19
RH3/A19 19
RH4/AN12 19
RH5/AN13 19
RH6/AN14 19
RH7/AN15 19
RJ0/AD8 20
RJ1/AD9 20
RJ2/AD10 20
RJ3/AD11 20
RK0 20
RK1 20
RK2 20
RK3 20
V_{DD} 20
V_{SS} 20
Pointer, FSR 61
POR. *See* Power-on Reset
PORTA
Initialization 89
PORTA Register 89
RA3:RA0 and RA5 Port Pins 89
RA4/T0CKI Pin 90
TRISA Register 89
PORTB
Initialization 91
PORTB Register 91
RB0/INT Pin, External 88
RB3:RB0 Port Pins 91
RB7:RB4 Interrupt on Change Flag (RBIF Bit) 91
RB7:RB4 Port Pins 91
TRISB Register 91
PORTC
Block Diagram 93
Initialization 93
PORTC Register 93
RC3/SCK/SCL Pin 149
RC7/RX/DT Pin 169
TRISC Register 93, 167
PORTD 109
Block Diagram 95
Initialization 95
Parallel Slave Port (PSP) Function 95
PORTD Register 95
TRISD Register 95
PORTE
Block Diagram 97
Initialization 97
PORTE Register 97
PSP Mode Select (PSPMODE Bit) 95, 109
RE0/$\overline{\text{RD}}$ 109
RE1/$\overline{\text{WR}}$ 109
RE2/$\overline{\text{CS}}$ 109
TRISE Register 97
PORTF
Block Diagram 99
Block Diagram of RF7 Pin 100
C1OUT, C2OUT 99
Initialization 99
PORTF Register 99
RF6/RF3 and RF0 Pins Block Diagram 100
TRISF 99
PORTG
Initialization 101
PORTG 101
RG0/CANTX0 Pin Block Diagram 101
RG1/CANTX1 Pin Block Diagram 102
RG2 Pin Block Diagram 102
RG4/RG3 Pins Block Diagram 102
TRISG 101
PORTH
Initialization 104
PORTH 104
RH3/RH0 Pins Block Diagram 104
RH7/RH4 Pins Block Diagram 104
TRISH 104

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

PORTJ
Initialization 106
PORTJ 106
TRISJ 106
PORTJ Block Diagram 106
PORTK
Initialization 108
PORTK 108
TRISK 108
Postscaler, WDT
Assignment (PSA Bit) 115
Rate Select (PS2:PS0 Bits) 115
Switching Between Timer0 and WDT 115
Power-down Mode. *See* SLEEP
Power-on Reset (POR) 30, 251
Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) 30, 251
Power-up Timer (PWRT) 30, 251
Time-out Sequence 31
Time-out Sequence on Power-up 32, 33
Timing Diagram 325
Prescaler, Capture 129
Prescaler, Timer0 115
Assignment (PSA Bit) 115
Rate Select (PS2:PS0 Bits) 115
Switching Between Timer0 and WDT 115
Prescaler, Timer1 118
Prescaler, Timer2 132
PRO MAT“ II Universal Programmer 307
Program Counter
PCL Register 45
PCLATH Register 45
Program Memory 41
Program Verification 259
Programmable 251
Programming Time Segments 222
Programming, Device Instructions 261
Propagation Segment 219
PSPCON Register
PSPMODE Bit 95, 109
PWM (CCP Module) 132
Block Diagram 132
CCPR1H:CCPR1L Registers 132
Duty Cycle 132
Example Frequencies/Resolutions 133
Output Diagram 132
Period 132
Setup for PWM Operation 133
TMR2 to PR2 Match 121, 132

Q

Q-Clock 132

R

RAM. *See* Data Memory
RCSTA Register
SPEN Bit 167
Receive Buffers 213
Receive Buffers Diagram 214
Receive Interrupt 225
Receive Message Buffering 213
Receiver Error Passive 226
Receiver Overrun 226
Receiver Warning 226
Register File 48
Registers
SSPSTAT 136
T3CON
Diagram 123
Section 123
RESET 29, 251
Timing Diagram 325
Resynchronization 220
RETFIE 291, 292
RETLW 292
RETURN 293
Revision History 349
RLCF 293
RLNCF 294
RRCF 294
RRNCF 295

S

Sample Point 219
SCI. *See* USART
SCK 141
SDI 141
SDO 141
Serial Clock, SCK 141
Serial Communication Interface. *See* USART
Serial Data In, SDI 141
Serial Data Out, SDO 141
Serial Peripheral Interface. *See* SPI
Shortening a Bit Period 221
Simplified Block Diagram of On-Chip Reset Circuit 29
Slave Select Synchronization 144
Slave Select, $\overline{SS}$ 141
SLEEP 251, 257, 296
Software Simulator (MPLAB-SIM) 306
Special Event Trigger. *See* Compare
Special Features of the CPU 247, 251
Special Function Registers 48
SPI
Master Mode 143
Serial Clock 141
Serial Data In 141
Serial Data Out 141
Slave Select 141
SPI Clock 143
SPI Mode 141
SPI Module
Slave Mode 144
Slave Select Synchronization 144
Slave Synch Timing 144
Slave Timing with CKE = 0 145
Slave Timing with CKE = 1 145
$\overline{SS}$ 141
SSP 135
Block Diagram (SPI Mode) 141
I^2C Mode. *See* I^2C
SPI Mode 141
SPI Mode. *See* SPI
SSPBUF 143
SSPCON1 138
SSPCON2 140
SSPSR 143
SSPSTAT 136
TMR2 Output for Clock Shift 121, 122
SSP Module
SPI Master Mode 143
SPI Slave Mode 144
SSPCON1 138
SSPCON2 140

SSPOV 156
SSPSTAT 136
SSPSTAT Register
R/$\overline{W}$ Bit 148, 149
Stuff Error 223
SUBLW 297
SUBWF 297, 298
SUBWFB 299
SWAPF 300
Synchronization 220
Synchronization Rules 220
Synchronization Segment 219
Synchronous Serial Port. *See* SSP

T

TABLRD 301
TABLWT 302
Time Quanta 219
Timer Modules
Timer3
Block Diagram 124
Timer0 113
Clock Source Edge Select (T0SE Bit) 115
Clock Source Select (T0CS Bit) 115
Overflow Interrupt 116
Prescaler. *See* Prescaler, Timer0
Timing Diagram 326
Timer1 117
Block Diagram 118
Oscillator 117, 119
Overflow Interrupt 117, 119
Prescaler. *See* Prescaler, Timer1
Special Event Trigger (CCP) 119, 130
Timing Diagram 326
TMR1H Register 117
TMR1L Register 117
TMR3L Register 123
Timer2
Block Diagram 122
Postscaler. *See* Postscaler, Timer2
PR2 Register 121, 132
Prescaler. *See* Prescaler, Timer2
SSP Clock Shift 121, 122
TMR2 Register 121
TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt 121, 122, 132
Timer3 123
Oscillator 123, 125
Overflow Interrupt 123, 125
Special Event Trigger (CCP) 125
TMR3H Register 123
Timing Diagrams
Acknowledge Sequence Timing 159
Baud Rate Generator with Clock Arbitration 153
BRG Reset Due to SDA Collision 164
Bus Collision
START Condition Timing 163
Bus Collision During a RESTART Condition
(Case 1) 165
Bus Collision During a RESTART Condition
(Case2) 165
Bus Collision During a START Condition (SCL = 0) 164
Bus Collision During a STOP Condition 166
Bus Collision for Transmit and Acknowledge 162
I^2C Bus Data 336
I^2C Master Mode First Start bit timing 154
I^2C Master Mode Reception timing 158
I^2C Master Mode Transmission timing 157
Master Mode Transmit Clock Arbitration 161
Repeat Start Condition 155
Slave Synchronization 144
Slow Rise Time 33
SPI Mode Timing (Master Mode) SPI Mode
Master Mode Timing Diagram 143
SPI Mode Timing (Slave Mode with CKE = 0) 145
SPI Mode Timing (Slave Mode with CKE = 1) 145
Stop Condition Receive or Transmit 160
Time-out Sequence on Power-up 32
USART Asynchronous Master Transmission 174
USART Asynchronous Reception 176
USART Synchronous Reception 179
USART Synchronous Transmission 178
Wake-up from SLEEP via Interrupt 258
Timing Diagrams and Specifications 322
A/D Conversion 340
Brown-out Reset (BOR) 325
Capture/Compare/PWM (CCP) 327
CLKOUT and I/O 324
External Clock 322
I^2C Bus Data 334
I^2C Bus START/STOP Bits 333
Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) 325
Parallel Slave Port (PSP) 328
Power-up Timer (PWRT) 325
Reset 325
Timer0 and Timer1 326
USART Synchronous Receive (Master/Slave) 338
USART Synchronous Transmission (Master/Slave) 337
Watchdog Timer (WDT) 325
Transmit Interrupt 225
Transmit Message Aborting 211
Transmit Message Buffering 211
Transmit Message Buffers 211
Transmit Message flowchart 212
Transmit Message Priority 211
Transmitter Error Passive 226
Transmitter Warning 226
TRISE Register 97
TSTFSZ 303
TXSTA Register
BRGH Bit 169

U

Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver
Transmitter. *See* USART
USART 167
Asynchronous Mode 173
Master Transmission 174
Receive Block Diagram 175
Reception 176
Transmit Block Diagram 173
Baud Rate Generator (BRG) 169
Baud Rate Error, Calculating 169
Baud Rate Formula 169
High Baud Rate Select (BRGH Bit) 169
Sampling 169
Serial Port Enable (SPEN Bit) 167
Synchronous Master Mode 177
Reception 179
Timing Diagram, Synchronous Receive 338
Timing Diagram, Synchronous Transmission .. 337
Transmission 178
Synchronous Slave Mode 180

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

W

Wake-up from SLEEP 251, 257
Timing Diagram 258
Watchdog Timer (WDT) 251, 255
Block Diagram 256
Postscaler. *See* Postscaler, WDT
Programming Considerations 255
RC Oscillator 255
Time-out Period 255
Timing Diagram 325
Waveform for General Call Address Sequence 150
WCOL 154, 156, 159
WCOL Status Flag 154
WWW, On-Line Support 7

X

XORLW 303
XORWF 304

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

ON-LINE SUPPORT

Microchip provides on-line support on the Microchip World Wide Web (WWW) site.

The web site is used by Microchip as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. To view the site, the user must have access to the Internet and a web browser, such as Netscape or Microsoft Explorer. Files are also available for FTP download from our FTP site.

Connecting to the Microchip Internet Web Site

The Microchip web site is available by using your favorite Internet browser to attach to:

www.microchip.com

The file transfer site is available by using an FTP service to connect to:

ftp://ftp.microchip.com

The web site and file transfer site provide a variety of services. Users may download files for the latest Development Tools, Data Sheets, Application Notes, User's Guides, Articles and Sample Programs. A variety of Microchip specific business information is also available, including listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives. Other data available for consideration is:

- Latest Microchip Press Releases
- Technical Support Section with Frequently Asked Questions
- Design Tips
- Device Errata
- Job Postings
- Microchip Consultant Program Member Listing
- Links to other useful web sites related to Microchip Products
- Conferences for products, Development Systems, technical information and more
- Listing of seminars and events

Systems Information and Upgrade Hot Line

The Systems Information and Upgrade Line provides system users a listing of the latest versions of all of Microchip's development systems software products. Plus, this line provides information on how customers can receive any currently available upgrade kits.The Hot Line Numbers are:

1-800-755-2345 for U.S. and most of Canada, and

1-480-792-7302 for the rest of the world.

001024

Trademarks: The Microchip name, logo, PIC, PICmicro, PICMASTER, PICSTART, PRO MATE, KEELOQ, SEEVAL, MPLAB and The Embedded Control Solutions Company are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.
Total Endurance, ICSP, In-Circuit Serial Programming, FilterLab, MXDEV, microID, *Flex*ROM, *fuzzy*LAB, MPASM, MPLINK, MPLIB, PICDEM, ICEPIC and Migratable Memory are trademarks and SQTP is a service mark of Microchip in the U.S.A.

All other trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective companies.

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this Data Sheet.

To: Technical Publications Manager Total Pages Sent

RE: Reader Response

From: Name _____

Company _____

Address _____

City / State / ZIP / Country _____

Telephone: (_____) _____ - _____ FAX: (_____) _____ - _____

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply?___Y ___N

Device: **PIC18CXX8** Literature Number: **DS30475A**

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

_____

_____

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

_____

_____

3. Do you find the organization of this data sheet easy to follow? If not, why?

_____

_____

4. What additions to the data sheet do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

_____

_____

5. What deletions from the data sheet could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

_____

_____

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

_____

_____

7. How would you improve this document?

_____

_____

8. How would you improve our software, systems, and silicon products?

_____

_____

© 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

PIC18CXX8 PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery refer to the factory or the listed sales office

PART NO.	X	/XX	XXX
Device	Temperature Range	Package	Pattern

Device	PIC18CXX8(1), PIC18CXX8T(2); VDD range 4.2V to 5.5V PIC18LCXX5(1), PIC18LCXX8T(2); VDD range 2.5V to 5.5V
Temperature Range	I = -40°C to +85°C (Industrial) E = -40°C to +125°C (Extended)
Package	CL = Windowed JCERPACK PT = TQFP (Thin Quad Flatpack) L = PLCC
Pattern	QTP, SQTP, Code or Special Requirements (blank otherwise)

Examples:

a) PIC18LC658 - I/L 301 = Industrial temp., PLCC package, Extended VDD limits, QTP pattern #301.

b) PIC18LC858 - I/PT = Industrial temp., TQFP package, Extended VDD limits.

c) PIC18C658 - E/L = Extended temp., PLCC package, normal VDD limits.

Note 1: C = Standard Voltage Range
LC = Wide Voltage Range

2: T = in tape and reel PLCC, and TQFP packages only.

3: CL devices are UV erasable and can be programmed to any device configuration. CL devices meet the electrical requirement of each oscillator type (including LC devices).

* JW Devices are UV erasable and can be programmed to any device configuration. JW Devices meet the electrical requirement of each oscillator type.

Sales and Support

Data Sheets
Products supported by a preliminary Data Sheet may have an errata sheet describing minor operational differences and recommended workarounds. To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please contact one of the following:

1. Your local Microchip sales office
2. The Microchip Corporate Literature Center U.S. FAX: (480) 792-7277
3. The Microchip Worldwide Site (www.microchip.com)

Please specify which device, revision of silicon and Data Sheet (include Literature #) you are using.

New Customer Notification System
Register on our web site (www.microchip.com/cn) to receive the most current information on our products.

NOTES:

 © 2000 Microchip Technology Inc.

NOTES:

WORLDWIDE SALES AND SERVICE

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200 Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support: 480-792-7627
Web Address: http://www.microchip.com

Rocky Mountain
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7966 Fax: 480-792-7456

Atlanta
500 Sugar Mill Road, Suite 200B
Atlanta, GA 30350
Tel: 770-640-0034 Fax: 770-640-0307

Boston
2 Lan Drive, Suite 120
Westford, MA 01886
Tel: 978-692-3838 Fax: 978-692-3821

Chicago
333 Pierce Road, Suite 180
Itasca, IL 60143
Tel: 630-285-0071 Fax: 630-285-0075

Dallas
4570 Westgrove Drive, Suite 160
Addison, TX 75001
Tel: 972-818-7423 Fax: 972-818-2924

Dayton
Two Prestige Place, Suite 130
Miamisburg, OH 45342
Tel: 937-291-1654 Fax: 937-291-9175

Detroit
Tri-Atria Office Building
32255 Northwestern Highway, Suite 190
Farmington Hills, MI 48334
Tel: 248-538-2250 Fax: 248-538-2260

Los Angeles
18201 Von Karman, Suite 1090
Irvine, CA 92612
Tel: 949-263-1888 Fax: 949-263-1338

New York
150 Motor Parkway, Suite 202
Hauppauge, NY 11788
Tel: 631-273-5305 Fax: 631-273-5335

San Jose
Microchip Technology Inc.
2107 North First Street, Suite 590
San Jose, CA 95131
Tel: 408-436-7950 Fax: 408-436-7955

Toronto
6285 Northam Drive, Suite 108
Mississauga, Ontario L4V 1X5, Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699 Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

China - Beijing
Microchip Technology Beijing Office
Unit 915
New China Hong Kong Manhattan Bldg.
No. 6 Chaoyangmen Beidajie
Beijing, 100027, No. China
Tel: 86-10-85282100 Fax: 86-10-85282104

China - Shanghai
Microchip Technology Shanghai Office
Room 701, Bldg. B
Far East International Plaza
No. 317 Xian Xia Road
Shanghai, 200051
Tel: 86-21-6275-5700 Fax: 86-21-6275-5060

Hong Kong
Microchip Asia Pacific
RM 2101, Tower 2, Metroplaza
223 Hing Fong Road
Kwai Fong, N.T., Hong Kong
Tel: 852-2401-1200 Fax: 852-2401-3431

India
Microchip Technology Inc.
India Liaison Office
Divyasree Chambers
1 Floor, Wing A (A3/A4)
No. 11, O'Shaugnessey Road
Bangalore, 560 025, India
Tel: 91-80-2290061 Fax: 91-80-2290062

Japan
Microchip Technology Intl. Inc.
Benex S-1 6F
3-18-20, Shinyokohama
Kohoku-Ku, Yokohama-shi
Kanagawa, 222-0033, Japan
Tel: 81-45-471- 6166 Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea
Microchip Technology Korea
168-1, Youngbo Bldg. 3 Floor
Samsung-Dong, Kangnam-Ku
Seoul, Korea
Tel: 82-2-554-7200 Fax: 82-2-558-5934

ASIA/PACIFIC (continued)

Singapore
Microchip Technology Singapore Pte Ltd.
200 Middle Road
#07-02 Prime Centre
Singapore, 188980
Tel: 65-334-8870 Fax: 65-334-8850

Taiwan
Microchip Technology Taiwan
11F-3, No. 207
Tung Hua North Road
Taipei, 105, Taiwan
Tel: 886-2-2717-7175 Fax: 886-2-2545-0139

EUROPE

Denmark
Microchip Technology Denmark ApS
Regus Business Centre
Lautrup hoj 1-3
Ballerup DK-2750 Denmark
Tel: 45 4420 9895 Fax: 45 4420 9910

France
Arizona Microchip Technology SARL
Parc d'Activite du Moulin de Massy
43 Rue du Saule Trapu
Batiment A - ler Etage
91300 Massy, France
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20 Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany
Arizona Microchip Technology GmbH
Gustav-Heinemann Ring 125
D-81739 Munich, Germany
Tel: 49-89-627-144 0 Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy
Arizona Microchip Technology SRL
Centro Direzionale Colleoni
Palazzo Taurus 1 V. Le Colleoni 1
20041 Agrate Brianza
Milan, Italy
Tel: 39-039-65791-1 Fax: 39-039-6899883

United Kingdom
Arizona Microchip Technology Ltd.
505 Eskdale Road
Winnersh Triangle
Wokingham
Berkshire, England RG41 5TU
Tel: 44 118 921 5869 Fax: 44-118 921-5820

10/01/00

DNV Certification, Inc. USA
ANSI • RAB QMS ACCREDITED
DNV
DNV MSC The Netherlands Accredited by the RvA
ISO 9001 / QS-9000 REGISTERED FIRM

Microchip received QS-9000 quality system certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona in July 1999. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are QS-9000 compliant for its PICmicro® 8-bit MCUs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs and microperipheral products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001 certified.

All rights reserved. © 2000 Microchip Technology Incorporated. Printed in the USA. 11/00 Printed on recycled paper.

Information contained in this publication regarding device applications and the like is intended through suggestion only and may be superseded by updates. It is your responsibility to ensure that your application meets with your specifications. No representation or warranty is given and no liability is assumed by Microchip Technology Incorporated with respect to the accuracy or use of such information, or infringement of patents or other intellectual property rights arising from such use or otherwise. Use of Microchip's products as critical components in life support systems is not authorized except with express written approval by Microchip. No licenses are conveyed, implicitly or otherwise, except as maybe explicitly expressed herein, under any intellectual property rights. The Microchip logo and name are registered trademarks of Microchip Technology Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries. All rights reserved. All other trademarks mentioned herein are the property of their respective companies.